

刘国善 总主编

《通用英语语法全程》之一

通用英语 句法教程

主编 单亦祯

广收熔炼提纯的最新资料

满足英语教学的迫切需求

精解英美名家名著例句

针对疑难，穷究深广

nglish

对外经济贸易大学出版社

刘国善总主编《通用英语语法全程》之一

通用英语句法教程

主 编 单亦楨
副主编 王志青 田翠芸 张轶前
编 者 贾珍霞 李晓虹 刘国善

《通用英语语法全程》总主编 刘国善
总 审 王治江

对外经济贸易大学出版社

(京)新登字 182 号

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

通用英语句法教程/单亦祯主编—北京:对外经济贸易
大学出版社,2004

(《通用英语语法全程》之一)

ISBN 7-81078-389-0

I.通... II.单... III.英语—句法—教材
IV.H314.3

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2004) 第 106429 号

© 2004 年 对外经济贸易大学出版社出版发行
版权所有 翻印必究

通用英语句法教程

单亦祯 主编
责任编辑 戴 菲

对外经济贸易大学出版社
北京市朝阳区惠新东街 12 号 邮政编码: 100029
网址: <http://www.uibep.com>

北京山华苑印刷有限责任公司印装 新华书店北京发行所发行
成品尺寸: 140mm×203mm 14.5 印张 380 千字
2004 年 12 月北京第 1 版 2004 年 12 月第 1 次印刷

ISBN 7-81078-389-0/H·070
印数: 0 001—5 000 册 定价: 25.00 元

广收熔炼提纯的最新资料， 满足英语教学的迫切需求

《通用英语语法全程》——六卷总序言

这句话语法上对吗？It's worth doing the work. “做此工作是值得(下工夫)的。”

1965年，H. W. Fowler 在 A Dictionary of Modern English Usage 中说：“错了！”因为句中的 worth 必须带有补语，而 doing ... 不是补语、却是实际的主语，前面的 It 是引导词。

像形容词 like 作表语时要带有补语(原是介词 to 的宾语，to 现已不用)一样，表语形容词 worth 经过历史演变，现也直接用名词或动名词补语。所以上面那句话应改作 It's worth while doing the work.

但是，1975年以来，语法家们一致说 worth 无补语的那种说法是对的：

It's worth (while) trying. (1975, Close)(while 可以略去不用)
“试一试是值得的。”

It's worth making an effort. (1978, LDCE) “作一番努力是值得的。”

Is it worth visiting Leicester? (1980, Swan) It's not worth getting angry with her. (ib)

It's worth (while) saving the cartoons. (1985, CGEL) It's scarcely worth (while) your going home. (ib)

It's worth reading the book. (1989, ALD)

It's worth taking your time when you visit the cathedral. (1995, LDCE) “你们参观那大教堂时，慢慢细看是值得的。”

语法总要随着语言的变化而变化。worth 有时可以不带补语。这也说明它不(如 RHD, LDCE 等英美词典所讲)属介词性质。

新世纪英语教学与英语使用,迫切需求一部囊括时代语言现象和最新研究成果的多卷本语法,该套语法能解释迄无答案的诸多新发现的问题,例如,读者能否看出以下各对语句的区别何在?

1. That's the early bird that/which caught the worm. 【句法:含定语从句的复合句,先行词是 bird】那只就是抓获虫子的早出之鸟。

It's the early bird that catches the worm. (proverb)【用于特殊强调的分裂句;先行词是 It, 不是 bird】捷足先登。正是早出之鸟,才能抓获虫子。

2. There was a time when man never cooked his food. (RHD)【a time when, 新信息】

What's the time that she normally arrives (at)? (CGEL)【that 通常不指听者未知的新事物】

3. He's a student of Jespersen. (CGEL)【名词关系表达法:of 接名词表“动宾”关系】他是叶斯帕森的研究者。

He was a student of Jespersen's. (CGEL)【of, s' 双重所属形式表“归属”关系】他曾是叶斯帕森的一个学生。

4. Mr. Black is going to leave the bar for the church. (NDEC)【定冠词类指】布莱克先生将脱离律师行业去做牧师。

The bells are ringing for church. (NDEC)【零位冠词概括指,指抽象活动】钟声在响,让人们去做礼拜。

5. There was nothing to do. 【动词不定式单一形式仅指有待完成】没有什么要做的事。

There was nothing to be done. 【不定式被动形式加强语气,指可能】什么办法也没有。

6. A homeless defenseless poor little girl. ... 【形容词顺序:从抽象一般到较具体特殊的性质】

A poor little homeless defenseless girl...【把 homeless defenseless 看作更特殊的性质】

7. He had taken a kinder view of life in the postwar world. (RHD)
【通常比较级】

There never was a man more kind and just. (RHD)【强调对比差异】

8. He is worse than bad. (CGEL)【同种性质程度上的比较】

He is more good than bad. (CGEL)【突出不同性质间的对比】

9. The book is 3 times as long as that one. (ALD)【规范倍数表达法】

The book is 3 times longer than that one. (ALD)【非规范倍数表达法,与上面例句同义】

10. As you brew, you must drink. One must drink as one brews.

(proverb)【代词 one 比 you 郑重】自作自受。

(He) Who sows the wind shall reap the whirlwind. (proverb)【不用 He, 以 Who 引导的名词从句为主语是古旧说法】挑拨事端的,将自食恶果。

11. Tell me truly what you think. (ALD)【truly 本为方式副词,修饰动词】

She's truly not so nice a hostess. She's not truly so nice a hostess.

【转作语气副词,可修饰句中的不同成份】

12. The man in front of me let me go first. (LLAV)【in front of 表相对静态关系】

There were over one hundred people ahead of us in the queue to get into the cinema. (LLAV)【复合介词 ahead of 表动态关系】

Aren't you before those people in the queue? (ib)【before 在此表顺序】

13. It is very bad of you to leave him. (NDEC)【介词短语 of... 表“出于本心/本性”】

It's very bad for you to smoke. [for...“对于”,比 of...表“本心本性适当与否”用途广泛得多]

14. He has the welfare of the poor at heart (in his heart). (DAI) I told him what was on my heart. (NDEC) [at..., 位于某点或模糊位置; on..., 位于或压在某面之上]

In her heart of hearts she knew that the evil day could not be long postponed. (Dreiser) [in..., 位于有相当深度的空间之中]

对于语法中的规则似乎没有人问过的“为什么”,如果我们试着问个清楚,会有助于记清和用好有关规则。例如上面第二对例句中的 time when/time that 之分,牵涉到引导定语从句关系代词 which/that 的选择。常用的 all that..., the only thing that... 短语,同样因为 that 含有确指意味。而表“类属”使用关系代词 which, 就因为它有不确指含义: John is not the scholar which James is. (RHD)

又如以下各对语句,为什么前面标有 * 的是错误说法,而后面的是正确的?

1. * (When) Making up prescriptions, some tablets have to be divided into four. (RWRT) [句法: 无依着修饰语]

Seeing you are ill, the performance will have to be cancelled. (RWRT) [Seeing..., Speaking of..., Considering..., 等属惯用语气状语]

2. * the child of the artist's [名词所有格已包含确指意义, 名词短语前不得再使用定冠词]

A child/That (lazy) child of the artist's... [强调不确指的或具有某特性的 child]

3. * the painting of my sister's [要说 the/a painting of my sister, 意即 (the) one representing my sister, of 在此表动宾关系] 画了我姐姐的画

A painting of my sister's ...【意即 one belonging to or done by my sister, of 与 's 同用表所有关系或主谓关系】我姐姐的画(属于她或由她画的)

4. * a growl as frightening as that of a tiger's

A growl as frightening as a tiger's/as frightening as that of a tiger ...

5. * Who cuts my hair has moved to another hairdresser's.【代词用法:要说 The man/woman who cuts. ...】

Who keeps company with wolves will learn to howl.【前无代词 He 等或名词, 以 Who(whom)引导的名词从句为主语(宾语)是古旧说法】

6. * Whom I loved and would get married to suddenly disappeared.【要说 The man whom I loved and ...】

The man I loved and would get married to suddenly disappeared. Whom Fortune would ruin, she robs of his wits. 命运要毁灭谁,就先剥夺他的理智。

7. * It is to rain before dark.【动词形式 is to do 表示人为的安排】

It is going to rain/He is going to be (is to be) back before dark.【is going to. ..., 预计】

8. * They caught my napping in class. (应改作 caught me napping)【分词型复合宾语; catch 不可接用 my napping 动名词短语】

They denied my/me napping in class.【deny 接用动名词短语/复合结构宾语, 前后二句表明“现在分词”不等于“动名词”】

9. * propose/suggest him to go【不合惯用法】

advise/recommend him to go.【惯用动宾句型】

10. * advice/recommend/suggest to buy a good dictionary【不合惯用法】

advice/recommend/propose/suggest buying a good dictionary...

【惯用】

11. * advice/propose/suggest me a Chinese novel【不合于惯用动宾句型】

What did she advise/recommend you? She recommended me a Chinese novel.【惯用】

ALD(*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*) 以前讲解动宾句型时,列出 25 种 verb pattern,其中很多种又包含更加细分的不同类型,用 VP1A ... VP25C 等为标志。后来,较新版本的 ALD 把非表意符号 1A、2B 等换成表意符号 Tt (transitive verb + to infinitive), Cni (complex transitive verb + noun + infinitive), Dnn (double transitive verb + noun + noun) 等。但是罗列的句型还是太多,有三十多种,难以记清。而国内现在还没有其他工具书能够把动宾句型讲述得这么仔细。

又要讲细,又要好记,做得到吗? 做得到! 这就必须区分非疑难句型和疑难句型。我们把非疑难的多种排除在外,只剩下 12 种易混易错的疑难动宾句型,各以区分明确的表意符号代表。12 种中又有 8 种的搭配关系还有一定规律可循,最后只是 4 种最难掌握的句型(见《通用英语动词、动宾句型教程》第 12 章末到 13 章、14 章),我就此把 300 多个常用动词分门别类,讲明所接宾语类型,可谓全盘而有条理地解决了动词用法的一大难题,比西方独特的 A. S. Hornby 所著的 *A Guide to English Verb Patterns and Usage* 更进了一步。

英语动词有没有一般体? 有人说英语只有进行体和完成体;而我们看到法语、俄语有未完成体对应于完成体,未完成体有其表示进行的形式,实际英语一般体和进行体都属于“未完成”,是完成的对立面。该不该把“将来时”纳入时态系统? will finish 是属词汇手段(类似 be about to finish)还是属“分析形式”的词形变化手段(类似 have finished)? 法语和西班牙语的体、时系统,已用“实意动词 + 助动词”合成一词的“综合形式”来表示将来时:法语 finirai/finiras 本由分析

形式 finir ai/as 缩略而成,原相当于 I/You finish have 或 I/You have to finish 。

英语自古留下的“虚拟语气”体系是否仍然存在?(如德语、法语、西班牙语保存了更完整的虚拟系统。)

北京大学岑麒祥教授在谈印欧语族比较语言学的发展时说:“历史比较语言学解决了许多传统语言学所不能解决的问题… 忽视历史发展,就会对现存语法体系的某些现象无法加以适当的估量。”恩格斯批判杜林“伪造的技术语法”说它“一不顾自身已经死亡的形式,二不顾同类活的和死的语言”,“由于缺乏历史的基础而带有自己全部的诡辩性和任意性。”对于现代英语语法许多争议问题,能不能也通过纵向的历史发展与横向的多语种比较,求得解决呢?我们不但提出了英语历史的演变和同族语言的类比,而且是从动态、辩证的高度对其做出了阐述。

讲解语法时应当把对立统一方法装在心中,用在实处。各种反粒子的发现,也在证实相对论的普遍真理。五四新文化运动先驱张申府先生说:“科学是学,哲学是学之学。”由科学充实了的哲学,回过头来指引着科学。中山大学王宗炎教授评论“转换一生成语法”时说:“由于 Chomsky 的哲学基础不可靠,由于他的研究方向和方法大有问题,很难指望他有什么宝贵贡献或重大突破。”又说:“外国学者的学说,也跟一般引进的东西一样,须得放在各种检查仪之下检查一番。”带头人教给我们的治学之术,应使我们对国外有其价值的新资料,熔炼而提纯,而不是照搬。

以下引自西方论述的三组例句,是一类用语中两两对应的标本,这种未经着重指明的“相反相成”关系(Extremes meet),我们应强调其实际是所有各方面纵横关联的代表。

It's not the first time he has failed to turn up, is it? (!)(UCEG)

【反义附加问句】(升调或降调)

You have tea at four, don't you? (!) (Alexander)【否定反义附

加问句)(升调或降调)

Oh, that's what you believe, is it? (UCEG)【同义附加问句,追问】

So you don't like my cooking, don't you? (Swan)【否定同义附加问句,强势追问】

Have you seen him yet? (CGEL)【通常问句,用非肯定词语 yet】
你已经见到他了吗?

Haven't you seen him yet? (ib)【否定疑问句,认为情况应属肯定】你不是已经见到他了吗?

Have you already seen him? (ib)【肯定意向用语 already 在此表达惊讶】你这就已见到他了?

Haven't you already seen him? (ib)【否定疑问句中,认为情况必属肯定】你不是确实已见到他了吗?

She could/might have gone off with some friends — it was Saturday. 【过去主/客观或然性】

I met her soon after the war. It would/should have been around March 1966. 【过去主/客观倾向性】

You could/might have told me Frances was ill. 【过去主/客观可能性,未实现,指本应而未曾告诉我】

The potatoes would/should have been better with a bit more salt. 【过去主/客观倾向性,未实现】(比较 must have been ..., 过去必然)

又如, the rat/horse 多用于“确指”, a rat/horse 多用于“不确指”(两种所指都属“特指”)。而在 A rat is larger than a mouse. 和 The tractor has replaced the horse. 中, a rat 和 the horse 却是表示以个体或以总体代表的“类指”(“泛指”的一种)。The sun was right above the head. (高于其上) Over our heads hung heavy clouds. (覆盖于上) Parts of Holland are below sea level. (低于其下) The fields are under

water after the heavy rain. (覆盖于下)

同属纵横关联的还有语气副词中的四种(同表对客观关系的主观说明)超越:even;局限:only;转折:yet;类同:also等等。

下列成对范畴的提出,都是辩证观点在英语语法中的体现,有助于全面系统地掌握语言规律:

实词及某些实词的虚化	——虚词及某些虚词的名词/动词化
无限名称词类	——有限名目词类
本体代词	——属性代词
肯定词语及疑问句中的肯定意向	——(疑问/否定/条件句)非肯定词语
动句	——静句
动表(“动词+表语”)	
性复合谓语	——“情态”复合谓语
主谓性复合宾语	——主表性复合宾语
情态动词所表的主观势态	——客观势态(客观可能、倾向、必要)
语句的客观陈述	——所加的主观语气
限制性语气状语	——非限制性语气状语
居动词/表语前位/后位的状语	——外位状语
状语从句所表横向对应关系	——纵向因果关系
顺推条件句	——逆推条件句

我们编写的六卷一套语法教程(分别论述句法、名词与冠词、动词与动宾句型、形容词与数词、代词与替代词、副词介词与连词;各卷书名见封底)力求既不脱离教学语法的合理根基,又在每章每节都萌发出新生枝叶与鲜美果实。这是教学群体几十年实践与科研的汇报。我们热情期待读者和外语专家们给以指点。

为兼顾初阶、中阶、高阶学习人员,全书各章节的深度广度不同。查阅时宜各取所需。当以其为教材时,教师可有所选择:在公共外语课堂上,可跳过个别片段;而在英语专业课堂上,则可着重讲授较为深广的论述。用作非专业英语语法教材,6本书主干部分可讲两个学期;用作专业教材,全书可于三个学期左右授完。

我们所配练习的特色之一,是精选了名家名著。这些名家有: Andersen (丹麦), Carroll (《艾丽斯漫游奇境记》), Churchill, Dickinson, E. B. Browning, Emerson, Franklin, Gorky (俄罗斯), Grim Brothers (德国), Helen Keller (盲聋作家), Lincoln, Longfellow, Martin Luther King (黑人活动家), O' Henry, Princess Diana (“人民的王妃”黛安娜), Stevenson, Tagore (印度), Thoreau (《瓦尔登湖》作者梭罗), Whitman 等。这不但使空洞的语法条条和典范语言实践结合起来,而且引导读者细致理解最珍奇的诗文。我们不避少量较艰深文字,而是对其加了注释和译文。所以兴趣就蕴含在难度中。

最后,全书总主编要代表各卷主编和全体编者,向关注并支持我们勇挑重担的王晓玲、刘慧君、顾永才、刘传志、刘军教授敬致谢忱;向引导并激励我们奋力开拓的程慕胜、熊德兰、熊德毓、王宗炎教授深表感激。

《通用英语语法全程》总主编
2004 夏于渤海滨、燕山麓、河北理工大学外语园

目 录

第一编 简单句与句中成分面面观

第一章 动句、静句等句子的多种分类法

- 1.1 词性一般只能在句中辨别…………… (3)
- 1.2 句子的中心是谓语…………… (4)
- 1.3 句子按谓语“动/静”性质
 所分 4 大类、14 种句型…………… (6)
- 1.4 常讲的 5 种或 7 种句型…………… (9)
- 1.5 句子按用途与结构分类,并借语调相区别…………… (10)
- 1.6 附加问句的类别和语调…………… (12)
- Exercise 1…………… (13)

第二章 简繁迥异的句子成分

- 2.1 单一成分、各属单一性质的双重宾语…………… (16)
- 2.2 主动、被动句中相应的复合宾语/复合主语…………… (18)
- 2.3 感受/意志/态度/祈使等类动词
 所接复合宾语的比较…………… (22)
- 2.4 各类词语、复合结构担任句中成分总表…………… (25)
- Exercise 2…………… (27)

第三章 主、谓的深层一致关系

3.1	名词主语“形复实单”或“似单实复”	(30)
3.2	同一集合名词做主语,指单指复颇有讲究	(33)
3.3	谓语同主语的“实意一致”和“近邻一致”	(35)
3.4	主语句、祈使句及惯用不完整句	(38)
3.5	情景省略句	(40)
3.6	作补足成分的不定式被省略 时, to 留作代表	(43)
Exercise 3		(46)

第四章 否定的多方关联与肯定、非肯定句的对应词语

4.1	表否定的代词、副词、连词的用法	(50)
4.2	关系微妙的否定中心、否定转移、否定 范围和部分否定	(54)
4.3	情态复合谓语的否定中心在 not 前或后	(58)
4.4	非肯定句中用非肯定词语,除非有肯定意向	(62)
4.5	多用于非肯定句的 long, far, many, much 可用于哪几种肯定句?	(66)
Exercise 4		(71)

第五章 语序之一——前位、后位、外位状语

5.1	正装语序中位置灵活多样的各种状语	(74)
5.2	动词/表语前位副词状语	(76)
5.3	动词/表语前位语气副词状语	(85)
5.4	动词/表语前位词组、短语状语	(88)
5.5	动宾/系表后位副词状语	(90)
5.6	动宾/系表后位词组、短语状语	(91)

5.7 “外位”原因/目的/结果等类状语 和时间状语·····	(93)
5.8 为均衡、沉稳而改变通常语序·····	(95)
5.9 倒装主从复合句句首的 Not until 中的 Not 属于后边主句的谓语·····	(98)
5.10 语气状语的多种语气意义·····	(100)
5.11 否定语气状语·····	(101)
5.12 各种语气状语修饰个别词语,或修饰 谓语或全句·····	(102)
5.13 各种语气状语置于动表前位或 宾语、状语之前·····	(104)
Exercise 5·····	(105)

第六章 语序之二——为沉稳、强调、或承前而倒装

6.1 不要虎头蛇尾,移较长结构压在句末·····	(109)
6.2 打破正常顺序,把强调成分突出在句首·····	(111)
6.3 为与前述的内容相接,用关联词语牵引全句·····	(114)
Exercise 6·····	(115)

第二编 复合句的连接;连接代(副)词、 关系代(副)词;连词

第七章 关系错综的复合结构、分句及从句

7.1—7.2 并列分句与从句的不同用法·····	(121)
7.1 for 是并列连词; because 是主从连词·····	(121)
7.2 so 可为并列连词; so that 仅为主从连词·····	(124)

7.3—7.5 逻辑上与语法上的主谓关系	(127)
7.3 for 等引导的不定式复合结构与从句	(127)
7.4 with 引导的分词复合结构与从句	(129)
7.5 独立结构与从句	(131)
7.6—7.8 不定式、分词短语等与相当的从句	(134)
7.6 不定式、分词短语与从句并非总能互换	(134)
7.7 分词、形容词定语不仅后位者相当定语从句	(136)
7.8 形容词及其短语作状语并非皆为省略的从句	(137)
Exercise 7	(139)

第八章 名词从句用法的关键在于 关联词性质——从句用法关键之一

8.1—8.3 按“主/表/宾从句”或关联词性质分类	(142)
8.1 名词能担任的成分,名词从句都能担任	(142)
8.2 作定语、状语的名词的性质与相应的 定语从句、状语从句	(144)
8.3 引导从句的 what, where 等可保留或失去 疑问意义	(148)
8.4—8.6 Wh-间接问句与问题从句	(150)
8.4 大多数 Wh-形式能够引导特殊问题从句	(150)
8.5 转为连词的 Wh-形式 whether 引导一般问题从句	(154)
8.6 连词 whether 与 if 的相通与不同	(156)
8.7—8.9 Wh-名词性关系从句	(158)
8.7 what/which/Wh-ever 可相当 “先行词+关系代词”	(158)
8.8 失去疑问意义的 what/which/Wh-ever 引导名词性关系从句	(160)
8.9 失去疑问意义的 when/where/why/how	

引导名词性关系从句	(164)
8.10—8.11 Wh-形式不只能引导名词从句	(166)
8.10 介词宾语从句前省略介词,转成 Wh-方面 状语从句.....	(166)
8.11 Wh-形式引导名词从句及其它从句综述	(168)
8.12—8.16 that 名词从句及其转成的状语从句	(171)
8.12 主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句 等 5 种 that 从句	(171)
8.13 复合宾语/主语可相当宾语/主语从句.....	(176)
8.14 介词宾语从句前略介词,转成 that 方面/原因状语从句	(181)
8.15 that 名词从句的语气,用或不用 should	(183)
8.16 引导名词从句的 that 的省略	(187)
Exercise 8	(194)

第九章 定语从句选用或者不用关系代词、关系副词的规律——从句用法关键之二

9.1—9.4 不同关系代词的性质	(197)
9.1 非限制性定语从句之所以不用 that 引导	(197)
9.2 关系代词 that, which, as 的不同用法	(201)
9.3 as 由连词转作关系代词	(206)
9.4 but 由介词转作关系代词	(210)
9.5 — 9.10 who/which/that 等的选择与“省略”	(211)
9.5 一般要用 who/whom/whose 的情况	(211)
9.6 一般只用 which 的情况	(216)
9.7 一般只用或多用 that 的情况	(219)
9.8 先行词为某些代词、形容词限定的名词时.....	(224)
9.9 time when 与 time that 的不同用途	(230)

9.10 关系代词的省略 (234)

Exercise 9 (238)

第十章 分裂句是带定语从句的特异复合句——从句用法关键之三

10.1 分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是 It (241)

10.2 分裂句与一般含定语从句复合句的不同 (243)

10.3 分裂句所强调的相应简单句各种成分 (246)

10.4 强调原状语一般不用 when/where/why
引导从句 (250)

10.5 It was in 1918 that ... 句型性质 (253)

10.6 主语代词、谓语时态与主句语序的变换 (256)

10.7 分裂句中关系代词 that, who 的“省略” (261)

10.8 所谓“拟分裂句”What he's done is. (265)

Exercise 10 (268)

第十一章 while, as, that, if 等引导对应或因果状语从句——从句用法关键之四

11.1—11.2 表示持续、距离等时间、空间关系的
while/as 等从句 (270)

11.1 时间从句 while/as... 并不是回答 what time? (270)

11.2 It's... since/from... 与
It/I was... before... 等 (277)

11.3—11.6 表对应关系的不只方式从句与比较从句 (282)

11.3 as 引导表示对应关系的多种状语从句 (282)

11.4 as much as we/more than we
从句可换作... as us/... than us 的短语 (291)

11.5 比较从句中可以或惯于省略的种种情况 (297)

11.6	比例从句 as she talked 可相当于 the more she talked	(302)
11.7—11.10	表原因关系的包括条件、让步、程度、 目的等类从句.....	(307)
11.7	特种原因:条件或让步; 特种条件:程度或目的	(307)
11.8	单独引导多种状语从句的 that 多半 不可省略.....	(312)
11.9	复合连词“... that”引导十余种状语从句及 其中 that 的省略	(318)
11.10	so/such (...) that 怎样分别引导 程度/目的/结果从句	(324)
Exercise 11	(328)

第三编 语句之间的多种关联

第十二章 多功能 that, it, as, while, when, where

12.1	that 与 it 从实词到虚词	(335)
12.2	as 从副词到连词、关系代词,从连词到介词	(342)
12.3	as 引导宾语补语和主语补语	(345)
12.4	while, when, where 各有十余种句法功能	(349)
Exercise 12	(353)

第十三章 主、从句语序、从句时态的简化、词语的省略

13.1	从句位置与主、从句中的倒装	(355)
13.2	间接引语中动词“错向过去”与否的含义差别,情态动词	

“错向过去”与否.....	(360)
13.3 从句指将来,动词常用较简便现在 /现在进行/现在完成形式.....	(366)
13.4 从句略去与主句词语重复或可以理解的词语.....	(372)
13.5 并列分句或从句中“主语 + be”不可只略其一	(376)
Exercise 13	(379)

第十四章 选用从句与选用相应结构的比较

14.1 简单句、并列复合句与主从复合句的语体差别	(381)
14.2 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语体因素.....	(383)
14.3 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语义因素.....	(387)
14.4 “无依着修饰语”多应改为从句或以其它方法改正.....	(392)
14.5 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、 复合结构作状语、作定语的情况	(396)
14.6 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、 复合结构作宾语的情况.....	(399)
14.7 语气从句、短语、短句等形式的语气状语.....	(406)
Exercise 14	(417)
 例句出处略语表(主要参考书目).....	(420)
练习题参考答案.....	(426)

第一编

简单句与句中成分面面观

第一章 动句、静句等句的多种分类法

1.1 词性一般只能在句中辨别

语言用于交际的最小单位是句子。一般我们不会只说 Like? Love? 或 Like! Love! 而是把词语用于句中,而且只有在句中,词才有一定的词性乃至词义。如 like 和 love, 在下面的句子中是作为名词、动词、形容词,还是介词、连词呢? 取哪一种意义呢?

Like it? / *Love* it? (接用宾语,为及物动词) 喜欢它吗?

Like it or lump it. (DCIE) (动词)不喜欢就得将就。较明确说法是 If you don't *like* it/If he doesn't *like* it, you/he must lump it. 之类。

Love little, *love* long. (谚语) (没有宾语而接状语,为不及物动词)爱得温和,才爱得久长。

Mrs. Bellow is a lady who cannot *love* either little or long. 贝洛夫人是一位既不能爱得温和、又不能爱得长久的贵妇人。(她每爱必炽烈,一爱便罢休。)

(There is) No *love* like the first (love). (Howell) (love 作主语,为名词;旧时这样句中的 like 为形容词,后接 to, 再接介词宾语;现在 to 已经略去不用,like 转为介词) 任何一次爱情也不会像初恋那样美好。

Connors leads 15-*love*. (LDCE) (love 与数词结合,作宾语;本身为名词) 康诺斯领先,比分为 15 比零。(该 love 由法语演化而来,法语可象征零分的“鸡蛋”,带定冠词时与英语 love 发音相似)

Like likes like. (NDEC) (前者为主语名词,后者为宾语名词,中间的为谓语动词)同类喜欢同类。Marry your *like/equal/match.* (ODEP) 要和与你同是一类的人结婚/要和与你相当(匹配)的人结婚。

Looks *like* rain. (CGEL) (句前省略了主语 It ;名词 rain 前的 like 为介词) 看着像要下雨。

Don't feel *like* (drinking) beer tonight. (LDCE) (like 为介词性质, feel 和它构成短语动词)(我)今天晚上不想喝啤酒。

It looks *like* I'll be late today. (Haley) (非正式说法用 like 引导从句,该 like 为连词;正式说法是: It looks as if I'll be late today.) 看样子,我今天要迟到了。

1.2 句子的中心是谓语

汉语可以只用一个词问:“喜欢?”回答也可只说:“喜欢!”,这也是句子,是省略句,是“你喜欢这个吗?”和“我喜欢这个!”的省略说法。英语也有只用一个词构成的句子,特别是一个不及物动词,自任谓语,不带宾语:

Look! Listen! 看! 听!

Get set! Go! 预备! 跑!

一些本属及物的动词有时可用作不及物动词,一个词成为一句话:

See — the sun is out! (RHD) (表更强语气、感情色彩,但不是原义“看见”)看啊——太阳出来了!

Hear, hear! (ALD) (热烈赞同,或转表讥讽)听啊,听啊!(不是“听见”)

只用作及物动词的 have 与 take 等就不能作为不带宾语的谓语,不能只说 Have! Take! 而要说: Have/Take some more! 再吃一点儿!

英语不仅第二人称祈使句一般没有主语,第一、第三人称句子也常常略去主语,如前所举 Don't feel like drinking... 及 (It) Looks like rain. 二句。汉语说“(看着)像要下雨”,未用主语。英语以外的各种外语表达此义时,有的像英语借用“无人称代词”虚设“无人称主语”(impersonal subject — GCE),如法语用 il, 德语用 es (都相当英语 it);有的像汉语,根本不设主语,如西班牙语说 Parece que va a llover. 句首的 Parece 即 Looks like ... 之意,是句中谓语。

由此可见,句子的核心就是谓语。句中谓语一般必不可少。谓语的省略只发生在与上文重复的情况下,或在为数不多的惯用语中:

Thanks. (I owe you my thanks/I give you my thanks.) 多谢。

Pardon? (Beg pardon? /I beg your pardon?)(请恕我没听清。)您说什么?

All aboard! (All come aboard!) 全都上船(车/飞机)!

What of it? (What difference will come of it?) 这有什么关系呢?

谓语一般不略,但是,复合形式的谓语,其前一部分即情态动词、联系动词、助动词有时可以略去;其后一部分即谓语中心所在的实意动词或表语,总要保留:

Why (not) listen to him? (Why should you listen to him? /Why shouldn't you listen to him?)(略情态动词及主语)你为什么(不)听他的话呢?

Well done! (That's well done!)(略主语及被动语态助动词)干得好!

Seen Andy? (Swan) (Have you seen Andy?)(略完成体助动词及主语)(你)看见安迪了吗?

Coming tomorrow. (I'm coming tomorrow.)(略主语及进行体助动词)我明天来。

Ready? (Are you ready?)(略联系动词及主语,只留表语)(你)准备好了吗?

“Who’s it?”“Me.”(略主语及联系动词)“谁呀?”“我。”

1.3 句子按谓语“动/静”性质所分 4 大类、14 种句型

实意动词作谓语,表示事物的动作状态(包括表存在等相对稳定的状态)。联系动词加表语作谓语,表示事物与事物的联系状态。句子首先要按所表事物的状态分类,即按谓语性质分成“动句”与“静句”两大类。再由这二者结合,扩展形成 4 大类句子:

1) 动句 (Verbal Sentences)

2) 静句 (Nominal Sentences)

3) (动词引导表语作复合谓语的) 动词表语句 (Verbal-Nominal Sentences)

4) (加情态动词、表主观认识中的客观运动或联系的) 情态谓语句 (Modal predication Sentences)

这些分类名称已被广泛采纳,可见于近期语言学、语法学文献,如《英汉语言学词汇》(中国社会科学出版社)等。

将句子进一步分成 14 种类型,更有利于实用:

动句可分:

1) 不及物动词句

I *called* and *called* but no one came (to my assistance.) (两个并列分句)我喊了又喊,但没人来(帮我)。

2) 状语补足不及物动词句

My sister *lives* next door. (不可只说 * My sister lives.) 我的姐姐住在隔壁。

I *have been* to see my uncle. (ALD) (不可只说 * I have been.) 我去看望了我的伯父。

She *acted* badly/foolishly. (不可只说 * She acted.) 她表现得很坏/干得很蠢。

3) 简单及物动词句

Her mother **called the boy**. (可有相应的被动句 The boy was called.) 她的母亲把那男孩子叫了来。

I don't **recall him** saying anything/don't recall that he took any part in the conversation/don't recall what he said. (可用从句作宾语)我不记得他说什么了没有/不记得他曾参加谈话/不记得他说的是怎么了。

4) 状语补足及物动词句

Put all the toys upstairs. (不可只说 * Put all the toys.) 把所有的玩具都放到楼上去。

Many scholars **locate the Garden of Eden in Babylonia**. (RHD) (不可只说 Many scholars locate the Garden of Eden.) 许多学者把伊甸园的所在确定于巴比伦王国境内。

They **treated their sister as if she were only a servant**. (可用从句作状语)她们对待她们的妹妹就好像她只是一个仆人。

5) 双重及物动词句

Call me a porter. (Close) (间接宾语多可略去;或改用介词短语: Call a porter. Call a porter for me.) 给我叫一个搬运工来。(汉语也可以将“给我”略去:叫一个搬运工来。)

I **sent them what they needed**. I sent what they needed. I sent what they needed to them. (直接宾语可由从句担任,间接宾语也可以由从句担任,见 8.1)我给他们发去了他们所需要的东西。

6) 复合及物动词句

Call a spade a spade. (谚语) (复合宾语两部分结为一体,皆不可略去;此句用了名词型复合宾语,见 2.2)直言不讳/是啥说啥。

I **call that dishonest**. (ALD) (形容词/副词/介词短语型复合宾

语,见 2.2)我说那样做是不老实的。

He **called us to help him**. (WBD) (不定式型复合宾语,见 2.2)
他叫我们来帮助他。

静句可分:

7)简单联系动词句

She's **Mary**. (用了名词表语)她是玛丽。

She's **14 years old**. (用了形容词表语,带度量状语的 old)她 14 岁。

That's what she calls her sister. (表语可由从句担任)这就是她对姐姐的称呼。

8)变化联系动词句

She **became queen / famous**. 她成为女王/出了名。

He's **getting better**. 他的病情在逐渐好转。

They **remain the best of friends**. (表示不变的联系,也属这类句子)他们仍然是最要好的朋友。

9)感受联系动词句

She **felt ill**. 她觉得不舒服。

The table **felt rough**. (CGEL) 这桌子摸着很粗糙。

动词表语句分:

10)不及物动词结合表语句

The coin **rung true / false**. (Horny) 这块硬币的响声表明它是真的/伪币。

He **lived and died a bachelor**. 他一生一世一直是个单身汉。

They **parted the best of friends**. 他们分手时,已是最要好的朋友。

11)及物动词结合表语句(被动,见 1.8 第四大类“使为”动词复合宾语)

The baby **was named Richard** but is usually **called Dick**. 孩子起

名叫理查得,但常被称为迪克(理查得的昵称)。

They *were named / counted her best friends*. 他们被称为/认为是她最好的朋友。

情态谓语句可分:

12) 情态谓语句

Could you call me a porter? (Coleus) 你可以给我叫个搬运工来吗?

Should she call to him to get off? (Edwards) 她应该招呼他下车吗?

13) 情态谓语句

She *must be* at least 40 years old. 她想必至少有 40 岁了。

14) 情态谓语句

He *might* fairly be *called* a truthful boy. (Bennett) 他可以被公正地称为一个诚实的孩子。

1.4 常讲的 5 种或 7 种句型

看来似乎是另外一种分类法的按句型分类,实质上就是按谓语句的性质分类。常用的教材、语法书等所列的基本句型就是上述类型中最常用的七种;有些书中,将上述 14 种之 2) 合并于 1), 将其中之 4) 合并于 3), 便成为五种:

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------|
| 1)(含 14 种之 2) | 主语——谓语动词(——状语) | [不及物句] |
| 2)(其中之 3 含其中 4) | 主语——谓语动词——宾语(——状语) | [简单及物句] |
| 3)(其中之 5) | 主语——谓语动词——间接宾语——直接宾语 | [双重及物句] |
| 4)(其中之 6) | 主语——谓语动词——复合宾语 | [复合及物句] |

5)(其中之 7) 主语——联系动词——表语 [联系句]
 有人不管谓语的动/静性质,只按由简到繁的顺序排列,就把 7) 提前,例如插到 1)、3) 中间,并改变序号。

1.5 句子按用途与结构分类,并借语调相区别

句子除按性质、句型分类外,还可按用途分类或按结构分类,详见以下二表:

句子的用途分类表

类 型		说明与示例
陈述句	肯定句	略
	否定句	略
疑问句	一般问句	要求肯定或否定回答: Yes/No, ...
	特殊问句	What/When/How...? 要求以特殊所指回答
	选择问句	Are you going or do you prefer to stay?
	附加问句	You're ready, aren't you?
祈使句	第二人称祈使句	Get ready by eight.
	第一/第三人称祈使句	Let her/me have a look.
感 叹 句		How time flies!

还可按结构分为:

句子的结构分类表

类 型	说明与示例
简单句	由一个主谓语结构或一个略去主语 的谓语等构成

续表

类 型		说明与示例
并列复合句(由两个以上松散相接的分句构成)	联系并列句	... and ...
	选择并列句	... or ...
	反意并列句	... but ...
	原因/理由并列句	..., for ... (关系松散, 见 7.1)
	结果/推断并列句	..., so ... (关系松散, 见 7.2)
主从复合句	主句 + 名词从句/定语从句/状语从句等类从句	主句、从句紧密相依 (... because/so that...)

主谓正装或主谓倒装或者部分倒装的不同语序,可区别不同用途的句子:

What these ancient walls could tell us! (正装,感叹句)这古老的城墙能向我们述说多少往事啊!

What could these ancient walls tell us? (部分倒装,疑问句)这古老的城墙能向我们述说什么呢?

在口语中,语调帮助区别不同用途、不同结构的句子,如简单句中的陈述句、祈使句、感叹句及特殊问句,通常用降调;一般问句用升调;选择问句用“升降调”:

Shall we go by bus or train? (全句连成一气,升调,一般问句)我们乘长途汽车或火车去好吗?(不要步行那么远)

Shall we go by bus(升调),or (shall we go) by train(后一分句降调)? (全句为选择问句)我们是乘长途汽车去好,还要乘火车去好呢?

并列复合句关系松散的各分句、主从复合句中偶有关系不太紧密的各部分(如主句和非限制性定语从句),可以各自都用降调。主

句与从句的关系通常是很紧密的,除一气说完了的较短主从复合句外,一般是从句用升调,主句用降调:

You'll be dead tired(主句降)before the day's out(从句升).(W. Allan, *Living English Speech*)不到天黑,你就得累坏了。

Before he knew what was happening (从句升),the car skidded and mounted the pavement (主句降).(ib)他还不知道是怎么回事,那汽车就向旁一滑,冲上了人行便道。

1.6 附加问句的类别和语调

附加问句(tag questions)即加于对方陈述或自己陈述的追问。

所加追问可以顺着原来的肯定或否定而问,是为“顺问”,表示惊疑、讥讽等,都用升调。

所加追问也可以逆着原来的肯定或否定而问,是为“反问”,用升调或降调时意义不同。

四种附加问句的意义、语调表

附加问句类别	语调的基本意义 疑问用升调——非疑问用降调
对话顺问(对于对方的肯定/否定存在怀疑)	[惊、疑、不赞同]“真的吗?”——升调 “You must pay me the money.” “Oh, I must, must I?” “They're moving to New York.” “Are they?” “Their daughter isn't very clever.” “Is she?” (CGEL) “Isn't it lovely? (It's really lovely.)” “Is it?”
自陈顺问(以自己的肯定/否定质问对方)	[责怪、讥讽]“是这么回事儿吗?”——升调 So you're getting married, are you? So that's your little game, is it? (早已看穿这小把戏) So you don't like my cooking, don't you? (Swan) You mean he won't pay his bills, won't he? (We'll see about that. 我们来看个究竟吧!)

续表

附加问句类别	语调的基本意义 疑问用升调——非疑问用降调
对话反问(对于对方的肯定/否定确认不疑)	<p>[赞同、确信] “可不是么!”——降调 “Their daughter is very clever.” “(Yes,) Isn't she?” “She's put on a lot of weight.” “Hasn't she!” (Swan) (可用感叹号:“她可不是真增加分量了么!”) “I can't wait till tomorrow.” “(You can't,) Can you?”</p>
自陈反问(对于自己的肯定/否定或存在怀疑或确认不疑)	<p>[期待解疑]——升; [期待确认所述]——降调 “You've met Lamb, haven't you?” (用升调时为“是吗?”;用降调时为“是吧?!”) (Close) “I suppose (that) you're not serious, are you?” (升调,有“... am I right?”之意,此处附加问句接于从句) “It's true, isn't it? (降). That you're thinking of giving up your job?” (该附加问句接于主句,居主从句间;所用降调有... yes, I believe it is 之意)</p>

Exercise 1

I. 把下列句子译成汉语,并说明黑体字的词性,即属于什么词类:

1. I love having Friday's **off**.
2. The motor is **off**.
3. My house is **off** the main street.
4. Letters have been pouring **in** from everybody who heard the news on the radio.
5. He was **in** no mood for a conversation with the old woman.
6. I was walking **down** the street.
7. He **upped** and hit his boss.
8. He has had more **ups** than **downs** in his time.

II. 将下列各句补充为反问句:

1. I'm late, ...?
2. She has tea at 4:00 p. m., ...?
3. He will finish this work at six, ...?
4. She is going to study French, ...?
5. There will be a rail strike tomorrow, ...?
6. Everyone is ready to leave, ...?
7. You don't mind my opening the window, ...?
8. You can't translate this article without a dictionary, ...?

III. 将下列各句改成感叹句:

1. This task is difficult.
2. We had a long active day.
3. He has made good progress in his studies.
4. He looks healthy after his vacation.
5. She is a skilled worker.
6. You are absent-minded.
7. It was a clear, cold winter day.

IV. 说明下面一段文字中标有序号的词语所担任的谓语类型(联系动词句谓语、不及物句谓语、简单及物句谓语、双重及物句谓语、复合及物句谓语,如果是被动句或加用情态动词的句子,也要注明),最前的带有同位语从句的复合句已经作为范例,标明了主句和从句谓语的类型:

A born teacher, she was destined(“命中注定”被动句谓语) to achieve her noble aim that she was to turn(情态复合及物句谓语) a deaf-blind person into a useful human being. (was to 类似 would 而语

气更强，turn 在此接用“介词短语型复合宾语”... into a useful human being , 详见 2.2)

What a difficult case(事例, 问题) I must have been(1) to this young teacher!

I remember(2) the many times when she tried(3) to spell words (这里指用盲文信号拼写单词) into my small hand.

But neither words nor letters meant(4) anything to me.

I thought(5) that her finger movements were(6) some kind of games.

But at last, on April 5th, 1887, she reached (7) my understanding.

About a month after her arrival, she taught(8) me the word “water.”

It happened(9) at the well(这里指装有唧筒的“泵井”) where I was holding(10) a jar while Annie pumped(11).

As the water flowed(12) onto my hand, she kept(13) spelling w-a-t-e-r into my other hand with her fingers.

It was(14) the first joy that I had known(15) for years. 那是多年以来我第一次感到欢乐。

I reached(16) out to Annie's hand. 我向安妮的手伸出我的手去。

She understood(17) that I was begging(18) for new words, for the names of things that I touch(19). 她明白, 我在要求教我新词, 教我所摸到的东西的名字。

The words, so full of meaning, flew(20) from her hand to mine.

(Helen Keller, *My Teacher*)

第二章 简繁迥异的句子成分

2.1 单一成分、各属单一性质的双重宾语

词是指称单一事物的符号。除感叹词仅属象征几种感情之外，一般的词都能相互组合或替换，而构成句子，以表示事物的运动或联系。其中实词指称事物，包括静态事物、运动、属性、特征，分工担任句中各种成分(单一成分)；而虚词反映抽象关系，在句中表明词、句的特定关联或相关范畴，本身不能担任句中成分。

并列连词把词、短语、分句连接起来；主从连词把从句连接于主句，如 *After he has been here(他来过之后)...* 中的 *after*。介词把各种词语或成分连接于名词性词语(名词/代词/动名词等担任的介词宾语)，如 *What has he been after?* (他一直在追求什么?) 中的 *after*，在语法和语义上都连接着 *What*。

已化为虚词的冠词的选用与“不用”都表示名词、代词的“所指”范畴，如：

Cook Cook(e) cooks better than cooks from cookshops. (我家厨师库克做菜，比饭店的厨师做得还好)——句首无冠词、开头要大写的个体名词 *Cook* 指家中独有成员，用如 *Father/Mother/Nurse* (保姆)。它与其后专有名词 *Cook(e)* 同属“独指”(unique reference)；后边两个不带冠词的复数名词 *cooks* 和 *cookshops* 属“不确指”(indefinite reference)。

该句中间的动词 *cooks* 可用带助动词(也已虚化)的形式来替换，如 *has been cooking*，那就表示该动词所属范畴是：直陈语气、主动语态、一般体现在完成进行时、单数第三人称。

一组词,约定俗成地指称单一事物,为固定词组,如 Roast Beijing Duck(北京烤鸭)。非固定搭配的活动词组,结构较复杂的称为短语,如介词短语 like a waddling duck(像个一拽一拽的鸭子),现在分词短语或动名词短语 playing ducks and drakes with his fortune(拿他的财产打水漂儿玩)等。

词组或短语担任的句中成分,还是指称单一事物(尽管加了限定与关联),仍属单一成分。

并列成分各为一个单一成分,不是复合性质。双重宾语,即间接宾语加直接宾语,也不属“复合”,因为间接宾语多可略去而不影响句子的基本含义,证明它所指称的是动词所表运动间接涉及的事物,是可有可无的。直接宾语指称及物运动必定要有的单一承受者,间接、直接二宾语并非“浑然一体、缺一不可”的复合成分:

He promised (*me*) *assistance* whenever it should be needed. 他答应(我)在需要帮助时(他)就来相帮。(= He promised to assist whenever I should need his assistance.)

The firm *promised* (*the workers*) *a wage increase*. /The firm promised a wage increase. /The firm promised a wage increase (to the workers). 该商行答应(工人们)/(向工人们)作出承诺,要提高工资。

与此对照,复合宾语指称具有准“主谓/主表”关系的复合情况或称复合事物,所含前后成分(按旧的名称,宾语加宾补即宾语补语,下句中的 me to help...)如失去其一,就完全去掉了句子的基本意义:

He allowed me to help with her lessons. 他答应/允许/同意我帮助她做功课。

不能说 * He allowed to help with her ~~lesson~~X.

2.2 主动、被动句中相应的复合宾语/复合主语

我们从 1.3 开始提到的动表复合谓语和语气复合谓语,在语法上不属“复合结构”,尽管复合谓语和“复合结构”都构成句中的复合成分。

因为复合结构都含有逻辑主语和逻辑谓语/逻辑表语两两结对的组成成分,或称之为准主语和准谓语/准表语;复合结构类似从句,表示某事物发生运动或联系,但免去了谓语动词在从句中要有的很多词形变化,其准谓语取动词非限定形式(分词、不定式等):

She began to wish *the whole business finished*. (wish 在此接复合宾语;比较下面句中接宾语从句:She began to wish that the whole business would be/would have been finished.) 她开始希望整个这件事能早日结束。

I wish *it to be finished tomorrow*. (RHD) (I wish that it could be finished tomorrow.) 我但愿这工作明天能干完。

We all wish *the invention a (great) success*. (a success 为复合宾语中的准表语;也可以说 wish the invention to be a success) 我们全都祝愿这一发明取得(极大)成功。

在本章,我们先只讨论复合结构中的复合宾语和复合主语,属其他类型的留到后面(7.3, 7.4, 7.5)来讨论。

复合宾语同双重宾语的区别,除二者前一成分不可或可以略去外,还在于其是相当于宾语从句或者是相当于“宾语 + 介词短语”。观察以下句中所含的双重宾语:

We wish *you success/good luck*. 我们祝你成功/好运。

可以说但较少说 We wish success/luck to you, 因其不那么简便;而当间接宾语较长时,更多以介词短语代替:

I wish each and all *success*. 或 I wish success to each and all.

(COD) 我祝愿大家每一个人都取得成功。

I wish *the usurer ill fortune* / wish *the new venture well*. (RHD)
我愿那放高利贷的家伙碰上厄运/愿这新创办的企业兴旺发达。

比较: He wishes well to all men. (COD) 他愿所有的人称心如意。(to all men 是补足状语, 不可略去, 参见 1.3 句子的 14 种类型之 2)、4); 相应双重及物句中的间接宾语 all men 也不能缺少; He wishes all men well.)

下面对比四大类、七个类型的复合宾语(左)和复合主语(右), 它们多可相当于从句(参见 3.14), 但最后的名词型复合宾语既不对应于复合主语, 也不相当什么从句:

第一大类 主谓性[分词型]复合宾语/复合主语

1) 现在分词型

We *found/caught him napping*. 我们发现/正好抓住他在打瞌睡。

I won't have *you saying such things about my sister*. (ALD) 我不能让你说我妹妹这种坏事。

(不说 * have your saying ... saying 是分词; I denied your/you cheating. 该 cheating 是动名词, “我否认你作弊。”)

The boy was found *studying in the library*. (It was found the boy was studying... 较少说 The boy studying in the library was found. ——Chomsky) 人们发现那孩子在图书馆学习。(the boy studying 是复合主语, 该句不只说 The boy was found.)

左栏下句的祈使动词 have(让, 使)不用于被动(cf: I was brought running. 这使我一路跑来。)

2) 过去分词型

<p>They found <i>the house deserted</i>. 他们发现那所房子被扔在那里,无人居住。</p> <p>Have <i>the job done by tomorrow</i>. 明天之前把这件工作完成。(The job was required to be done by tomorrow.)</p>	<p>The house was found deserted. 那所房子被发现是人们扔下不住的。</p> <p>主语从句 It was demanded that the job (should) be done by tomorrow. 这工作要求至迟明天完成。</p>
--	---

第二大类 主谓性[不定式型]复合宾语/复合主语

3) do(不带 to 不定式)型

<p>You'll never find <i>him neglect his work</i>. (Schibsbye) 你永远不会发现他对工作疏忽大意。</p> <p>He had/made <i>us empty</i> (ordered us to empty) <i>our pockets</i>. 他让我们把口袋掏空。</p>	<p><i>He'll never be found to neglect his work</i>. (相应被动句中不定式还要带 to) 人们永远不会发现他对工作疏忽大意。</p> <p><i>We were made/ordered to empty our pockets</i>. 我们被他勒令把我们的口袋掏空。(被动 be made 也接带 to 不定式)</p>
--	---

4) to do (带 to 不定式)型

<p>I'm counting on/expecting <i>you to help me through</i>. 我在指望你帮我度过难关。</p> <p>The country called on/appealed to/urged <i>us to defend her</i>. 祖国号召我们奋起保卫她。(cf: The patrol called to a person to stop. 中 call 可看作不及物动词,带状语:“巡逻队向一个人高喊,让他站住。”但见 1. 3. 6) He called <i>us to help him</i>.</p>	<p><i>You are being counted on/expected to help me through</i>. (主语从句 It is expected that you'd help me through.)</p> <p><i>We were called (up) on/appealed to/urged to defend our country</i>. 我们被号召奋起保卫祖国。</p> <p>(该句 We ... to defend 是复合主语;句子不只表 We were called on/appealed to/urged, 意思是 The call was put out that we rise in defense of our country.)</p>
--	---

第三大类 主表性多种动词复合宾语
(感受/意念/态度/祈使等动词所接)

5) 形容/副/介词短语型

<p>We found <i>him very ill</i> / found <i>him in the hands of a doctor</i>. 我们发现他病得很重/在一位医生那里了。</p> <p>I'm having <i>a tooth (taken) out</i> tomorrow. 我明天一颗牙要被拔掉。</p>	<p>He was found (being 多略去) <i>very ill / in the hands of a doctor</i>. 他被发现病得很重/在一位医生那里。</p> <p>(主语从句) It's been arranged that a tooth of mine is <i>to be taken out</i>.</p>
---	--

6) (to be) 名词/形容词型

<p>I found <i>him amiable</i> / found <i>him an amiable companion</i>. (him 后可带 to be) 我发现他很和蔼可亲/是个亲切的伙伴。</p> <p>She counted <i>herself (to be) a very fortunate wife</i>. 她认为自己是个非常幸运的妻子。</p>	<p>He was found (to be) <i>amiable / an amiable companion</i>. 他被发现很和蔼可亲/是个亲切的伙伴。</p> <p>She was counted <i>to be a very fortunate wife</i>. 她被认为是个非常幸运的妻子。(She + to be a ... wife 是复合主语)</p>
--	---

第四大类 主表性“使为”动词复合宾语

(表“使称为/使成为”动词所接) —— 对应于被动动表(复合谓语)句的“主语...表语”(见 1.3, 句子 14 种类型中的 11)

7) 名词型

<p>He called himself <i>a writer</i>. 他自封为作家。(He called himself by the name of Smith the Writer. 句中的 himself 单独作宾语, by the name... 是简单及物动词 call 的状语)</p> <p>They chose Greene <i>their leader</i>. 他们选定格林为他们的首领。(可以只说 They chose Greene. 或说 They chose Greene as/to be their leader . 表明名词型复合宾语的准主语、准表语关系较为松散。</p>	<p>Can he be called <i>a writer</i>? 他可以被称为作家吗? (Can he be called by the title of writer? 句中 call 可作为简单及物动词带 by... 状语, “能以作家的称号称呼他吗?”)</p> <p>Greene was chosen <i>their leader</i>. 格林被选定为他们的首领。(可以只说 Greene was chosen. 还可以说 Greene was chosen as/to be their leader.)</p> <p>* “使为”动词有 call, name, elect, choose, appoint, make 等。</p>
---	---

2.3 感受/意念/态度/祈使等类动词所接复合宾语的比较

复合宾语除名词型只接于“使为”动词外,其他各型分别接于或可以兼接:感受/意念/态度/祈使等类动词。do 型限接于感受动词与 let/have/make 三个祈使动词, to do 型接于意念/态度/一般祈使动词;分词型和形容/副/介词短语型兼接多数感受/意念/态度/祈使动词;而 (to be) 名词/形容词型不接于祈使动词,接于其他三类动词。以下各型复合宾语的比较中,选用的动词多兼属不同类别,如 make 是祈使兼使为动词, hold 是认识兼祈使动词(认识和感受相通), leave 是态度兼祈使动词。

1) 现在分词型

They found their food *running out*. 他们发现他们的食品快吃光了。(感受)

She left water *running* to clean the vegetables. 她任凭水哗哗流着冲洗蔬菜。(态度)

I don't want you *getting into trouble*. (不说 *... want your getting...) 我不想让你陷入困境(意念)。

2)过去分词型

Make your view *known*. (Hornby) 让大家听听你的看法。(祈使)

He held a bottle of wine *concealed in a brown bag*. 他把一瓶酒藏在一个棕色的袋子里。(祈使)

e. I want/I'd like the letter (to be) *opened* now. 我想/我乐意现在就打开这信看看。(意念/态度)

3)do 型

Money makes the mare *go*. (较旧说法 ... to go) 有钱能使鬼推磨。(祈使)

We found the dream (to) *have little to do with reality in American life*. 我们发现这种梦想和美国社会生活的现实之间毫不相通。(感受)

4)to do 型

I left the children *to take care of themselves*. 我任随孩子们自己照料自己。(态度)

They got him *to sign (made/had him sign) the statement*. 他们让他在那声明上签字。(祈使)

Who should want another war *to break out*/want *there to be another war*? (也可为复合宾语的准主语) 谁希望再爆发战争/再打仗呢?(意念)

5)形容/副/介词短型

Praise makes good men *better* and bad men *worse*. (By praise good people are made better but bad ones worse.) 赞扬使好人更好,坏人更坏。(祈使)

She likes/prefers her coffee *black*. 她(更)喜欢喝清咖啡,不加

奶。(态度)

I found her *up and about/on the point of leaving*. 我发现她已痊愈,起来活动了/发现她正要出去。(感受);比较:复合主语句 she was found (to have been)up and about.

Something in her voice left me *at a loss*. (Christie)她那种口气,使我茫然若失。(祈使);被动动表句 I was left at a loss.

6)(to be) 名词/形容词型

The invaders found the place (多略 *to be*) *a prosperous village*, and left it *a scene of desolation*. 侵略军来时,那还是个繁荣的村庄;他们走时,已把那里糟蹋得一片荒凉。(found, 感受; left, 祈使)

A plane crash left him (多略 *to be*) *an orphan of an early age*. 一次飞机失事使他小小年龄就成为孤儿。(祈使)

People here hold/believe gambling (*to be*) *immoral*. 这里人们认为赌博是不道德的。(认识,或感受);比较:主语从句或复合主语句 It's believed that gambling is immoral. Gambling is held/believed to be immoral.

比较 Hold your hands in front of your face. (把你的双手举在你面前。)句中的 in front of ... 是状语。They were holding their guns ready/in readiness. (他们把枪都端好了。)句中后边的成分是状语。不说 * They were holding their guns to be ready . 而在 His speech held them silent/spellbound/in dead silence. (他的演讲使他们静默无声/听得入神/全然沉寂了。)句中 them 后的成分,虽似可看作状语,但更应看作复合宾语中的准表语(其前不宜加 to be);该句的相应被动句是动词表语句 They were held silent/spellbound/in dead silence. 不过,形容/副/介词短语型复合宾语句仅一部分对应于被动动表句(表示运动联系于结果等单纯静态),另一部分对应于复合主语句(表示运动联系于过程等,见本节 5)及 1.8,5)),不像名词型复合宾语句

那样,全部对应于被动动词表语(复合谓语)句。

对比下列句中作“使为”动词的 make:

They are to make this a rule. 他们要把这个作法定为规矩。(被动表句 This is to be made a rule.)

They made/elected/declared Newton President of the Royal Society. 他们公推/选举/宣布牛顿为皇家学会主席。(被动表句 Newton was made/elected/declared President of the Royal Society.)

2.4 各类词语、复合结构担任句中成分总表

除复合宾语、复合主语外,复合结构(全部具有逻辑主谓/主表关系,含有准主语/准谓语/准表语)还有以下四种:

1)介词 of/for/with/without 引导的不定式复合结构—— of/for you/the girl to go, with no one to talk to (见 7.3)

2)介词 with/without 引导的分词复合结构—— with the mistress standing aside, with her arms folded (见 7.4)

3)介词独立结构、(无动词的)独立结构—— the job finished, the lecture over (见 7.5)

4)动名词复合结构——(forget about)the girl coming (见 14.3)

至此,我们可以把句中的单一成分与复合成分归纳如下表:

各类词语、复合结构所任句子成分表

成分类别		作为单一成分	作为复合成分(除从句外)
谓语		1. 实意动词 2. 联系动词 + 表语	动表复合谓语/情态复合谓语 详见 1.3 节中的 14 种类型 10 至 14)
名词性成分	主语	1. 名词/代词(及其词组/短语/下略“及其词组/短语”) 2. 动名词/不定式	1. 复合主语 2. of/for 引导的不定式复合结构 3. 动名词复合结构(也能作表语/宾语)
	名词性表语		1. for 引导的不定式复合结构 2. 动名词复合结构(也能作主语/宾语)
	宾语	3. 名词化的其他词语	1. 复合宾语 2. for 引导的不定式复合结构 3. 动名词复合结构(也能作主语/表语)
	介词宾语		动名词复合结构
	同位语		for 引导的不定式复合结构
形容词性表语、定语		1. 形容词 2. 数词/代词/分词/不定式 3. 副词 4. 介词短语 5. 名词/动名词(关系定语)	1. for/with 引导的不定式复合结构 2. with 引导的分词复合结构
状语		1. 副词/分词/不定式 2. 形容词 3. 介词短语 4. 名词词组/短语	1. for/with 引导的不定式复合结构 2. with 引导的分词复合结构 3. 分词独立结构 4. 独立结构 (以上见 7.3, 7.4, 7.5)

Exercise 2

I. 说明下列句中划线部分是哪类宾语(直接宾语, 间接宾语, 介词宾语; 复合宾语注明“宾语, 宾语补语”):

1. They offered me some interesting work.
2. I quite agree with you.
3. I heard him shout.
4. He has promised to help me.
5. Our program of work also included observations of the northern lights and atmospheric electricity.
6. They named the child John.
7. Whom did you give my book to?
8. They elected him their delegate.

II. 把下列句中的间接宾语改成 to 构成的短语或 for 构成的短语:

1. The boy never gave his parents a moment's anxiety.
2. He bought his little girl many nice toys.
3. Send me your photograph, please.
4. We showed the stranger the way to the village school.
5. The cashier paid me my wages yesterday.
6. I handed the wood-cutter his axe.
7. She poured out a full cup and presented him the cup with both hands.
8. He never made me such excuses.

III. 划下线于句中构成复合主语、复合宾语的词语,并说明其属于复合主语或复合宾语:

1. Call me anything you like.

2. I can't get my hands warm.

3. Can't you give them something to keep them quiet?

4. The hot wheather turned all the milk sour.

5. His in-laws had simply made him their servant.

6. She was accepted as one of the world's greatest living sculptors.

7. They considerd what he said very important.

8. I took it for granted that you couldn't do it. (我认为你干不了这个是理所当然的。)

9. What was once regarded as impossible has become a reality. (曾被认为不可能的事情已经变成了现实。)

IV. 说明下面一段文字中标有序号的动词形式所担任的句子成分;如果它是接用复合宾语的复合及物动词,写出它的“宾语 + 宾语补语”(原文词语),并指出其属于哪种复合宾语;如果它是从句谓语,指出该从句是由哪个关联词引导的哪种从句:

One day a letter from my father arrived at her school, asking(1) for a teacher for me.

Annie considered(2) this the kind of demanding(要求很高的,艰巨的) job that she wanted(3).

During my years in school, Annie sat(4) beside me in every class.

She spelled out(这里指在她手上用信号拼写出) the things that the teacher taught(5).

And, because most books were not printed in Braille(Braille 发明的盲文), she herself read them to me by spelling(6) into my hand what was written(7) in the books.

It took great imagination as well as patience for Annie to teach(8) me to speak(9).

Putting(10) both my hands on her face when she spoke, she let (11) me feel(12) all the movements of her lips and throat 她说话时让我双手放在她脸上,让我摸她的嘴唇和喉咙的所有活动。。

Together we repeated and repeated words and sentences.

My speech was ill-formed(结构不佳,13) and not pleasant to hear (14).

But I was delighted(15) to be able to say(16) words that my family and a few friends could understand.

To Annie I owe(17) thanks for this priceless gift of speech. 让我能说话,这是无比宝贵的礼物,为了这个礼物我欠着安妮巨大恩情,要深深感谢安妮。

It has helped me to serve(18) others.

(Helen Keller, *My Teacher*)

第三章 主、谓的深层一致关系

3.1 名词主语“形复实单”或“似单实复”

有些不可数名词以-s 结尾,如 news, mechanics, genius(抽象“天才”), classics(古希腊、罗马的语言、文学),必须以单数看待:

Good *news* is rumored but bad *news* flies. (谚语) 好事传得慢,坏事长翅飞。

Mechanics is a branch of physics. 力学是物理学的一个分支。(a mechanic“一个机修工”)

Wuthering Heights is one of the most extraordinary book which human *genius* has ever produced. (Fox)《呼啸山庄》是人类创造力的最杰出的作品之一。(two great geniuses“两位伟大天才”)

Is *classics* a compulsory subject in your department? 在你们系里,希腊、罗马古典语文是必修课吗?(an immortal classic“一部不朽名著”; modern classics“现代名著”)

也有些可数名词以-s 结尾,而复数另加-es, 或者其单、复数同形:

a *lens* —— the microscope *lenses* 一片透镜——显微镜全套透镜

One *means* has not been tried. (LDCE) 一种手段还没试过。

There are ways and *means* of making a living, even in this country. (DCIE) 即使在这个国家,谋生还是有各种办法的。

但是,那些以-s 结尾本为单数形式的名词不宜说是“形复实单”。

下列句中表示时间量、空间量、重量、数量的真正复数形式,作为一个单一总量,通过谓语动词单数形式显示其深层单数意义,这才是“形复实单”:

Fifteen years *represents* a long period in his life. 15 年体现了他一生中一个很长的阶段。

Twenty miles *is* a long way to walk. 如果步行,20 英里是个很长的路程。

Three pints *isn't* enough to get me drunk. 三品脱不足以把我灌醉。

Ten pounds *is* not much for all the trouble we took. (Wood) 我们费了那么大功夫,给十镑不多。

Sixty people *means* a huge party. (CGEL) 60 人那就是一大群人了。

谓语表明主语名词复数形式实指单一量的同时,限定词也用单数:Where's that five pounds I lent you? (Swan) 我借给你那 5 镑哪儿去了?

下面第一句中把“千镑价值”看作一个单一量;第二句中把“值一千镑的”看作定语、而以其后复数的“纸烟”为名词短语的中心——两句谓语显示了主语深层结构的“数”的概念:

There *is* nearly a thousand pounds' worth of cigarettes on that shelf. (Wood) 那个架子上有价值将近一千镑的纸烟。

Nearly a thousand pounds' worth of cigarettes *were* stolen. (ib) 价值将近一千镑的纸烟被偷走了。

以下各句中也是以 of 后的复数名词、代词为短语中心,使似为主语的前面指量、指类单数名词带上 of 而成为定语。这就形成了要由谓语表明的主语“似单实复”情况。

A (large) number of people *have applied* for the job. (CGEL) 很多人申请做此工作。(比较: 60 people — that number of

people *means* a huge party.)

A group of us *have decided* to hire a boat and travel through Holland by canal. (Swan) 我们一伙儿已决定租一条船去旅行,沿运河穿过荷兰。

The majority of criminals *are* non-violent. (Swan) 大多数罪犯是不使用暴力的。

The majority *are* Moslems. (CGEL) (The majority of them/Most of them ...) 大多数是伊斯兰教徒。[比较: The majority *is* always able to impose its will on the minority. (Wood) 多数人总是能将其意志强加于少数人。]

A greater part of the apples *are* bad. (Wood) 大部分苹果是坏的。

比较: The greater part of the land *is* uncultivated. (ib) 那片土地大部分是未开垦的。(majority 不与单数名词或不可数名词连用)

A lot of problems *are caused* by unemployment. (Swan) 许多问题是失业造成的。

比较: Lots of the stuff *is* going to waste. (CGEL) 这材料有好多都要浪费掉了。

This kind of *book* is useful. (小西) 这一句是标准正式说法; 该 book 单数而无冠词, 有概括意义。又如 the kind of *person* to talk scandal (ALD), that sort of *question* is... (LDCE). 若语序有变: Books *of this kind* are useful. (小西) 或 Questions *of that sort* are very difficult. (LDCE) 则是在着重强调该“特定种类”。

另一非正式、不规范说法是 *These kind of* book are useful. (小西)

还可以说: This kind of books *is* useful. (ib) (把 kind 看作名词短语中心, 较正式) 或 This kind of books *are* useful. (让 books 作为短语中心, This kind of 为其定语; 非正式, 还属规范说法)

指多种时才用 *kinds/sorts*; *several kinds* of apples/apples of *several kinds* (ALD)(后一说法着重强调多种), *all sorts of people/people of all sorts* (LDCE) (*sort* 可有贬意 —— WNNCD), *These kinds of book(s)* (单数无冠词 *book* 仍有概括意义)/*Books of these kinds* (强调特定几种) *are useful.* (小西)

3.2 同一集合名词做主语,指单指复颇有讲究

一方面有些集合名词(包括不可数的和可数的单数形式)总是表示单一的集合总体,所接谓语动词说明作为主语的这些集合名词的单数意义:

The *army* was obliged to beat a retreat. 那支军队不得不撤退。

(比较: *opposing armies* “对阵的两军”)

How much new *machinery* has been installed? 多少新机器设备已经安装好了?

Our *clothing* protects us from the cold. (Palmer) 我们的衣服保护我们不受寒。

另一方面,有些集合名词(作为不可数名词)总是表示汇集的成员群体,所接谓语动词说明作为主语的这些集合名词的复数意义:

The British people (“人们”或“人民”、不可数) *have generally been* a scholarly people. (“民族”,可数;NDEC) 英国人总的说来是个好学的民族。[比较: *A people is* a national group. (LDCE) 一个民族是同族的一个人群。]

The police *are* the country's servants, not its masters. (RHD) 警察是国家的仆人,不是国家的主人。

Cattle *feed* on grass. (NDEC) 牛吃草。

但是,更多集合名词(包括不可数的和可数的单数形式),既可指单一的集合总体、又可指汇集的成员群体,由谓语表明其不同的“数”

的意义:

The television public *is* increasing rapidly. (LDCE) (该集合名词由形容词转成,不可数;在此指整体增长)电视观众在迅速增多。

These meetings are secret as far as general public *are* concerned. (NDEC) (general public 仍不可数,但在此指群体关系)对于一般公众来说,这些会议是秘密的。

Some people say that today's youth *has* no sense of responsibility. (Chambers) (该集合名词由抽象名词“青春”转成,泛指青年或指某处的全体青年,不可数;在此被看作整体)有人说现在的青年没责任感。

The youth of today *are* very fond of dancing. (Frisky) (the youth 在此被看作群体)现在的青年们很喜欢跳舞。

The audience *was* enormous. (CGEL) (该集合名词可数,如 an enormous audience/enormous audiences,一处或多处的“极多的听众”;而在此指一处听众的总数非常之多)听众异常众多。

The audience *are requested* to be in their seats by 7:25. (Wood) (the audience 在此指陆续到来的群体)观众应于7点25分前就座。

The crew *consists* of 20 sailors. (Ganshina) (该集合名词可数,如 a train crew/the train crews,一趟或多趟列车的“乘务组”;而在此指一整体)全船乘务组由20名水手组成。

The crew *were* all asleep. (ib) (the crew 在此指成员群体)乘务员全睡着了。

A team, which *is* full of enthusiasm, is more likely to win. (Swan) (指一个整体)一个热情很高的球队获胜的可能性较大。

The team **are** full of enthusiasm. (ib) (指群体) 队员们热情高涨。

The average family **is** a great deal smaller than it used to be. (ib) (指一体) 现在, 一般家庭规模比以前小多了。

My family **are** early risers. (Ganshina) (指各成员) 我们一家人都习惯早起。

The committee **is** divided on the question. (Wood) 在这问题上, 该委员会发生分歧。[一分为二]

The committee **differ** as to what report they shall make. (NDEC) 委员们对于应该提出的报告, 意见不同。[各执己见]

Each couple **was** asked to complete a form. (CGEL) (指一双) 每对夫妻都要填一张表。

The couple **were** happily married. (ib) (指二人) 这对恋人高高兴兴地结婚了。

3.3 谓语同主语的“实意一致”和“近邻一致”

不定代词 *either*、否定代词 *neither*, *none* 按原意是仅指单数:

The two guests have arrived and *either is* welcome. (CGEL) 两位客人到了, 每一位都受欢迎。

The two guests have arrived but *neither is* welcome. (ib) 两个客人到了, 但哪个都不受欢迎。

If you need a repairman, there's *none* better than my brother. (LDCE) 如果你需要一个修理工, 哪个也不如(没有一个比)我弟弟好。

Either 和 *neither* 用于可数名词, *none* 主要用于可数名词, 都不同于 *some*, *any* 兼用于可数、不可数名词:

Give me *some* (paper) if there *is* any. (谓语为单数) 如果有纸,

给我一些。

Give me some papers to mark if there **are** any left unmarked. (谓
语为复数)如果还有没评分的考卷,给我一些。

但如二者或三者以上有共同情况时,对个别肯定或否定就相当
对全部,因而在非正式语中, *either*, *neither*, *none* 可由复数谓语表明
其实指复数:

Has/**Have** either of them been seen recently? (Swan) 大家最近
见到他俩(中任何一个)了吗? [不与 *of* 引导的复数名词、代
词连用时指单数: *Either (one/man) is sure to prove*
satisfactory. (Schibsbye) (不说 *either men*) 两个(男人)里任何
一个都一定会使人满意。]

Either of them are welcome. (CGEL) 他们两个哪一位都受欢迎。

I sent cards to Mavis and Margery, but *neither (of them) has/*
have replied. I doubt if *either (of them) is/are* coming. (CGE)
我给马维斯和玛哲丽都寄了请柬,但二人谁也没回音。我想
二人谁也不会来的。

None (of the books) has/have been placed on the shelves.
(CGEL) (这些书)一本也没上架。

If *either David or Janet comes*, he or she will want a drink. / If
either David or Janet come, **they** will want a drink. (LDCE) 大
卫或者珍妮来时,他或她/他们都要喝点儿。

Neither James nor Virginia was/were at home. (Swan) 詹姆斯和
弗吉尼亚哪一个都不在家。

但表示互相排斥时, *either...or...* 所接单数名词后只用单数谓
语动词。

Either (George or Harry) is usually here. (Close) 平常两个总有一
个(不是乔治就是哈里)在这儿。

Either you or he *is* wrong. (RHD) 不是你错了,就是他错了。

(如说 Either he or you are wrong. 应是 Either he is wrong or you *are* wrong. 的省略说法)

同理可说 Either he or I *am* in the wrong. (井上) 或者是他(错了), 或者是我错了。

这种省略形成了“近邻一致”:

Either my wife or I *am* going. (CGEL) 或者是我的妻子(去), 或者是我去。

Neither you, nor I, nor anyone else *knows* the answer. (CGEL)
无论你、我或别的任何人都不知道答案。

但“近邻一致”不见得都是有所省略, 也可以说这时先考虑到谓
语和其最近的主语的关系, 暂时未及其他:

One and a half years have passed. / A year and a half *has* passed.
(ib) 一年半过去了。

There are/*is* my wife and family to consider. (Wood) (用 *is* 时是
把 my wife and family 看作一体, 或暂先想到 my wife, 然后
想起 there are my family) 我的妻子, 还有孩子们, 需要考虑。

Many a man *comes* and *goes*. (RHD) (many a... 只惯接单数谓
语动词) 很多人来来往往。

以下第一、二句合于“近邻一致”而或合或不合“实意一致”原则;
第三句, 两种“一致”都不合, 属于多接单数谓语动词的惯用法(多以
one 为短语中心):

More than one *has* / *have* *found* it so. (More have found it so than
just he.) (Curme, Syntax, p. 59) (*has* 属近邻一致, *have* 属
实意一致) 不只一个人发现情况是这样的。

More than one member *has* *protested* against the proposal.
(CGEL, p. 758) 不仅是一个会员对这一提案提出了抗议。

There *is* more than one possible explanation. (Wood) 对此可以

做出的解释不仅仅是一种。

[比较 more... than 间有名词时: More members than one *have* protested against the proposal. (CGEL)]

3.4 主语句、祈使句及惯用不完整句

省略句中,略去的词语可以补全而句子原义不变。有些没有谓语或没有主语等成分的句子,所“缺”词语不明,有多种可能,因而不好补全或“补全”时意义、语气有所不同,那就不是省略句。

1) 主语句 —— 只提出一个或一些事物(主语,可带定语)而不提其有何运动或联系(无谓语):

Rain, rain, November rain, darkness, wind and dirt. 雨啊,还是雨。十一月的冷雨,黑暗,寒风与泥污。

A *place of green things* growing rank in the spring — *trees* putting forth leaves, *grasses* springing up, the early spring *flowers* coming out, flowering *bushes* everywhere. (Ganshina)
春天,一个绿意葱茏的地方,萌发着新叶的树木,蓬勃蹿起的青草,含苞欲放的早春之花,还有开着花朵的遍地矮树丛。

2) 祈使句 —— 一般只提出一种或几种运动(或者联系)(谓语,可带状语、宾语等),而不提发生该运动(或联系)的人(主要是谈话对方,有时包括对方与自己):

Don't be a stranger. (否定一种联系)不要见外(别客气)。

Don't be deceived by his looks. (祈使句较少用被动语态)不要被他的外表蒙骗了。

Let's not get angry. (let 的施动者应是 you and I) 咱们别生气。

Let bygones be bygones. (let 的施动者应是 you 或 you and I)(你/你和我要让)过去就算过去了。[比较 Are *you* willing to let your life be controlled by destiny? (FWF)(let 的施动者是

you)]你愿让你的一生任凭命运摆布吗?

请求或命令听话众人中的某个或某些怎么样时,祈使句可有主语:

Parents with children go to the front, (please). 带小孩的父母(请)到前面来。

但对 *you* 的命令句,如点明 *you* 为主语,则语气非常强硬:

Don't tell me to be quiet. YOU be quiet! (CGEL) 不要让我别出声。别出声是你!

You get out! (Swan) 你给我滚出去!

3) 惯用“不完整句”——很多惯用句所“缺”词语已不可补全:

Thanks (a lot). (不能说 *I owe/give you thanks...*)

Good-bye! 再见! (意义不同于原说法 *God be with you!* “上帝和你同在!”)

Nothing doing. 不行。(不尽同于 *There's nothing doing.* “毫无效果/作用。”)

Well done! 干得好! (语气明快不同于 *That's well done!*)

另外,使用替代词如 *one(s)* (替换名词、代词), *do* (替换谓语动词及其宾语、状语) 或 *so* (替换谓语复合形式的一部分及其宾语、状语乃至全句) 的句子不是省略句:

There was one(数词) long writing-table and two small ones. (代词) 有一个长写字台和两个小的。

“I hope you enjoyed yourself.” —— *“I did. Thanks.”* (Swan)
“我希望你玩得很好。”“的确玩得很好。多谢。”

You've spilled coffee on the table, and so have I. (后一分句主语与前一分句主语相对) 你把咖啡洒在桌上了,我也洒上了。

“You've spilled coffee on your dress.” —— *“Oh, dear! So I have!”* (后句主语与前句主语所指相同) “你把咖啡洒在衣服上了。”“啊,糟糕! 真洒上了!”

“Has the news reached home yet?” —— “I’m afraid *so/not*.”

(CGEL) (*so* 替代 *the news has reached home*, 而 *not* 是 *the news has not reached home* 之略) “这消息现在传到家里了吗?” “我想, 到了/还到不了吧。”

3.5 情景省略句

英语句中的省略分两大类: 因情景使所指对象自明而省略, 或因与前言、后语有相同词语而省略; 两者可简称“情景省略”和“同前/同后省略”。

情景省略中, 多属主语自明, 或主语连同谓语动词/联系动词自明而一起略去, 但按谓语动词性质应该使用的下列七种主要句型中的补足成分, 即表语、宾语、补足状语等, 一般不可缺少, 因为正是它们表明了特殊的关系、特征等新的信息。但 *be* 与助动词 *have*, *will* 等因有引导作用, 在主语略去时一般亦略, 除非有 *not* 与之结合:

1) 联系动词 - 表语句

不说 * *Are hungry?* (是饿了吗?) ——可以说 *Hungry?* (*Are you hungry?* 之略) 或 *You hungry?* (CGEL)

2) 不及物动词句

不说 * *Am coming.* (我要来的。) ——可以说 *Coming (tomorrow).* (Swan) (*I’m coming tomorrow* 之略)

3) 不及物动词 - 补足状语句

不说 * *Lie.* (躺下。) ——要说 *Lie down.* (或带其他补足状语 *Lie quietly/in bed.*)

4) 简单及物动词句

不说 * *Get?* (明白吗?) ——可以说 *Get it? You get it? (Do you get it?)*

不说 * *Like/Love?* (喜欢吗?) ——可以说 *Like/Love it?*

5) 及物动词 - 宾语 - 补足状语句

不说 * Put/Lay it. * Put/Lay down. (把它放下。)—要说 Put/lay it down.

6) 含双重宾语的句子

不说 * Told that. * Have told you that. (对你说过是这样的。)—可以说 Told you that/so. (CGEL) Haven't told you that. (参见 Swan)

7) 含复合宾语的句子

不说 * Let be. (随便。) * Allow to come in? (让进吗?)—可以说 Let him be. (LDCE) Let him (be) alone. (Harper) (随他便。)

Allow us to come in? Allow us to come in! 让我们进吗? 让我们进吧!

与上述情景省略须按句型要求有所不同,在同前/同后省略及惯用句中就没有要带补足成分的规律了:

Aren't you hungry yet? I know you *are*. (略同前表语)你还不饿吗? 我知道你饿了。

"Are you coming too?" — "Yes, I *am*." (用助动词,略同前实意动词)"你也来吗?" "是啊,我也来。"

Let sleeping dogs *lie*. (谚语)(lie 在此无补足状语)少管闲事免烦恼。

Spend as you *get*. (及物动词 spend, get 在此惯用谚语中无宾语)量入为出。

"Shall we go?" — "If you *like*." (LDCE)(like 在此无宾语; to go)"咱们去吗?" "你愿去就去。"

Love little, *love* long. (RHD) (love 在此谚语中无宾语)要爱得温和,爱得长远。

"What shall I put at the end of the sentence?" — "*Put* a question mark." (LDCE) (put 的宾语后略去补足状语 at the end of

...)“我要在这一句末尾加什么号呢?”“加问号。”

Lay up for a rainy day. (谚语)(lay 在此惯用谚语中无宾语)平时储备为急时。[比较: Bees lay up honey for the winter. 蜜蜂储蜜为过冬。]

Do not all you can; spend not all you have; believe not all you hear; and **tell** not all you know. (谚语)(tell 在此惯用谚语中无间接宾语)不要能干的都干;不要把所有的都花掉;不要听到的都相信;不要把知道的都告诉人。

Let go! You're hurting my arm! (LDCE) (惯用语 let go 中 let 未接复合宾语) 放开(你的手)! 你把我的胳膊弄疼了!

Live and **let** live. (谚语) (let 未接复合宾语) 与人方便,自己方便。

情景省略最常略去的是句子开头:略掉主语,常连同谓语等一起省去(只提宾语、表语、状语等):

Pardon? /Beg pardon? /Beg your pardon? (RHD) (I beg your pardon?) 请您再说一遍?

Many happy returns (of your birthday). (CGEL) (I wish you many happy returns...) 祝你生日快乐,健康长寿。

Seen Andy? (Swan) (Have you seen Andy?) 看见安迪了吗?

Another round? (Would you like another round?) 还想再转一圈吗?

Serves you/him right. (It serves you/him right. 强调句末状语) 你/他活该。

Your turn. (It's your turn. 只提其表语) 轮到你了。

感叹句、疑问句多用 What.../How... 等作为前置补足成分,而略去主语、谓语或部分谓语,亦属情景省略:

Disgusting! /**How** disgusting! (后略 it is) 真讨厌!

Good idea! /**What** a good idea (it is)! 真是好主意!

How encouraging! (略主语“这形势/这番话”之类,略联系动词“是”)多么鼓舞人心啊!

What if you join us for lunch? (略主语、谓语“你考虑”,突出 what 及状语从句)(如果说)你和我们一起吃午饭,你看怎么样?

What if/though they are illiterate? (What does it matter if/though... 主句大部略去,突出 What 及从句)即使他们不识字,又有什么关系呢?

What/How about sending him a copy? (Ball) (What's your idea/How do you like the idea about... 略主语、谓语等,突出 what/how 及介词短语定语)给他寄一份怎么样?

But **why** not grant the reasonable demands? (But why don't you grant... 略主语和助动词,突出 why 及被否定实意动词和宾语)但是,合理要求不答应,为什么呢?

How come you're so late? (CGEL) (How does it come about that you're so late? 略形式主语、助动词等)你怎么来得这么晚?
在“情景省略”中,主句有省略或整个略去;而从句因表明特定关系,至少不能完全略去:

Oh, **that** I had the wings of a dove! (主句全略)啊,我多么希望有一双鸽子的翅膀!

If I could but explain! (主句全略)只要我能解释一下就好了!
(无奈不能)

Heads I win, (and) **tails** you lose. [此语喻对愚人的哄骗](这硬币转一会儿倒下时,)正面朝上算我赢,背面朝上算你输。

3.6 作补足成分的不定式被省略时, to 留作代表

当动词不定式作为几种句型所要求的补足成分时,即使由于同

前或同后不必原样重复,也要把不定式前部符号 *to* 保留(只略动词原形)。

1) 宾语 *to* (do/be 等)

“Are you on holiday?” — “No, but I’d like *to*.” (to be 略 be)

“你今天休假吗?”“不休,但我是很想休假的。”

The committee did not discuss your proposal, but it hopes *to* next month. (CGEL) (to do so 略 do so) 委员会没讨论你的提议,但希望下月讨论。

Perhaps I’ll go to Brazil this summer; I’d very much like *to*. (to go 略 go) 今年夏天我也许去巴西;我非常想去。

My parents encouraged me to be a doctor, but I didn’t want *to*.

(Swan) 我父母鼓励我当大夫,但我不想当。

to like, to want 等动词不定式,在同前/同后而省略时,通常都保留 *to*, 只是在 if/as/when/what/who 从句中,可以把 *to* 也略去。

If you want (*to*), you can come. (Cronin) 要是想来,你可以来。

Come when you want/if you like/whenever you wish. (Swan) 什么时候(如果)你想来,就来吧!

Come and stay as long as you like. (Swan) 你喜欢来往多久就住多久。

I’ve decided to do what I like. (ib) 我已决定做我喜欢做的事情。

Those who prefer (*to*) can stay indoors. (CGEL) (从句中可只略 stay, 也可将 to stay 一起略去) 愿意留在室内的可以留下。

I don’t want to accept, but I don’t know how not (*to*). (CGEL) (know how/where... 等后可连 *to* 一起略不定式) 我不想接受,但又不好不接受。

“Don’t spill any of that paint, will you?” — “I’ll try not *to*.”

(Alexander, 16.17 节) “不要把油漆溢出来,好吗?” “我会努

力不让他溢出来。”

但肯定的 try 后动词不定式通常完全略去：

“Try to be back by 12, won't you?” — “Ok, I'll try.” (ib) “尽量 12 点钟时回来,好吗?” “好的,我努力争取。”

2) 宾语补语、主语补语 to (do/be 等)

“May I go out this evening?” — “No, I'd hate you *to*. (Close) (to do so 或 to go out 之略)” “今晚我可以出去吗?” “不可以,我不愿让你出去。”

Do stay with me. I'd love you *to*. (to stay 之略) 一定呆在我这儿。我愿意你呆在这儿。

She used my pen although I told her not *to*. (not to use 之略) 虽然我告诉她不要用我的笔,她还是用了。

“Why don't you pay?” — “I'm not obliged *to*.” “你为什么付钱?” “没有义务让我付钱。”

Somebody ought to help. Shall I ask Peter (*to*)? (ask 可接复合宾语,也可只接一个指人的宾语,其后 to 可有可无) 应该有人帮助。我请彼得帮助/我请求彼得,好吗?

“May I go out this evening?” — “Yes, I'll allow you (*to*).” (Close) (allow 多接复合宾语,有时接一个指的简单宾语,其后 to 可有可无) “今晚我可以出去吗?” “可以,我许可你(出去)。”

If you want me *to*, I'll lend you my pen. (CGEL) (to lend 略去 lend, 但 to 不可略,如略,句义有变) 如果你要借用我的笔,我愿借给你。(不说,“如果你要我...”)

3) 状语、定语 to (do/be 等)

I think he should get a job, but you can't force him *to* if he's not ready (*to*). (Swan) (后一分句中前一个 to get one 略作 to, 第二个可连 to 也省略) 我想他应该找个工作,但要是他不愿意你

不能强迫他。

I was expected to come, and I was willing (*to*). (句子含义十分明确时,作状语、定语的 *to*...可全略去)他们期待着我来,而我也愿意来。

He'll never leave home; he hasn't got the courage (*to*). (Swan)

他永远也不会离开家,因他没有勇气(离家)。

除担任上述补足成分的动词不定式可以略作 *to* 外,构成复合谓语的 *ought to* 等不定式因对情态动词或半助动词说来有补足作用,同前或同后时要保留 *to* 以指示谓语的结构:

I shall not go, unless I *have to*. (*have to go* 之略) 除非必须去,否则我就不去。

You didn't work as hard as you *ought to*. (*ought to work hard* 之略) 你没有做出应有的努力。

I wish I could find time to learn it. But I'm afraid I shall not *be able to*. (*be able to do so* 或 *be able to find time* 之略) 但愿我能找出时间来学,但恐怕我找不出时间。

Exercise 3

I. 根据主语的人称和数,用适当的动词形式代替括号里的动词不定式:

1. The bread and butter (*to be put*) on the table.
2. The house as well as the rider (*to be hurt*) by the fall.
3. Not only the flowers, but even the grass (*to be withered*).
4. (*to have*) either of the boys gone?
5. Neither of them (*to be*) at fault.
6. Not only the teacher, but the students themselves (*to do*) it.
7. Either he or I (*to be going*) to do it.

8. Neither he nor his comrades (to be) present.
9. Every man and every woman (to be) to take part in the election.
10. "Mates!" suddenly cried one of the strikers, "the police (to be coming)!"
11. (to be) either of you ready to help me?
12. Every one of these pencils (to be) mine.
13. The cattle (to be) up in the hills.
14. Each of us (to be) ready to help you.
15. The number of delegates (to be) large.
16. The family (to be gathered) round the table.
17. The bread and butter (to be) a good kind of food at tea time.
18. We each (to have) two E-mail addresses.
19. Time and tide (to wait) for no man.
20. Many a student (to have) seen the film.
21. Her present whereabouts (to be) still unknown.
22. The family (to be) large.

II. 把下列句中汉语部分译成英语,注意有所省略以保持句子前后不重复:

1. I went there because 我想去那儿。
2. Perhaps I'll go to Brazil this summer; 我会非常愿意去巴西。
3. "Are you and Gilian getting married?" "我们希望结婚。"
4. I think he should get a job, 但如果他还没有准备去找,你就不能强迫他。
5. I don't dance much now; 但过去我经常跳。
6. He'll never leave home; 他还没有勇气离开家。
7. "How about going on a picnic with us tomorrow?" "我很想和你们一起去。"

8. “Did you get a ticket?” “没有,我想去弄, but there wasn't any left.”

Ⅷ. 说明标有序号的谓语动词同哪个主语保持单数或复数的一致关系,如果主语是关系代词,指出其先行词是单数或复数:

Now is(1) the time to make justice a reality to all of God's children.

This sweltering summer of the Negro's legitimate discontent will not pass until there is(2) an invigorating autumn of freedom and equality. 自由与平等的爽朗秋天到来之前,黑人正当愤慨的闷热夏天是不会过去的。

Nineteen sixty-three is(3) not an end but a beginning.

Those who hope(4) that the Negro needed to blow off steam and will now be content will have a rude awakening if the nation returns(5) to business as usual. 有人指望,黑人本来只要撒撒气、这就应该满足了,那些人将猛然惊醒,看清现实:既然这个国家又故态复萌、依然旧貌。

There will be neither rest nor tranquility in America until the Negro is granted(6) his citizenship rights. 黑人如得不到公民权,美国就既没有安闲也没有宁静。

The whirlwinds of revolt will continue to shake the foundations of our nation until the bright day of justice emerges(7). 动乱旋风将摇撼国家的基石,直到正义呈现的光明之日。

But there is(8) something that I must say to my people who stand(9) on the warm threshold which leads(10) into the palace of justice. 但对于站在这令人激愤的门口、等待进入正义之宫的我们的民众,我必须说上几句。

The marvelous new militancy which has engulfed(11) the Negro

community must not lead us to a distrust of all white people. 现在充满黑人社会的了不起的新的战斗精神, 一定不要把我们将误导到对所有白人的不肯信任。

For many of our white brothers have come(12) to realize that their destiny is tied up(13) with our destiny.

Their freedom is inextricably(无法解开地) bound(结合于, 14) to our freedom.

(Martin Luther King, *I have a Dream*)

第四章 否定的多方关联与肯定、 非肯定句的对应词语

4.1 表否定的代词、副词、连词的用法

下列表否定的英语词语和汉语相当词语之间多有不尽相同的疑难用法,主要表现在否定对象、否定范围、语气倾向等方面。

否定代词/副词(和相应短语)及否定连词表

否定代词		否定副词	否定连词
名词性否定代词	形容词性否定代词		
none	no/not a, any	no	nor
no one/nobody, nothing		not, never, nowhere	
Neither		neither/not... either	
no more/not... any more		no more/not any more, no longer/not... any longer	
little, few		little	

特别在以下 6 方面常有误解、误用:

1. 副词 no(原前缀和词根本义 not ever)指对实际运动或联系的否定(而不指对前述否定的否定);

2. 代词 no(原 none 的缩短形式)比起副词 not 语气强烈得多,常指向反面;

3. 副词 neither 与连词 nor 的用法有同有异;

4. no more 和 not...any more 等可有区别;

5. 否定指量代词 few 和 little 二者中 little 还兼为否定副词, 表示对谓语的否定。现各举例说明。

1) 副词 no 指对运动或联系本身的否定:

“He knows Russian.” — “Oh *no*, he doesn't.” “他懂俄语。”
“啊, 不, 他不懂。”

“He doesn't know Russian.” — “*No*, he doesn't.” “他不懂俄语。” — “不懂, 他不懂。”(汉语可肯定前述否定“是的(对), 他不懂。”))

2) 代词 no 比副词 not 语气强得多:

代词 no 原为 none 缩短而来, 含有 not any 之意, 比副词 not 多一层语气意义。

This reply is *not* an answer. 这一回答不是应有的答案。

His answer is *no* answer. (RHD) (His answer is not at all/far from the solution to the problem.) 他的回答丝毫不能解决问题/远非问题的答案。

The road was bad and driving was *no* joke. (ib) 道路很难走, 开车去可不是闹着玩的。

It made *no* small difference. (rather a large difference) 这事绝不是无关紧要(这事关系重大)。

That's *no* business of yours. / That's *none* of your business. / That *isn't any* of your business. 这事你管不着。(比较 That's *not* your business. 这事与你无关。)

3) 副词 neither 可加可不加 and; 而连词 nor 前不可再加连词 and:

He couldn't speak, (*and*) *neither* could he walk. / He couldn't speak, *nor* could he walk. 他不能说话, 也不能走路。(或说 He couldn't speak, and he couldn't walk either. / He couldn't

speak or walk (either).)

neither...nor 一起作为复合连词:

As a businessman, journalist and writer, I was, at the age of 45, *neither* fish, nor fowl nor fresh meat. 我又当商人,又当记者和作家,到45岁时,我还是个四不像。

但 neither 本来是代词:

If you run after two hares, you'll catch *neither*. (谚语)(名词性代词)一人追两兔,一只也抓不住。(还可以说 *neither of the two*)

Truth lies on *neither* side. (形容词性代词)双方都不对(真理既不在这边,也不在那边)。

4) no more 主要用作代词(可称复合代词); not...any more 除用作代词短语外,还可相当 not...any longer 作状语:

There's *no more*. (名词性代词) There's *no more* bread. (Swan) (形容词性代词) 没有(面包)了。

We saw him *no more*. (ALD)(仅在文学语言中用作状语表“不再”;一般说 We didn't see him any more.) 我们再也未见过他。

You'll have to do with what you've got; there isn't *any more* (food) left. (名词性或形容词性代词词组)你必须以你现有的那些将就一下;再也没有剩余的(食品)了。

We needn't speak of it *any more*. (not any more 作状语可指简短的情况,而 not...any longer 则不能) 这事,我们不必再谈。

He couldn't stand it *any more/any longer*. (二者皆可指持续的情况;not...any more 多着眼于当时以后,not any longer 多着眼于说话当时)对此,他再也不能忍受下去。

not...any longer 相当于 no longer(置实意动词或表语前):

She could *no longer* go to school/couldn't go to school any longer.

她再不能上学了。

He's **no longer** fit to be a member of this club. (表语前) 他已不再适于做这个俱乐部的一员了。

He **no longer** lives here/doesn't live here any longer (any more).
(LDCE/Swan) (not... any more 亦可指说话当时情况) 他现在不在这儿住。

5) no more... than... 表示对相比二事物的同等否定; not more... than... 表示前一事物的有关度量不大于后者有关度量(小于或等于它):

Your story today is **no more convincing** than the one yesterday.
(Stratton) 你昨天讲的那一套不能使人相信, 今天讲的这一套同样不能使人相信。

Your story today is **not more convincing than** the one yesterday.
(ib) 你今天讲的这番话并不比昨天讲的那番话更令人信服。

A whale is **no more** a fish **than** a horse (is). (ib) 马不是鱼类, 鲸鱼同样不是鱼类。

A horse is **not more** a mammal **than** a whale (is). (ib) 鲸鱼是哺乳动物正如马是哺乳动物一样。

比较: She's **no less** beautiful **than** her sister. 她和她姐姐同样美丽。 She's not **less** (perhaps more) beautiful **than** her sister. 她的美貌不亚于(或许更胜于)她姐姐。

6) 原表趋近于无的代词 few 和 little 可表否定(“无有”, 语气稍委婉); little 还可作为否定副词:

Few of them (**Hardly any of them**) are any good. (名词性否定代词) 他们当中没什么中用的。

He has **few** good reasons for staying, has he? (Swan) (形容词性否定代词) 他没什么正当理由停留下来, 是不是?

Little remains to be said. (RHD) (名词性否定代词) 没什么可

说的了。

There's *little* point in doing anything about it, is there? (Swan)
(形容词性否定代词) 关于这事,做什么也没有意义了,是不是?

Little did I dream of ever seeing you here. (RHD)(否定副词)我
做梦也没想到会在这儿见到你。

He *little* cares/*Little* does he care whether we live or die.
(LDCE)(否定副词)我们是死是活,他全不在意。

4.2 关系微妙的否定中心、否定转移、否定范围和部分否定

否定句的否定中心多在谓语:

I wasn't listening all the time. 我一直没有注意听。

但如将谓语同状语紧密连读,不是重读谓语,而特别重读状语,则否定的中心就转到状语上面:

I wasn't listening all the time. 我并不是一直都在注意听着。

也可以把否定中心放在主语上:

'I wasn't listening. (It was my wife who was listening all the time.) 我没注意听。(一直注意听的是我的妻子。)

有时,否定谓语、或否定主语,否定谓语、或否定表语或宾语等补足成分,否定句意义相仿:

Either the plans won't do. /*Neither of the plans* will do. (否定主语) 两个计划一个也不行。

The baby appears *not to be awake.* (否定表语) /The baby doesn't appear to be awake. (否定谓语) 婴儿好像是没有醒/不像是醒着。

He expected *not to win.* (否定宾语) /He didn't expect to win.

(否定谓语)他已想到他是不会取胜的/他并没有想过他会取胜。

有时,当否定主句谓语或否定从句谓语时,主从复合句全句意义相仿:

I imagine (that) he *doesn't care*, does he? / I *don't imagine* he cares, does he? (否定从句谓语)(CGEL) 我认为他不会在意,他会吗? / 我不认为他会在意,他会吗?

对于 appear 等表“是”、expect 和 believe 等表“不肯定的设想”的谓语动词,在英语多否定谓语而不否定补足成分、多否定主句谓语而不否定从句,这样可使不肯定的语气转到原指半肯定的(主句)谓语上,而不因句末否定而显得生硬。这种表现法就是“否定的转移”:

I *don't suppose* him (to be) innocent. (多不是否定宾语补语 I suppose him not (to be) innocent.) 我设想,他并不是清白无辜的。

It *doesn't seem* that we can get our money back. (多不是否定从句 It seems that we can't get our money back.) 看来我们的钱弄不回来了。

I *don't think/suppose/believe/expect/imagine* (that) she'll come. (Swan) 我想/设想/相信/料想/认为,她不会来的。

但表示肯定希望的 hope 所接否定从句,不可将其否定转到主句中来:

I hope she *doesn't dislike* the flowers. (ib) (不能说 *I don't hope she dislikes the flowers.) 我希望她不会讨厌这些花。

否定的中心除可为谓语、主语、谓语的补足成分外,还可能仅是状语中不直接修饰谓语的一部分(not 紧靠该部),则全句不属否定句。否定中心仅是定语时,全句也不属否定句:

We were there (*not many years*) after the war. (not 仅否定 many, 而 not many years 修饰的是 after the war) 战后不

久，我们曾在该地。

They displayed *no little* interest in her progress. (no 仅否定 little) 他们对她的进步表现出很大(绝不是很小)的兴趣。

否定中心的变动可影响到否定范围的缩小或扩大，还可以形成“部分否定”：

With *no coaching* / Without *any coaching*, he will pass the exam.

(仅否定介词宾语；全句不属否定句)不用给他任何辅导，他会通过这次考试的。

With no coaching will he pass the exam. (Not with any coaching will he pass the exam. / He will not pass the exam with any coaching.) (谓语的一个组成部分 will 置主语前时，表明 not 或 no 否定以谓语为中心的全句) 无论给他多少辅导，他也不会通过这次考试。

I *didn't leave home*, because I was afraid of my father. (仅否定 leave home) 我没离开家，因为我怕父亲。

但如将主句同原因从句紧密连读，不特别重读 leave home，而特别重读 because... afraid... father，则否定的中心就转到原因状语从句上面，否定范围扩大到原因从句连同谓语、宾语：I didn't leave home because I was afraid of my father. 我不是因为怕父亲而离开家的。

要通过谓语表示“全部否定”时，一般不使用 all, both, every... 为主语，一般不说 All the children didn't sleep. 要说 None of the children slept. 所有的孩子都没睡。

下列否定句中的主语 all, both, every... 一般要特别重读，各句表示的是“部分否定”：

'All the children didn't sleep. (Not all the children slept.)

(CGEL) 并不是所有的孩子都睡了。

'All that glitters is not gold. (谚语) 闪闪发光的不都是金子。

'*All* truths are not to be told at all times. (谚语) 并非所有的真情在所有场合都宜于说明。

'*Every* shoe fits not every foot. (谚语) 并不是每只鞋能适合每只脚。

'*Every* couple is not a pair. (谚语) 成双未必配对儿。[天下夫妇多, 珠联璧合少。]

'*All/Everything* is not lost that is in peril. (谚语) 危难当头并不等于万事皆休。

'*Both* (the) windows are not open. 两扇窗户不是都开着。

但在现代英语中, *All/Both/Every... not...* 的说法还是不如 *Not all* 等说法自然:

Not all English people like fish and chips. (现多不说 *All English people don't like...*) (Swan) 并不是所有英国人都喜欢炸鱼炸土豆片。

Not every Welshman speaks Welsh. (ib) 不是每个威尔士人都说威尔士语。

The windows are not *both* open. (此处 *both* 为同位语) 两扇窗户不是双双开着。(比较: *Neither window is open.* 两扇窗户都没开。)

作否定句宾语的 *all, both, every...* 仍是表示“部分否定”:

He didn't eat *all* the peanuts. (RHD) 他并没有把所有花生都吃光。

He didn't attend *every* class. (ib) 他并没有上所有这些班的课程。

I don't want *both* books. (ib) 我不是两本书都要。

I don't know *both*. (ib) 我并非对二者全都了解。

4.3 情态复合谓语的否定中心在 not 前或后

在情态复合谓语的情态动词和实意动词(或联系动词)不定式之间加 not, 对情态复合谓语加以否定时, 否定中心多在情态动词。例如 cannot... 是“不(可)能...”; will not... 是“不愿、不肯...”, should not (ought not to) ... 是“不应该...”; need not... 是“不必...”(情态动词 have to... 的否定形式前加助动词 do 再加 not, 也是“不必...”)。

但是, 表示最肯定情态意义“一定”、“必须”、“必然”的 must 加 not 却不是否定情态动词, 而是否定其后实意动词或联系动词, 意思是“一定不要...”、“一定不能...”或“必须/必然不...”:

He *mustn't find out* what's happening. (Swan) 他一定不能(我们一定不让他)知道所发生的事。

We *mustn't be late*, must we? (ALD) 我们一定不要迟到, 是不是? (句末反义问句的 must 语气减弱, 已不意味着“一定吗?”)

We must meet again, *mustn't* we (*must we not*)? (LDCE) 我们一定还要见面, 不是吗? (句末反义问句中因 must 语气减弱, 可以加以否定: “不是一定吗?”)

Must I not have a voice in the matter, now I am your wife? (井上) 我既然是你的妻子, 在这件事上我还一定不能参加意见吗?

对 must 所表必要性本身予以否定要借用 need not/do not have to:

“Must we pack now?” — “No, we *needn't/don't have to* pack till tomorrow.” (CGEL) “咱们现在就必须打点行装吗?” “不, 还不必, 明天打点还不晚。”

must 除表示势态“必要(一定要)”外,还可以表示对实际情况的估计“必然(一定是)”:

He *must be* there. 他一定要呆在那里(到那里去)。或者“他一定是在那里。”

不过,在疑问句、否定句, must 一般只表“必要”,不表或很少表“必然”:

“*Must he be* there?” — “He *mustn't be* there.” “他一定要(必须)呆在那里吗?” “他一定不要呆在那里。”(或“…到那里去(吗)”)

Must he still be there at this hour of night? (问句中较少指实况估计) 这么晚了他还一定是在那里吗?

He *can't be* there at such an hour. (一般不用 *mustn't* 指否定的实况估计) 这个时候了,他不可能(一定已不是)在那里。

need not/don't have to 也可指否定的实况估计:

It *doesn't have to be/needn't be* hot in Florida now. (CGEL) 在佛罗里达现在不一定是很热的。

情态动词 may 有两种基本含义:“可以”(得到某人许可)和“可能”(客观允许或估计实况如此)。在其否定的情态复合谓语中,可因重读词的不同而有不同意义:

You *may not* go swimming. (I don't permit you) (GCE) (may not 连读,重读 not, 否定 may) 你不可以去游泳(我不许你去)。

You may (短暂间隙) *'not go* swimming. (I permit you not to go) (ib) (not go 连读,重读 not 而否定实意动词 go) 你可以不去游泳(我允许你不去)。

They *'may not* come if it's wet. (Leech) (重读 may 强调“可能”, not come 连读而否定实意动词 come) 如果下雨,他们可能不来。

He *'may not be* there. 他可能是不在那里。

正因为 *may not...* 会有这三种歧义,对“可以”、“可能”的势态本身的否定现多用较明确的 *cannot (can't)/mustn't*:

You *may* lead the horse to the water, but you *can't* make him drink. (谚语) 你可以牵马到水边,但不能强让它喝水。

You *can't /mustn't* go swimming today. 今天你不能(否定态)/一定不要去(否定实意动词)游泳。

后接 *not* 的 *will* 也可以特别重读该情态动词以强调“意愿”或“趋向”(主观要求),而使 *not* 成为余音转而否定其后实意动词(或对 *won't* 不只一般重读,而是加重重读,而使 *-n't* 转而否定实意动词):

He *'will not* (*'won't*) do what he's told. (Leech) (He insists on *not doing* what he s'told.) 他坚决不按告诉他的那样去做。

He *'will not* (*'won't*) stop acting the fool. (Palmer) (He persists *'not stopping* acting the fool.) 他坚持没完没了地干那种蠢事。

如果读 *shall not...* 时,特别重读 *shall*(或对 *shan't* 不只一般重读、而是加重重读),也能强调客观要求(较旧用法表“必定”)而使 *not*(或 *-n't*) 转而否定实意动词:

You *'shall not* (*'shan't*) escape my revenge! (Leech) (I insist on seeing that *you don't escape* my revenge!) 你一定不能逃脱我的报复!

I *'won't /'shan't*(英国口语) give in! (CGE) 我决不屈服!

情态动词 *shall* 本义“须要”,同 *must*“必须、一定”相近。估计实况“必然”只用 *must* 而不用 *shall*。*will* 和本属虚拟语气的 *would/should/ought to* 都可用于实况估计:

That *'ll be* the postman. (Horny) 那准是邮递员来了。

She *would be* about fifty. (ib) 她大概 50 左右。

His book *ought to/should be* reliable. 他的著作应该可靠。

估计实况“可能”用 may(或虚拟语气的 might/could),“可能不”用 may(might) not;“不可能”用 cannot (can't); 询问实况“可能吗”? 用 Can(Could)? ——Can (Could) he be there? He may(might) not / can't (cannot) / won't (wouldn't) / shouldn't / oughtn't / needn't / doesn't have to be there. 他可能在那儿吗? 他可能不/不可能/不会是/不应该是/不应当是/不见得/不一定在那儿。

情态动词 + not...否定中心表

否定中心在情态动词	否定中心在实意/联系动词
can't/cannot 1) 不能,不会(做) 2) 不可能(做/是) 3) 不可以(做)	
may not (客观使其)不可以(做) [陈旧/正式用语]	may not do /be 可能不做/不是 [“是”、“不是”指实况估计] may(间隙)not do 可以不做
won't/will not 1) 要求,不愿意 2) 不会(是)(实况估计)	won't /will not do 坚持不做
shan't/shall not (客观使其)不要,不得 (不用于实况估计)	shan't/shall not do (客观使其)一定不要做
need't /don't need (have)to 1) 不必,不一定(做) 2) 不一定是[实况估计]	mustn't/must not do (主观或客观使其)一定不要做

其他如 dare not (不敢), should not (不应该), ought not to (较正式,“不应当”)等否定中心显然是在前面的情态动词,未列表内。

4.4 非肯定句中用非肯定词语,除非有肯定意向

正如表示“可以”与否时,在肯定句中用 *may*、在疑问句或否定句中多用 *Can...? /cannot* 一样,我们表示不确定的“一些”、“一点儿”时,在肯定句中用 *some*;在疑问句、否定句、条件句等句中指非肯定事物时,一般要用 *any*。*some* 和 *any* 及二者分别构成的复合词、短语表达对应的肯定词语和非肯定词语含义:

He may be of *some* service *in some way/in a way*. 他可能(可以)在某(些)方面有些帮助。

Can we be of *any* assistance *in any way*? 我们能在某些方面有些帮助吗?

I'm *somewhat* (程度副词) *wiser now*. (CGEL) 现在我多少明智些了。

I'm not *any* *wiser now*. (ib) 现在我并未比当初明智些了。

They'll finish it *somehow* (方式副词)。他们总会把这一工作完成的。

They won't finish it *in any way/won't finish it at all*. (CGEL) 他们怎么也不会完成/根本不会(不想)完成这一工作。

She is *somewhat /more or less* suspicious of his intentions. 她对她的用意有所怀疑。

If you are *in any way/in the least* doubtful about it, don't do it. 如果你对这事有什么/有一点儿怀疑,你就不要办理。

In some sense/In a (certain) sense, it may have been the only possible solution. (RHD) 从某种意义上说,这种方法可能在当时是唯一可行的解决办法。

They have never come of age *in any adequate sense*. (NDEC) 从任何适当意义上说,他们都绝未达到成年。

It's very likely that they were *sometime/once* sailors under his command. 很可能,他们过去曾是他率领下的水手。

It's unlikely that she has *ever* been to Scotland. (*ever* 相当 any time) 她不大可能曾经到过苏格兰。

They have *sometimes* been on some of the big liners, too. (你们登上过,) 他们也有时登上过大客轮。

I haven't *ever* been on *any* of the big liners, *either*. (你没登上过,) 我也从来没登上过大客轮。

由此看来,互相对应的肯定/非肯定词语,不仅是 *some/any* 及二者构成的复合词或短语。但注意,否定句中非肯定词语是用在否定词后,否定词前仍用肯定词语: Some people never send *any* Christmas cards. 有人从不会给别人寄圣诞卡。I, too, cannot swim. (RHD) 我也不会游泳。比较 I cannot swim, *either*.

对应的肯定/非肯定词语表

	肯定词语	非肯定词语 (问句中或 not.../if... 等后)
代词、代词性短语	some(body/thing) a lot/great number (of) a lot/great deal (of)	any(body/thing) many much(兼为副词)
副词、副词性短语	a long time a long way already also/too in a way/somehow more or less/somewhat once/sometime/sometimes somewhere/some place still	long far yet either in any way in the least/at all ever anywhere/any place any longer/any more

I like them *a great deal*. 我非常喜欢他们。

I don't like them (*very*) *much*. 我不大喜欢他们。

I can stay *a long time*. 我能逗留很久。

I can't stay *long*. 我不能久留。

We went *a long way*. (ALD) 我们走了很远。

“How *far* did you go?” “We didn't go *far*.” (ib)

“你们走了多远?” “我们没走多远。”

The boat has left *already*. 船已经开了。

Has/Hasn't the boat left *yet*? (CGEL)

船已经开了吗/船还没开吗?

He's *still* at school. 他还在上学。

He's not at school *any longer/any more*. 他已不上学了。

few, little, hardly, scarcely 构成的否定句及暗含否定意义的句中,也用非肯定词语:

Few changes have *ever* taken so many people by surprise. 没有什么变动曾使这么多人不知所措。

另一方面,肯定句中常有一部分事物是非肯定的而使用非肯定词语,同样也允许非肯定句中有一部分肯定事物而使用肯定词语:

If she didn't talk to *someone, anything* might happen. (Maculae)

(她一定要和某个人谈话,以防坏人知其单身在外而加害于她。)如果她不和某人谈话,那就什么事都会发生。

疑问句、甚至否定句中有时也意指肯定事物而用肯定词语。这就是非肯定句中表示“肯定意向”的用法:

Now he began to question if there were not *some* truth in what Denny said. (Cronin) 这时他开始怀疑(否定原看法),难道丹尼所说的话就没有某些道理吗?

“I understand she showed him *some* photographs.” — “No, she didn't show him any/*some* photographs.”(否定句中可重复对方肯定的 *some*)“我知道她给他看了些照片。”“没有,她没给他看什么/些照片。”

If you want any/*some* help, let me know. (Swan) (用 *some* 期待肯定,更亲切) 如果你需要帮忙,只管说一声。

Won't you have *some* more? (ALD)(难道)你不再吃点儿了吗?

Is there *something* to eat? I can smell food. (LDCE) 有吃的吧? 我闻到食品香味了。

He wants *something* to eat? (陈述句语序以升调表疑问,总是期待肯定回答) 他是要点儿什么东西吃吧?

Didn't he recognize you *either*? 他连你也没认出来吗?

Didn't he recognize you *too*? 他不是把你也认出来了吗?

Has the boat left *already*? 船已经开了吧? / 难道船已经开了?
(比较前面例句 Has the boat left *yet*?)

Hasn't the boat left *already*? (CGEL) (船应该已经开了) 难道船还没开?
(比较前面例句 Hasn't the boat left *yet*?)

already 用于疑问句表示对自己看法的肯定、或对别人的肯定的惊疑;用于否定句表示对别人提过情况的疑惑。*yet* 用于肯定句属陈旧用法,现很少用。

already, yet, still 用法比较表

	肯定词 <i>already</i> (by this time: 早在此刻)已经	非肯定词 <i>yet</i> (up to this time: 时至今日)已经...? 还(没有)...	肯定词兼非肯定词 <i>still</i> (constantly even at this time: 一直持续)仍然
肯定句	He's <u>already</u> here. He's here <u>already</u> ! (置句末语气较强)	[限于陈旧、文学用语] He's <u>yet</u> a child. (LDCE)(还) He's here <u>yet</u> . (RHD)	He's <u>still</u> here. He's here <u>still</u> . <u>Still</u> , he's here. (接上文“虽然...”)他仍然...
疑问句	Is he here <u>already</u> ? (岩波) 非普通疑问句;表示对有人肯定的情况的惊疑	Is he here <u>yet</u> ? Has he come <u>yet</u> ? (Palmer) 他已经来了吗?	Is he here <u>still</u> ? Is he <u>still</u> here? 他仍是一直在这儿吗?

续表

	肯定词 already (by this time:早在此刻)已经	非肯定词 yet (up to this time:时至此刻)已经...? 还(没有)...	肯定词兼非肯定词 still (constantly even at this time:一直持续)仍然
否定句	You're <u>not leaving us already</u> , are you? (ALD) 非普通否定;表示对有人肯定的情况的疑惑	He's not <u>yet</u> here. 他还没来到。 He isn't here <u>yet</u> .	He's <u>still</u> not working. He isn't working <u>still</u> . <u>Still</u> , he's not working. (此句接上文“虽然...”)他仍然是一直不工作。(参见 RHD)

再比较:“Was he *still* in bed?” — “He had *already* got up .”
He was *still* busy; he hadn't finished that novel *yet* .

4.5 多用于非肯定句的 long, far, many, much 可用于哪几种肯定句?

度量副词 long, far, much 和指量代词 many, much 在肯定句和疑问、否定、条件句中用法不同。

1) 时间度量(持续)副词 long 通常限用于非肯定(疑问、否定、条件)句:

Did he stay *long*? 他逗留了很久吗?

He didn't stay *long*. 他没有逗留很久。

I can't stay (very) *long*. 我不能久留。

If he were to stay very *long*, Uncle might be cross with him. 假如他长久逗留,叔叔会烦他的。

These shoes probably won't last *long* /for long. (for long 比 long 语气强些)这双鞋大概不经穿。

Will you be out (for) *long*? (ALD)你出去时间长吗?

If you are staying for *long*, we can draw up a program of visits

and excursions for you. (Wood) 如果你将长久逗留,我们可为你拟一份参观游览的程序。

2) 仅在某些表意念、态度、交际的动词前(助动词 have, will 等后),持续副词 long 常用于肯定句:

I've **long** thought of retiring. 我早就想退休了。

He has **long** admired my style of writing. 他很久以来就欣赏我的文风。

The merits of the scheme will **long** be discussed. 该计划的种种优点将被长久议论。

The author of the book was for **long** thought to be a clergyman.

(Wood)该书作者很久以来被认为是一位牧师。

偶见“have been long + 形容词或名词”型结构:

My mother **has been long** dead. (RHD) 我母亲早已去世。

a quiet picturesque resort, (**having been**) **long** the gathering place of artists (Web. 3) 一个清静、如画的去处,很久以来便是艺术家们聚会的场所

3) 一般肯定句中多不用 long 而用 for a long time(否定句中也可使用)。紧接动词时, for 可省略:

I have/haven't been there **for a long time**. 我好久没去那里了。

For a long time I have known of these two funny little clowns.

我早就知道这两个逗乐的小丑。

He stayed **a long time**. 他逗留很久。

I can/can't stay **a long time**. 我能/不能长久逗留。

He didn't speak **for long**. = He only spoke **for a short time**.

(Swan) 他发言时间不长。

He didn't speak **for a long time**. = It was **a long time** before he spoke. (ib) 他沉默很久后,才开口说话。

4) 但比较级、最高级形式或带修饰语(除 very 外)的 long 常用

于肯定句或否定句、疑问句:

I can/can't stay *longer*. 我(不)能再逗留下去。

He who laughs last laughs *longest* (best). (谚语) 笑在最后(末尾),笑得最久(最美)。

He stayed too *long*. 他逗留得太久了。

He stayed so *long* that Uncle got cross with him. 他逗留得太久,叔叔都烦他了。

God has supported me thus *long*. (RHD) 迄今上帝一直支持着我。

The journey took *long* enough for everyone to get to know each other. (enough ... 属后位状语) 旅途漫长,大家都有足够时间互相了解。

all day long, as long as ..., long ago/since, long into/before/after(接名词性成分或从句) 之类,可属 long 带修饰语或构成复合修饰语:I heard that old joke long since(long ago). (WBD) 我早就听说那个老笑话了。

空间度量副词 far 有类似的用法:

1)单独使用,通常限于非肯定句中

"How *far* did you go?" — "We didn't go *far*." (ALD) "你们走了多远?" "我们没走很远。"

I don't live *far* from the center of the town. (Swan) 我住得离市中心不远。

2)一般肯定句中,多不用 far 而用 for a long way。紧接动词时,for 可省略:

He crawled on his hands and knees *for a long way*/for 100 metres. 他匍匐在地爬了很远/一百米。

The forest stretches (*for*) *a long way*. (Palmer) 森林绵延出去很远。

They live *a long way* from us. 他们住得离我们很远。

“Did you walk far?” — “Yes, we walked a long way.” (LDCE)

“你们步行了很远吗?” “是的,我们步行了很远。”

3)但比较级、最高级形式或带修饰语的 *far* 常用于肯定句或否定句、疑问句:

They live/don't live *very far*/too far. 他们住在很远/不太远的地方。

We walked *farther* than we meant to. (WBD) 我们散步出去,比原来想走的要远。

Tom can throw the ball *farthest*. 汤姆扔球扔得最远。

I haven't had any problems *so far*. (Swan) 直到目前我们还没有什么难题。

I'm *far from* satisfied with your results. (ib) 对你的成绩,我远远不能满意。

表可数或不可数(包括抽象的)量的指量代词 *many/much*(后者兼度量副词)也有类似的用法:

1)单独使用,通常限于非肯定句中:

Did he make *many* mistakes? 他出了很多错吗?

We didn't see (very) *many* on our last visit. 我们上次来访没看到许多。

I don't have *much* money. 我没有许多钱。

I don't like them very *much*. 我不大喜欢他们。

2)表意念、态度、交际的动词前,常用于肯定句:

I *much* prefer the old methods. (CGEL, 8.105) 我非常偏爱旧有的方法。

I *most/very much* appreciate your kindness. 我非常感激您的善意。

He is *much* pleased with your success. (RHD) 为了你的成功,他

非常高兴。

Mr. Myers was *much* loved by the boys of his school. (ib) 梅尔先生得到学校男孩子的高度爱戴。

3)一般肯定句中,多不用 many/much 而用 a good/great many, a large number (of) 或 a great deal/amount (of) 或 plenty/a lot (of) 等:

A *lot of* my friends are thinking of emigrating, but I don't suppose many of them will in the end. (Swan) 我有很多朋友在考虑移居国外,但我设想最后不会有很多真的移居。

“How much money have you got?” — “It's OK, I've got *plenty/ quite a lot.*” (ib) “你有多少钱?” “没问题,我有相当多。”

The auditors have found *a large number of* mistakes in the accounts. (ib) 审计人员在账目中查出很多错。

A *large/great amount of* our investments are in property. (Alexander) 我们在房地产行业中有大量投资。

We saw *a great many* excellent ones on our last visit. 上次来访,我们看到许多杰作。

I like them *a great deal* (可用 very much). 我非常喜欢他们。仅在相当正式的文体中,肯定句使用 many/much :

Much has been done to improve conditions of work. (Alexander) 为改善条件,已做了大量工作。

Many teachers dislike marking piles of exercise books. (ib) 许多教师不喜欢批改大堆作业本。

Much will have more. (谚语) 有钱嫌少,没完没了。

4)但比较级、最高级形式或带修饰语的 many/much 常用于肯定句或否定句、疑问句:

More are drowned in the beaker than in the sea. 溺死于大海中的不少,丧命于酒杯中的更多。

The tongue wounds *more* than a lance. (RHD) 舌头伤人,凶似长矛。

She likes him very *much* / *so much* / *too much*. (* 不说 She likes him much.) 她非常/那么/太喜欢他(了)。

There are far too *many* accidents at this junction. (Alexander) 这个路口发生的车祸过分频繁了。

不过,修饰形容词、副词比较级或最高级以及修饰介词短语的 *far*, *much* 不限于以上所述:

This book is *far* / *much more* interesting. 这本书远远更为有趣。

He is *much* / *by far* the best student in the class. 他遥遥领先,是全班最好的学生。

You're *much* too honest. (RHD) 你过分诚实了。

Much to my disappointment, she did not come. (ib) 使我大失所望,她没有来。

Exercise 4

I. 指出下列句中否定词的词性,属于哪种词类,并将句子译成汉语:

1. That's **little** better than nothing.
2. **No** cigarette is completely harmless.
3. **None** of her relations are/is interested.
4. "Which one do you want?" — "**Neither** is good."
5. We **scarcely** had time for breakfast.
6. That tyrant has **few friends**, if any at all, but there are a few men who flatter him for their own advancement.

II. 将下列句子译成英语,使用部分否定句:

1. 闪闪发光的并不都是金子。(谚)

2. 答案并非全对。
3. 这两种物质并不都溶于水。
4. 这里的学生不全是我们学校的。
5. 金钱并非万能。

Ⅲ. 分别用 already, yet, still 填空, 再将句子译成汉语, 并说明各句是肯定句还是非肯定句, 以弄清这 3 个词的不同用法:

1. Oh, hell, it's _____ raining.
2. Has the postman come _____ ?
3. Have you met Professor Hawkins _____ ?
4. Have you _____ met Professor Hawkins?
5. Are you _____ here? I thought you'd gone ages ago.
6. I've started learning Greek, but I haven't got very far _____ .
7. Is my coat dry _____ ? That's quick!

Ⅳ. 说明标有序号的否定词语的否定中心在于其前或其后的哪个词语:

Let us not(1) seek to satisfy our thirst for freedom by drinking from the cup of bitterness and hatred. 我们不要为了满足对自由的渴望而从恶意与仇恨之杯痛饮毒酒。

The marvelous new militancy which has engulfed the Negro community must not(2) lead us to a distrust of all white people, for many of our white brothers, as evidenced by their presence here today, have come to realize that their destiny is tied up with our destiny.

We can not(3) walk alone.

We can never(4) be satisfied as long as our children are stripped of their selfhood and robbed of their dignity by signs stating "for white only." 只要那宣称“仅接纳白人”的牌子依然在剥夺我们的孩子们的

人格、侵吞他们的尊严,我们就永远也不会满足。

We can not(5) be satisfied as long as a Negro in Mississippi can not(6) vote and a Negro in New York believes he has nothing for which to vote.

No, no, we are not(7) satisfied and we will not(8) be satisfied until justice rolls down like waters and righteousness like a mighty stream. 不,我们现在不满足、将来也不会满足,除非正义和公理像江河的巨流,汹涌澎湃、滚滚而来。

(Martin Luther King, *I Have a Dream*)

第五章 语序之一 ——前位、后位、外位状语

5.1 正装语序中位置灵活多样的各种状语

状语是修饰谓语、表语、整个句子以及形容词、副词、动词非谓语形式、分词短语等的成分。实际上,状语是许多不同功能词语的总称。

因为状语类别繁多,功能不同,它们在句中的位置也各不相同。虽然我们把它们分为前位、后位、外位的各种状语,但实际句中,常为了平衡、强调、承接而取倒装语序,打破了状语的标准安排。而且即使是正装语序,不少状语的位置也是灵活多变的。专用于修饰某种词语而位置较为固定的状语只是一小部分,大部分状语可用来修饰多种词语,甚至句中任何词语,其位置随之变动,例如:

Only I saw him. (副词 **only** 修饰代词主语) 只有我看见了。

I **only** saw him. (But I didn't spoke to him.). (修饰谓语) 我只看见了他(但我没和他说话)。

I saw **only** the son. I saw him **only**. (修饰宾语置其前或后) 我看到的只有儿子。我只看见了他。

Only his mother can tell you the truth. (修饰名词主语) 只有他母亲才能告诉你真相。

比较:

Her **only** son had been her one and **only** hope. (句中 **only** 为形容词定语) 她唯一的儿子是她仅有的希望。

She can **only** tell you what she knows. (副词 **only** 修饰带宾语的谓语) 她只能告诉你她所知道的。

She can tell you *only* what she knows. (修饰宾语从句, 全句意思可与上句相同) 她能告诉你的仅仅是她所知道的。

She can tell the story *only* to you. (修饰介词短语) 只有对你, 她才能述说事情经过。

She could tell you what happened *only* yesterday. (修饰时间状语) 只是到了昨天, 她才能向你述说所发生的事。

这一类副词称为语气副词, 不但能修饰句中任何词语, 还能修饰全句:

Even the sun has his spots. 太阳也有黑斑。(人皆有过。)

Even this is not enough. 这也不够。

I couldn't *even* carry my own parcel. 我连自己的包裹都拿不动。
比较:

The two horses ran *even*. 两匹马并排跑着。

She didn't answer *even* her mother's letter. 甚至她妈妈的信她都没有答复。

He could carry *even* two. 甚至两个, 他也能带上走。

They are ready, *even* eager to fight. (修饰表语) 他们准备好了, 甚至是急不可待, 要去战斗。

Mine is *even* more beautiful. (修饰形容词比较级) 我的更漂亮。

She did *even* better. (修饰副词比较级) 她做得更好。

Even now he doesn't believe it. (修饰时间状语) 即使到现在他也不相信此事。

I'll help you, *even* if I don't sleep for a night. (修饰状语从句) 即使一夜不睡觉我也会帮助你的。

比较:

Even with the appointed hour he departed. (NDEC) 正好在预定时刻, 他走了。

Even as he spoke, it began to rain. 他正说着, 下起雨来了。

以上作语气状语的 *only*, *even* 是用途较广的两个副词。事实上,状语最常见的用途是修饰谓语的,包括修饰谓语动词和表语,我们可以首先弄清修饰谓语动词或表语的各种状语所处的位置,其他用途的状语所处位置就不难掌握了。例如,修饰非谓语动词的状语位置与修饰谓语动词的状语相仿,修饰形容词、副词、分词短语的状语位置与修饰形容词表语的状语相仿等。

修饰谓语动词或表语的状语,就它们通常的(而不全是固定的)位置说来,可分成下面几类:

1) 动词/表语前位状语主要有:

i 最常用的一些时间副词、方式副词、方面副词、度量副词、持续副词、频度副词以及语气副词

ii 修饰形容词、副词的由词组所担任的度量状语

2) 动宾/系表后位状语主要有:

i 副词及词组、短语所担任的方式状语、方面状语

ii 副词及词组、短语所担任的度量状语、持续状语

iii 词组、短语所担任的频度状语(不包括频度副词)

iv 副词及词组、短语所担任的处所状语

3) 外位状语主要有:

i 短语所担任的原因状语、目的状语、结果状语

ii 短语所担任的条件状语、让步状语

iii 副词及词组、短语所担任的时间状语

4) 语气状语:由语气副词、用短语或短句担任

(复合结构状语和状语从句不包括在这四类之内)

5.2 动词/表语前位副词状语

大多数修饰谓语动词的副词,例如表示时间、处所、方式、度量等的副词多放在动词(及其宾语)后面;大多数修饰表语的副词,例如

表示时间、处所、度量等的副词也多放在表语后面：

She gets up *early*, dresses herself *quickly* and runs out *to do morning exercise*. She likes doing exercises *very much*. (修饰谓语动词)她早早起床,自己很快穿好衣服,跑出去锻炼。她非常喜欢锻炼。

The door is green *outside* and yellow *inside*. (修饰表语)门的外面是绿色的,里面是黄色的。

He is better *today*. He is well *enough* to leave hospital. (修饰表语)他今天好些了。可以出院了。

但是,需要注意的是某些最常用的副词,修饰谓语动词或表语时,放在动词/表语前面;如动词为复合形式,则放在助动词或情态动词后,实意动词前面:

We *quite* like him. He is *quite* a clever child. He has *quite* recovered from his illness. You may *well* say so. 我们很喜欢他。他是个相当聪明的孩子。他病后恢复得很不错了。你完全可以这样说。

这类副词放在系词 be 后、表语前面,实际上与放在助动词后,实意动词前面,属于同一类型句子结构:

You are *always* late for class. (表语前位)你上课总是迟到。

You are *always* finding fault with me. (实意动词前位)你总是找我的毛病。

如动词复合形式有两个以上助动词、情态动词,或系词前有助动词、情态动词,则这类副词放在最前一个助动词(或情态动词)后:

You have *always* been respected here. 你在这里总是受到尊敬。

He will *probably* have got to Tianjin by this time tomorrow. 到明天这个时候,他可能已经到天津了。

She might *still* be thinking about the question you raised. 她可能仍在考虑你提出的问题。

What he says cannot *possibly* be true. 他说的不可能是真的。
 这些动词/表语前位副词见下表,用例见表后。

动词/表语前位副词

	修饰谓语动词	修饰表语
1)最常用的时间副词	once, soon 等少数 可用于前位	同左
2)为数不多的频度副词	often, always 等多用于前位	同左
3)某些常用持续副词	long, ever 等少数 可用于前位	同左
4)分别修饰动词、表语的度量副词	quite, fully 等少数 用于前位	quite, fully, a little bit 等副词、词组度量状语修饰表语,皆用于前位(enough 除外);修饰表语的度量副词 considerably, quite, much, rather, sufficiently 等总是用于表语前面
5)主要修饰动词的方式副词	gladly, quietly 等少数 可用于前位	(罕用于修饰表语)前位
6)修饰形容词表语的方面副词	(修饰动词的方面副词罕用于前位)	mentally, physically 等多用于前位
7)不是修饰全句,而是只修饰动词、表语的语气副词	hardly, probably 等多用于前位	同左

1)最常用的时间副词 once, then, lately, now, soon 等可用于前位:

He *once* lived in Persia. (ALD) (once 也可置句首或句末) 他曾在波斯住过一个时期。

This novel was *once* very popular. 这本小说曾经非常流行。

They were *then* living in London. (then 也可置句首或句末) 那时他们正住在伦敦。

I haven't *lately* been to any concert. (lately 也可置句首或句末) 最近我一直没去听音乐会。

Spring is here and the country is *now* beautiful. (LDCE) (now 也可置后一分句句首或句末) 春天到了, 乡村景色很美。

It *soon* became clear that they were two cheats. (soon 也可置句首或主句句末) 很快弄清了他们俩都是骗子。

She will *soon* be back. 她很快就会回来。

这些时间副词也像一般时间状语一样, 可以放在句前或句后, 比用于动词/表语前较为强调:

Then he was headmaster of the school. (He was then. . .) 那时他是学校的校长。(也可以置于句末) He was headmaster of the school *then*.

2) 为数不多的频度副词 *seldom*, *rarely*, *sometimes*, *often*, *usually*, *always* 等多用于前位:

He *seldom* or *never* gives his wife a present. 他很少或从不给妻子礼物。

I have *rarely* seen such a beautiful sunset. (LDCE) 我很少看到这么美的日落。

rarely 置句首表示强调:

Rarely have I seen such a beautiful sunset. (其后主语谓语倒装, 这里表现为助动词提到主语前)

I *sometimes* have letters from him. (ALD) (*sometimes* 也可置句首或句末) 我有时收到他的来信。

It *often* rains here in April. (ALD) 四月份这里经常下雨。

We have *often* been there. (ALD) 我们经常去那儿。

比较:

We've been there (quite) *often*. (*often* 置句末, 较为强调) 我们常去那儿。

I'm not *usually* so late. (LDCE) 我通常不迟到。

比较:

I'm not late *usually*. (*usually* 置句末, 较为强调) 通常我不迟到。(一般情况我不迟到。)

Always look before you leap. (略去主语的祈使句) 三思而后行。

The boy is *always* asking why. 这男孩总是问为什么。

Crows are not *always* black. 乌鸦不总是黑的。

He must *always* have his own way. 他偏偏总要自行其是。

如 *always* 移到系词前面, 意在强调系词:

He *always* was a strange fellow. (*always* 与系词皆重读) 他总是一个奇怪的人。

如把 *always* 置句末, “总是”之意因强调而转为“永远”:

I'll love you *always*. (LDCE) 我将永远爱你。

3) 某些持续副词 *long*, *ever*, *temporarily*, *momentarily* 等可用于前位:

I've *long* been intending to call on you. (ALD) 我早就打算拜访你。

He was *long* a famous musician. 他早就是一个著名的音乐家。

He hasn't *long* been back. (LDCE) (He has been back for only a short time.) 他回来还没有多久。

Ever keep these ten commandments. (Keep these ten commandments forever.) 永远要守此十诫。(圣经故事)

I've *ever* thought so. 我始终是这样想的。

It's *ever* thus. It's *ever* the same. 道理总是这样。道理总是同样的。

They have *temporarily* suspended their talks. (持续副词 *temp-*

orarily 也可置句末) 他们暂时中止了谈判。

He was so surprised that he was *momentarily* unable to speak.

(LDCE) 他惊讶得一时说不出话来。

4) 修饰谓语的度量副词 *greatly*, *considerably*, *quite*, *rather*, *much*, *entirely*, *widely*, *deeply*, *fully*, *sufficiently* 等多用于前位:

Nothing that has *once* existed has *entirely* disappeared. 所有曾经存在的东西都不曾完全消失。

I *deeply* regret your misfortune. 我为你的不幸深感难过。

He is *widely* read. (LDCE) 他是个博学的人。

He has *fully* mastered the subject. 他完全掌握了这门科目。

We were *greatly* moved by his kindness. (LDCE) 我们被他的亲切态度深深地感动了。

His remarks *considerably* cleared up things. (*considerably* 也可置句末) 他的谈话使事情清楚多了。

The rain *rather* spoiled our holiday. (ALD) 雨大大糟蹋了我们的假日。

I *quite* agree (understand). (ALD) 我非常同意(理解)。

He has *quite* recovered from his illness. (ALD) 他已完全康复了。

It is *much* used in China. 它在中国得到广泛应用。

I don't *much* like that idea. (LDCE) (I don't like the idea much.) 我不太喜欢这个主意。

It doesn't *much* matter. (ALD) (It doesn't matter very much.) 这没多大关系。

I very *much* enjoyed the concert. (ALD) (I enjoyed the concert very much. I enjoyed it very much.) 我非常喜欢(欣赏)这场音乐会。

All his wants are *sufficiently* supplied. 他所有的要求都得到了

满足。

5) 修饰表语的度量副词 *considerably*, *quite*, *much*, *rather*, *sufficiently* 等总是用于表语前面:

It is *considerably* colder this morning. (ALD) 今天早晨比以前冷多了。

His language is *sufficiently* simple. 他的语言十分简明。

比较: His language is simple enough. (度量副词 *enough* 总是放在所修饰的形容词、副词后面)

She was *quite* alone. (LDCE) 她完全是孤身一人。

That's *quite* a story. (LDCE) 那是个很不简单的故事。

These Italian dress materials are *quite* the things this summer.

(ALD) 这些意大利衣料今年夏天很流行。

比较, *quite* 修饰主语:

Quite a time was spent there. 在那里度过了很长时间。

它也可以修饰宾语:

It takes *quite* a time. (LDCE) 这事需要很长时间才能解决。

This is *much* the best. (ALD) 这再好不过了。

The patient's condition is *much* the same. (ALD) 病人的情况几乎没有变化。

It's *rather* a pity. (ALD) 这太可惜了。

除度量副词 *enough* 外, 所有修饰形容词、副词的度量副词如 *partly*, *half*, *rather*, *so*, *pretty*, *fairly*, *extremely*, *awfully*, *amazingly*, *definitely*, *positively* 等, 全都放在所修饰的形容词、副词前面:

He is *awfully* polite. (远东英汉大辞典) 他特别有礼貌。

It is *awfully* good of you. (英华大辞典) 你简直是太好了。

The host was an *awfully* nice fellow. 老板是个极好的人。

This is a *fairly* easy book. (Perhaps suitable) (ib) 这是一本相当简易的书。(可能是合适的)

This is a *rather* easy book. (Perhaps unsuitable) (ALD) 是一本十分简易的书。(可能不合适)或者: This is *rather* an easy book. 这是十分简易的一本书。

It's not *half* long enough. 这不够一半长。

He speaks French *very* well. Few here can speak French so well.

And he can *also* speak English *well* enough to talk to us Englishmen. 他法语讲得很好。这里没有几个人法语讲得这么好。他还能用英语和我们英国人交谈。(注意 enough 与 half, very, so 的不同位置)

度量副词 enough 无论修饰过去分词、名词表语、形容词或副词都位于所修饰的词语后面:

The meat is not cooked *enough*. (ALD) 这肉烧得不够火候。

I was fool *enough* to believe her. (ib) (Foolish enough) 我相信了她的话,真是蠢透了。

Are you man *enough* for this dangerous job? (LDCE) 你是个能胜任这危险工作的男子汉吗?

She cooks well *enough*, and she would cook very well if she took more trouble. 她做饭做得还可以。如果她再多用些心,她会做得非常好的。

比较: *enough* men(代词、定语)足够的人

I've had (more than) *enough*. (代词、宾语) 我的已足够了。

6) 修饰谓语动词的方式副词 suddenly, hurriedly, slowly, quietly, gladly, stupidly, loudly, flatly 等可用于前位(方式副词很少用来修饰表语或形容词定语):

She *suddenly* awoke. (suddenly 也可置句首或句末,较为强调) 她突然醒来。

He *hurriedly* finished his supper. 他匆匆地吃了晚饭。

He *slowly* walked across the room. (He walked *slowly* across the

room, 可以说 He walked slowly, 以表现“句末重点”, end focus)他慢步横穿房间。

The girl *quietly* went away. 这女孩悄悄地走开了。

We *gladly* accepted their invitation. 我们高兴地接受了他们的邀请。

He *stupidly* answered the question. 他愚蠢地回答了这个问题。

He *loudly* praised her work. (Ganshina) 他极力赞扬她的工作。

(有时用于转义)

比较:

What a *loudly* dressed girl! (ALD) 这女孩穿得多么花哨(衣服多么刺眼啊)!(用于转义)

如说 Someone knocked loud at the door. (ALD) 有人大声敲门(语含贬义,指很吵)。

一般: He speaks loud. 他说话声音大。(本义)

We *flatly* rejected the other side's unreasonable bemoans. 我们断然拒绝了对方的抱怨。

He *flatly* refused to join us. (ALD) 他断然拒绝加入我们的行列。

The suggestions were *flatly* opposed. (ALD) 这些建议碰到了直截了当的反对。(着重 opposed)

比较:

“It's hopeless,” he said *flatly*. (LDCE) 他冷冷地说:“没有希望了。”(着重 flatly)

He denied it *flatly*. (Ganshina) 他矢口否认这事。

再比较:

I told him *flatly* that I disliked him. (无-ly 也用作副词,但限于动词后) 我直截了当地告诉他我不喜欢他。

He's *flat* broke. (LDCE)(flat 在此为度量副词)他一贫如洗。

偶见方式副词修饰表语:

His voice was *utterly and drearily* expressionless. (London) 他的声音完全没有语气,沉闷而不表明任何态度。

7) 修饰形容词表语或过去分词的方面副词(表示关系特征) *theoretically, technically, mentally, spiritually, physically, strategically, tactically* 等多用于形容词表语或过去分词前(它们修饰谓语动词时多用于动词后):

Your argument is *theoretically* unsound. 你的论点从理论上讲不合理。

Her method was *technically* verified. 她的方法在技术上得到验证。

They felt *mentally* ill and *spiritually* barren. 他们感到思想苦闷,精神空虚。

You must be *physically* fit after all. 终究你必须身体健康。

It will be a *strategically* decisive battle. 那将是一次战略上有决定意义的战役。

They found it *tactically* convenient to encourage the spread of this belief. 他们发现鼓励这种信仰的传播在战术上是很便当的。

比较:

We despise the enemy *strategically*, but take him seriously *tactically*. (修饰谓语动词多置动词及宾语后面) 我们在战略上藐视敌人,在战术上重视敌人。

5.3 动词/表语前位语气副词状语

语气副词表示说话人加于所述客观事物的主观认识,说明其肯定或否定性,确实或可能性,对已知事物的“类同”或“转变”性,对主观设想的“局限”或“超越”性等。

很多语气副词用于修饰全句,置句首或缀于句末。只有一部分语气副词可用于修饰谓语动词或表语(或句中其它部分),修饰谓语动词或表语的语气副词,除 too(“也”)常置句末、yet(“还”、“已”)多用于动词/表语后位以外,一般都置于动词/表语前位:

肯定、否定: ever; not, never, hardly, scarcely

确实、可能: certainly, really, actually; probably

类同、转变: also, too; otherwise

局限、超越: just, only; still, yet, already, even, simply

If you *ever* visit Beijing, come and see us. 如果你到北京来,一定来看我们。

I hardly *ever* see him nowadays. 如今我几乎见不到他。

Victory *certainly* belongs to the people. 胜利一定属于人民。

Some physical labor is *certainly* good for you. 一些体力劳动对你肯定有好处。

I will *certainly* not consent. I will never consent. 我肯定不会同意,我永远不会同意。

too(“也”)修饰谓语、表语置句末,修饰其他成分,置该成分后:

I swim and skate *too*. (I swim, and also skate.) 我游泳,也滑冰。

He's an idler and a gambler *too*. (also a gambler, a gambler also) 他是个游手好闲的人,还是个赌徒。

Byron *too* admired it greatly. (修饰主语)拜伦也非常推崇它。

Here, *too*, a colon must be followed by a dash. (修饰状语)这里也一样,冒号后必须跟一破折号。

John has *probably* told his father all about it; he *usually* tells him everything. (此句语气副词 probably 置助动词后,实意动词前;此句程度副词 usually 置动词前)约翰可能把一切都告诉他父亲了。因为他总是把什么都告诉他父亲。

It will *probably* be fine tomorrow. 明天大概是好天。(语气副词

probably 置助动词后,联系动词前)

We *only just* caught the train. (ALD) 我们刚好赶上车。

He might *even* have arrived in New York by air by that time. 到那时他很可能已经乘飞机到达了纽约。

This is *just* what I wanted. (表语从句前)这正是我想要的。

His proposal is *simply* what we won't consider. (表语从句前)他的建议根本不是我们想要考虑之事。

Is the coffee cold *yet*? (未知而问) (Is it cold already? 表示已被告知而有疑问) 咖啡凉了吗?

It's not cold *yet*. (yet 多置句后, 或 It's not yet cold.) 咖啡还没凉。

I thought it might *already* be cold, but it's *still* hot. (助动词后, 联系动词前; 无助动词时, 置表语前) 我以为咖啡已经凉了, 但还没凉。

修饰谓语、表语的语气副词如置于句首或句末, 表示特别强调。

助动词或情态动词如换到该副词后, 也属强调:

I'll also go. 我也去。

I'll go 'also. 我也要去。

I also 'will 'go. 我也愿意去。

'Certainly I know him. 毫无疑问, 我认识他。

I know him, 'certainly. 我认识他, 没错。

如要省略上文提过的实意动词, 就要将助动词、系词或情态动词移到语气副词后面,

即移到句尾:

{ Can you dance?
你会跳舞吗?
I *certainly* 'can!
我当然会啦!

{ Have you ever seen a whale blowing?

{ 你曾见过鲸鱼喷水吗?

{ No, I *never*' have. (原无重音的助动词后移,取得重音)

{ 没有,从来没有。

I haven't told her and *never* 'will. 我还没有告诉她,而且永远不会告诉她。

You're always faint-hearted, which your husband *never* is. 你总是这么怯懦,而你丈夫却从不这样。

5.4 动词/表语前位词组、短语状语

有些较常用的词组、短语状语也多置于动词/表语前位:

The cup was *at last* returned to him. (at last 也可置句首,表时间)这个杯子最终还给了他。

He looked about him for a cafe. He didn't *at once* see one and walked on a little. (He didn't see one at once. . .) 他向四周望望,想寻找个咖啡馆。他没有马上看到,就又往前走了几步。

The book is *at once* interesting and instructive. 这本书既有趣又有教育意义。

It cannot *for a moment* be neglected. (for a moment 也可置句末,表持续)一刻也不能忽视它。

I've *again and again* told these silly boys and girls not to make fun of that poor old woman. (I've told . . . again and again not to. . .)(表频度)我一次又一次地告诉这些无聊的男孩和女孩们不要拿那个可怜的老妇人取乐。

This is *far and away* the best. (ALD)(表度量)这是绝对最好的了。

The old road is prettier, but it is *by far* the longer way. 那条旧路

是比较整洁的,但走那条道儿远得多。

The dam is *in many ways* the most important project here. (表方面) 这道水坝在许多方面都是这里最重要的工程。

This is *every way* superior to that. (表方面) 这个在各方面都比那个优越。

They are *in no way* similar. 他们根本不相似。

He is not *a bit* better. (表度量) 他一点不比别人好。

It was early March, but the weather was not *at all* cold. 那还是三月初,但天气根本不冷。

Mine is *of course* the best. (of course 也可置句首、句末;表语气) 我的当然是最好的。

特别是修饰形容词、副词、介词短语(无论其为表语或其他成分)的表度量名词词组,总是放在所修饰的词语前面:

The room is *ten metres* long and *three metres* wide. 这房间十米长,三米宽。

We are *still some way* off. 我们还有一段路要走。

I'm *a little bit* tired. (LDCE) 我有一点累了。

It's not *a bit* of use. (ALD) 这一点用也没有。

It was *ten degrees* below zero. (修饰介词短语所任表语) 气温零下十度。

He is a millionaire *several times* over his father. (修饰介词短语所任定语) 他是一个超过他父亲几倍的百万富翁。

Yours is *ten times* as large as mine is. (ALD) 你的是我的十倍大。

比较:

修饰动词的表度量名词词组状语(及短语度量状语)置于动词之后:

The boy weighs *eighty pounds*. 这男孩体重 80 磅。

We walked (for) *three miles*. (ALD) 我们走了三英里路。

The road is lined with trees *for ten miles*. (ADD) 道路两侧栽着树木,长达 10 英里。

5.5 动宾/系表后位副词状语

大部分运动方式副词位于动词后面,处所副词通常位于动词或“系词 + 表语”后面,可称为后位副词状语:

We ran *quickly* there. 我们快步跑到那里。

The children stayed *together* indoors. 孩子们一起呆在家里。

The steamer gave a long hoot and steered *slowly* south. 轮船汽笛一声长鸣,慢慢地向南驶去。

We were then living there *quietly*. (后位较前位语气重些)那时我们在那里生活得很安宁。

比较:

We were then *quietly* living there. 那时我们安宁地住在那里。

I shouted *loud* and long, but nobody came here. (long 为持续副词)我大声喊了很久,但没有人到这里来。

持续副词和方面副词也多置动词/表语后位,特别是修饰动词时,置于动词后位:

But I was delayed there *temporarily*. (也是后位较前位语气重些)但我暂时被耽搁在那里。

比较:

I was *temporarily* delayed there. 我暂时被耽搁在那里了。

But I cannot understand it *theoretically*. 但从理论上我不能理解这个问题。

He is only in charge *theoretically*. 只是从理论上说,是他负责。

比较:

He is only *theoretically* in charge. 他只是在理论(名义)上负责。
句中有宾语,后位副词状语要置于宾语后面:

They usually do their homework here *carefully*. 他们通常在这儿认真做作业。

但如宾语或表语较长时,也可以将通常处于后位的副词放在动词或表语前位,使句子更加均衡、沉稳:

They are *here* doing homework their teacher assigned them yesterday afternoon. 他们正在这儿做他们老师昨天下午留的作业。

They are *here* our honorable guests. 他们是我们这里尊贵的客人。

在特别强调这些副词所表示的特征时,也可以把该副词置于句子最前面:

Here we differ. 我们的差别就在这里。

Here and there I saw snakes. 我到处看到蛇。

Merrily the fountain plashed and plashed. 喷泉欢快地喷着水。

5.6 动宾/系表后位词组、短语状语

由词组、短语担任的度量状语,持续状语(时间度量)、方式状语、方面状语、处所状语以及频度状语,通常位于动词(及其宾语)或“系词 + 表语”后面,可称为后位状语(只是度量状语、持续状语修饰形容词、副词表语时放在前位):

We traveled *four hours by bus along the coast*. (持续状语、方式状语、处所状语)我们乘车沿海岸行驶了4小时。(或 We traveled by bus along the coast for four hours.)

I carried it *a long way on my shoulder*. 我用肩扛着它走了好长一段路。

She walked *ten miles at a stretch through the jungle*. (度量状语、方式状语、处所状语)她在丛林里一口气走了 10 英里路。

比较:

It's *two miles* wide. 它有两英里宽。

You're *five minutes* late. (修饰形容词,放在前位)你迟到了 5 分钟。

We beat their team by *five points in the final*. (修饰动词,放在动词及其宾语后面)在决赛中,我们以 5 分之差胜了他们队。

He is well-known *in town to every schoolboy*. (处所状语、方面状语)城里每个男学生都熟识他。

They've succeeded *in inventing the new medicine in their lab by distilling that solution*. (方面状语、处所状语、方式状语)他们在试验室里,通过蒸馏那种溶液,成功地发明了这一新药。

Here's a prescription for some medicine. Take it *at home with hot water three times a day*. (处所状语、方式状语、频度状语)拿这个药方去取药,回家一天三次用温水服下。

比较:

He *seldom* goes there *on foot*. (频度副词状语放在前位)他很少步行去那儿。

在特别强调这些状语所表示的特征时,也可以把该状语置于句子最前面:

To me this seemed silly. (LDCE) (方面)在我看来这很愚蠢。

A long way this goes towards solving the problem. (度量)这样做,大大推动了问题的解决。

For three years she lived quietly in the cottage. (持续)她在这所小房子里安静地生活了 3 年。

With these words he dismissed his officers. (方式)他用这几句话

就将他的几位高级职员解雇了。

On top of the mountain we ran into snow. (处所)在山顶上,我们遇到了大雪。

5.7 “外位”原因/目的/结果等类状语和时间状语

原因状语、目的状语、结果状语及时间状语(包括时间副词、表示时间的词组和短语),通常放在句子最后或最前,可统称外位状语:

We won't be able to settle the question tonight (within this week) *because of his absence*. (时间状语、原因状语)因为他的缺席,今晚(本周之内)我们解决不了这个问题。

Yesterday they went to the countryside *to help with the autumn harvest*. (时间状语、目的状语)昨天他们去农村帮助秋收。

In order to take some exercises before classes, he usually gets to the school very early. (目的状语、时间状语)为了课前锻炼,他通常很早来到学校。

But *yesterday because of the rain*, he didn't attend school *in time*. (时间状语、原因状语、时间状语)但昨天,由于下雨,他没有按时到校。

He awoke *the next morning to find himself lying in a strange bed*. (时间状语、结果状语)第二天早上他醒来,发现自己躺在一张陌生的床上。

To our utter surprise, he has been deceiving us *all these ten years*. (结果状语、时间状语)使我们大吃一惊的是,这十年来他一直在欺骗我们。

条件状语、让步状语多由从句担任,但也有少数短语状语表示条件、让步,它们也属于外位状语:

In case of my absence, somebody else will take my place. (条件状

语 in case of my absence 也可以放在句末)万一我不到,别人就会代替我。

Even in that case, he might have sent a letter of excuse at any rate. (让步状语)即使在那种情况下,无论如何他本来可以送去一封表示抱歉的信。

状语位置小结

动/表前位状语、后位状语、外位状语表(复合结构、独立结构状语及状语从句不在其内;前位/后位/外位各种状语的编号0-12可供前后分类对照)。

(句前外位状语)	主语	助动词、情态动词	谓 语 实 意 动 词 (可带宾语)	后位状语 副词或 短语	句后外位 状语 [短语]
	主语	联系动词			
		动/表前位状语 (某些惯用副词, 少数惯用短语)			
		0.时间(何时) 1.持续 2.频度 3.度量(修饰表语)		1.持续 2.频度 3.度量(修饰动词)	0.时间
		4.方式 5.方面(修饰表语) (可前可后者,后置时语气较重)		4.方式 5.方面 6.处所	7.原因 8.条件 9.让步
		12.语气			10.结果 11.目的 12.语气

语气状语,由惯用短语或惯用短句表示者,通常放在句子最前或最后(较少插在句子中),基本上也属于外位状语:

You are new around here, *no doubtly / I'm sure / I believe*. 你是新来的,毫无疑问/我相信。

He is my best friend, my second self, *so to speak / as it were / you may say so*. 他是我最好的朋友,(你)可以说,(他)和我心心相印。

(持续,即时间量;频度,某一时间内运动状态的重复量;条件、让步,即设定或排除的原因;目的,即意向中的结果。)

5.8 为均衡、沉稳而改变通常语序

不过,常常为了使句子均衡、沉稳或为了强调某种状语而改变它们的通常位置:

You could question him *at any time* on any subject. (时间、方面) 你可以在任何时候向他提出任何问题。

Patrice Lumumba was born *in 1926 in Lulubourg in the Conga*. (时间、处所) 帕特里斯·卢蒙巴 1926 年生于刚果的卢卢阿布尔城。

I described *for them in details* our voyage across the Pacific and all the islands we had visited. (目的状语、方式状语,其后为较长宾语) 我向他们详细讲述了我们越过太平洋和游览所有岛屿的旅行。

方面状语,处所状语等后位状语常被提到句首,与句末较长的表语、宾语、后位或外位状语相平衡:

To his teachers, Edison wasn't a bright boy and wasn't worth teaching at all. (方面状语在前,与句后较长表语相平衡) 在他的老师看来,爱迪生不是个聪明的孩子,根本不值得教。

For Humboldt, the electric eels rise a welter of questions: "Why didn't the creature electrocute itself? ..." (方面状语) 对于宏

保,电鳗引发了一连串的问题:“为什么这种动物不电它自己呢? …”

At San Fernando, a Spaniard, Don Nicolas Sotto, joined Humboldt's party. (处所状语)在圣·弗南多,宏保的一伙中加入了一位西班牙人,唐尼古拉斯·索托。

In the east the full moon was rising **in its entire splendor and glory**. (处所状语在前,与句后较长方式状语相平衡)在东方,一轮满月正在十分光艳、壮观地冉冉升起。

持续状语、方式状语、方面状语、处所状语等后位状语,也常被置于句首或句子最后,取得较强调的意味:

For a lot time we just lay on the beach. (持续状语)大部分时间我们只是在沙滩上躺着。

She died **in a moment without pain**. (强调的方式状语在时间状语后)她很快地、毫无痛苦地死了。

To get to know the heart that beat within Marx the scholar, you had to see him **on Sunday evenings in the society of his friends**. (强调的处所状语在时间状语后)为了了解学者马克思体内跳动的那颗心,你必须在星期天晚上当他在朋友们中间时来看望他。

In our hands we have the future of mankind. (处所状语放在句首,强调力量仅次于句末)人类的前途掌握在我们手中。

For her, it was all over. **As for him**, he was thinking he must be at the office at ten. (方面状语放在句首在两句中都得到强调,又成对比)对于她,一切都结束了。至于他,他正在考虑他必须在十点钟到办公室上班。

同“为强调而提前”相似的,是为承接将某后位成分提到句首。(为沉稳、强调、承接改变常规不都形成倒装)

A: Father, you promised.

甲:父亲,你许过诺。

B: Well, so I did. (LDCE)

乙:是的,我答应过。

(方式状语副词 so 指 promise, 为承接前句提至句首;主谓仍正装)

A: I went to the cinema.

甲:我去看电影了。

B: Oh, did you? So did I. (ALD).

乙:是吗?我也去了。

(为特别强调与对比,把 I 置句末,对应于 A 所说的另一个 I,形成主谓倒装)

倒装语序主要指主谓倒装;“部分倒装”指谓语复合形式中一个助动词、情态动词或联系动词提到主语前面。表语、宾语放在句首(主谓不颠倒或随之颠倒)也属倒装,因二者的正常位置在后(有些状语置句首而主谓不颠倒时不算倒装,因这些状语的正常位置就是可前可后)。倒装,正是为了“沉稳”、“强调”、“承接”:

Through the open window came the dull roar of the city, the hooting of motorcars, the more distant sound of the over-watchful planes, the din of the artillery cannonade. (为平衡或者说沉稳,较长主语置谓语后,状语提前)透过敞开的窗户,传进了城市单调乏味的喧闹声,汽车的喇叭声,远处常备不懈的飞机声,大炮的轰鸣声。

Tired enough they were. (为强调,表语置句首;代词主语不长,仍在联系动词前)他们够累的了。

Tired enough were the riders. (强调的表语提前,名词主语较长,置联系动词后,兼顾沉稳)骑马的人们够累的了。

Many sweet little appeals did Miss Sharp make to him about the dishes at dinner. (Tracey) (为强调,宾语置句首;加助动词

did 于主语前,属部分倒装)夏普小姐对于宴会要上的菜肴提出了许多亲切的小小要求。

比较:

Miss Sharp made/has made many sweet little appeals to him about the dishes at the dinner.

Many sweet little appeals has Miss Sharp made to him about the dishes at the dinner. (原谓语中的 has 提到主语前,帮助区分并联系宾语和主语。)

I had in mind a canoe, such as the natives made of the trunk of a great tree. **This** I not only thought possible, but easy. (为承接,指 canoe made of... 的宾语 This 置句首) 我想弄一个独木舟,就像当地人用大树树干做的独木舟。我认为这不仅是可能的,也很容易。

Yes, it's a nice garden. **In the middle of the garden** stands an old house. And **from its walls down to the water** grow great burdock-plants. (为承接, In the middle of the garden 和 from its walls down to the water 二处所状语置句首,其后较长主语置较短谓语后,兼顾沉稳) 是的,那花园很美。花园当中是所旧房子,从房子墙上直到水面长着茂盛的牛蒡子。

Never... have so many owed so much to so few. (Churchill) (为强调,状语 Never 置句首,句中的 have 提到主语前) 从来没有这么众多的人们要感念这样少许之人的重大功绩。

5.9 倒装主从复合句句首的 Not until 中的 Not 属于后边主句的谓语

下列二句句首的否定副词不属于相联状语(不属于 before 或 until yesterday),而属于谓语:

Never before have I met such a strange person. (LDCE) (相应正装句是 I have never met such a strange person before.) 以前, 我从没见过这样奇怪的人。

Not until yesterday did he change his mind. (GCE) (相应正装句是 He did not change his mind until yesterday.) 以分裂句强调状语时也要在前面带上 not:

It was *not until* yesterday that he changed his mind. 直到昨天, 他才改变主意(昨天以前一直未曾改变主意)。

如果 until 引导的是一个状语从句, 则句首 Not until 中的 Not 属于主句谓语:

Not until I have passed that examination, shall I be able to go out to parties. (Partridge) (相应正装句是 I shall not be able to go out to parties until I have passed that examination. 以分裂句强调该状语从句时也要在前面带上 not: It is *not until* I have passed that examination that I shall be able to go out to parties.) 直到我通过那考试后, 我才能出去参加聚会(那以前不能)。

下面一句中后一分句的主句有省略, 略去了主语 he 和谓语 did flee(剩 not 状语从句):

At sight of them the robber fled, but *not until* the count had received a mortal wound. (Irving) (意思是 but he did not flee until...; 该从句 until... 修饰主句的谓语 did not flee, 也就是说, not 属后一分句的主句谓语) 那强盗一见他们就跑, 但却是在让伯爵受了致命伤后才逃跑的(未给致命伤前还没跑)。

如主语、谓语不倒装, 则句首 not 等否定词就属于相联的状语:

Not even ten years ago you could see such a film. (CCEL) (意思近于 You could see such a film as recently as ten years ago.)

仅仅不到十年以前,你还能看得到这样的影片(不足十年前就可以看到)。

(*Even*) *With no* coaching he will pass the exam. (ib) (谓语表示肯定,句末可加反义问句 *won't he?*) (即使)没有任何辅导,他也会通过这次考试的。

仅在主语、谓语倒装(或部分倒装)时,句首 *not* 等否定词语才属于谓语,而不属于相联状语:

Not even ten years ago could you see such a film. (ib) (意思是 *You could not see such a film even ten years ago.*) 即使是十年以前,你已看不到这样的影片(不足十年前更看不到了)。

With no coaching will he pass the exam. (ib) (意思是 *Not with any coaching will he pass.* 相应正装句是 *He will not pass with any coaching.* 谓语表示否定, *with no...* 和 *Not with any...* 及最后所列三形式句末都可加反义问句 *will he?*) (即使)给他下多大功夫辅导,他也不会通过这次考试的。

5.10 语气状语的多语气意义

语气状语是表示说话人语气的一种特殊状语。句中成分一般都表示事物的运动、联系,属性、特征等客观情况。唯有情态动词与语气状语,表示说话人对客观情况的主观认识。情态动词表示可能与需要等常有趋向,而语气状语则表示说话者的更为广泛的主观看法,如下表所示。(详见 14.7)

语气状语表示的主观看法

肯定、否定	确实,可能	类同,转折	局限、超越	表达态度,理解感受
yes ever well all right	indeed certainly undoubtedly to be sure in fact	also either similarly likewise that's to say	just only right(就) not yet	I think, you see, naturally, of course, first of all, lastly, frankly, strange to say, luckily, unfortunately, personally, by the way, obviously, for example, honestly, in a word, to tell the truth, come to think of it, (do) you think
not no never hardly neither	perhaps maybe most probably possibly	however nevertheless otherwise after all	too (过) even more over what's more	

5.11 否定语气状语

英语否定代词 *no* 与否定语气副词 *no* 是来源不同、词义和用法都不相同的两个词。否定代词 *no* 意为 *not only*, 多用作定语, 如 *no one* 即 *not any one*。否定语气副词 *no* 意为 *not so*, 用来回答一般问句, 或对整个否定句加强语气。而在对句中个别词语加以否定时, 要用另一否定语气副词 *not*。在联系上文表示对个别词语的否定时, 可用否定连词 *nor*(意为 *and not*):

- { A: Won't you have another cake?
(will not have 中 *not* 修饰谓语)
甲: 你不再想来块蛋糕了吗?
B: No, not a bit. (*not* 修饰宾语)
乙: 不, 一点不要了。

One man could not lift it, *no, nor* half a dozen. (... and not half a dozen men could lift it. 前句中间 *nor* 为连词, 相当后一句中的 *and not*) 一个人不能提起它来。不能, 6 个也不能。

either 与 neither 既可用作代词担任名词性成分或定语,也可以用作语气副词:

If you don't go, I shall not either. (either 象 too 一样缀于句末,但用于否定句) 如果你不去,我同样也不去。(下面一句意思相同,而更简洁)

If you don't go, neither shall I. (neither 作为否定语气副词,总是用于主谓倒装句的句首) Just as I haven't good eyes, so neither has my son. (LDCE) (句中 so neither 的 so 是与 just as 相呼应的连词,不能用 so nor, 因 nor 本身是连词) 正如我一样,我儿子的眼睛也不好。

{ A: I don't like it.
甲: 我不喜欢这个。
B: Neither do I. (ALD) ("Nor do I." "No more do I.")
乙: 我也不喜欢。

neither...nor 连用作为复合连词,其用法与复合连词 either...or 相当。

5.12 各种语气状语修饰个别词语,或修饰谓语或全句

某些语气副词可以修饰句中任何词语(only, even 等),置于所修饰的词语前(但其中 too 不表“太”而表“也”时,缀于所修饰句子末后或个别词语后面)。更多的语气副词用来修饰谓语动词或表语,置于动词/表语前位。而大部分语气副词,语气短语作为修饰全句的语气状语,置于句首,或缀于句末:

All right, go right away. (All right 修饰全句,后一 right 修饰状语 away) 好,马上走。

Too many cooks spoil the broth. (Proverb) (Too 修饰定语 many) 厨师多,烧坏汤。

I, **too**, have been to Paris. (意思相当 I, as well as somebody else...; **too** 修饰主语) 我也去过巴黎。(像别人一样)

I have been to Paris **too**. (have been to Paris as well as to London and Berlin. 最后的 **too** 修饰带有状语的谓语) 我也去过巴黎。(像去过伦敦和柏林一样)

Paris is noisy and very crowded **too**. (修饰表语) 巴黎很喧嚣, 也很拥挤。

A: Were there many people at the meeting?

甲: 会上人多吗?

B: No, **hardly** anybody came. (**hardly** 修饰主语)

乙: 不多, 没几个人来。

He **hardly** ever goes to bed before eleven. (**hardly** 修饰谓语) 他很少 11 点以前上床睡觉。

Come to think of it, he has **already** been given what he needs. (**already** 修饰谓语) 想起来了, 他已经得到了他所需要的。

We can't go. To begin with, it's **too** cold. (**too** 修饰表语)
Secondly, we haven't got **enough** money. 我们不能去。首先, 天太冷。其次, 我们没有足够的钱。

To be sure, he works slowly, but he does a good job. 确实, 他工作速度慢, 但干得好。或 He works slowly, to be sure, but he does a good job. (修饰前一分句) 他工作速度慢, 确实, 但他干得好。

He works slowly, but he does a good job, **to be sure**. (修饰后一分句) 他工作速度慢, 但他干得好, 确实。或 He works slowly, but to be sure, he does a good job. (也修饰后一分句。) 他工作速度慢, 但是, 确实, 他干得好。

5.13 各种语气状语置于动表前位或宾语、状语之前

有些语气状语修饰全句或修饰谓语时,常被置于主语、谓语之间,或助动词、系词后边,实意动词、系词前面,因它们直接涉及谓语动词或表语:

Peter, *to be sure*, was not very diligent. 的确,彼得不是很勤快。
The museum, *indeed*, was already closed. 博物馆的确已经关了。
He was, *in fact*, powerfully built. (实意动词前) 事实上,他体格非常强壮。

The horse, *so to speak*, danced on his hind legs. 可以这么说,这匹马用后腿跳舞。

He is my best friend, *as it were*, my second self. (表语前) 他是我最好的朋友,他和我,好比说,真是心心相印。

但也有时这些语气状语用来修饰宾语或状语,置于该宾语或状语前,或者缀于其后:

The sunshine on the icy branches made, *as it were*, delicate lacy cobwebs from tree to tree. (DAI) (修饰后面的宾语) 阳光闪射在结满冰霜的树枝上,宛如张起丝绦般曼妙的蛛网,把棵棵树木都连成一片。

In many ways children live, *as it were*, in a different world from adults. (修饰后面的状语) 在许多方面,孩子们似乎生活在一个与大人不同的世界。

He was up to his neck, *so to speak*, in debt. (LDCE) (*so to speak*, 修饰其前状语 up to his neck, 比较 He was, *so to speak*, up to his neck in debt.) 可以这么说,他是负债累累。

(do) you think 之类的语气状语可插在问句中,前后不加逗号:

When *do you suppose* they'll be back? 你认为他们什么时候回来?

If animals can think, what *do you think* they think about?

(LDCE) 如果动物会思考,你认为他们思考什么?

比较:

What do you think of Jane's studying music? (you 是主语, do... think 是谓语)你对简学音乐有何看法?

Exercise 5

I. 用 not until..., 或 It was not until... 的适当形式填空, 并把句子译成汉语:

1. _____ the early years of the 19th century _____ man know what heat is.
2. I _____ reach the station _____ after the train had left.
3. He _____ understood the problem _____ she explained it.
4. _____ a baby kangaroo is four months old _____ it begins to live outside its mother's pouch.
5. _____ his third match in 1790 _____ he finally beat Humphries and became Champion of England. (用 It 开头)
6. _____ I had read your letter _____ I understood the true state of affairs. (用 It 开头)

II. 请回答什么叫语气状语? 并分别列举出 10 个副词语气状语, 10 个短语语气状语。

III. 说明标有序号的划线词语是哪一种状语(时间状语、处所状语、目的状语、比较状语、方面状语、语气状语等); 但有一处是从句, 说明它是哪种从句; 如果划线之处是语气状语, 指出它是否位于“动词、表语前位”, 即助动词后、实意动词之前, 或者联系动词后、表语之前:

Five score years ago(1), a great American, in whose symbolic shadow(2) we stand today, signed the Emancipation Proclamation. 一百年前一位伟大的美国人签署了解放黑奴宣言,我们就站在他的象征性塑像的影子里。

This momentous decree came as a great beacon of hope to millions of Negro slaves(3), who had been seared in the flames of withering injustice(4). 这一伟大宣言犹如雄伟的灯塔,给在摧残生命的屈辱火焰中遭受熬煎的千百万黑人奴隶,点燃了前方的希望。

It came as a joyous daybreak(5) to end the long night of their captivity(囚禁,6).

But one hundred years later, the Negro is still(7) not free.

One hundred years later(8), the life of the Negro is still(9) sadly crippled by the manacle of segregation and the chains of discrimination. 一百年后,在种族隔离的镣铐和种族歧视的枷锁下,黑人的生活仍然遭受着惨痛的肢解。

One hundred years later, the Negro lives on a lonely island of poverty in the midst of a vast ocean of material prosperity(10).

One hundred years later, the Negro is still(11) languishing(病困) in the corners of American society and finds himself an exile(发现自己是发配的罪犯) in his own land.

In a sense(12) we have come to our Nation's Capital to cash a check(把支票兑现,13).

When the architects of our great republic wrote the magnificent words of the Constitution and the Declaration of Independence(14), they were signing a promissory note to which every American was to fall heir. 当我们伟大共和国的缔造者们写下美国宪法与独立宣言时,他们就签署了一张期票,每一个美国人都是期票的继承人。

This note was a promise that all men, yes(15), black men as well

as white men, would be guaranteed to the inalienable rights of life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness(16). 这张支票作出承诺,所有的人,是的,无论白人或黑人,都将得到保证,保有生存、自由与追求幸福的不可剥夺的权利。

(Martin Luther King, *I Have a Dream*)

IV. 说明下面一段文字中标有序号的黑体词语所担任的状语类型(前位副词状语、后位副词状语,动词前位语气副词状语,表语前位语气副词状语,表语前位词组、短语状语,动词前位词组、短语状语、动宾后位副词状语、系表后位副词状语、动宾后位词组、短语状语,系表后位词组、短语状语、从句状语等)和其所修饰的成分(但注意个别黑体词语是定语):

The ever (1)-present war (指美国南北方的内战) **in the background** (2) lent a pleasant informality (不拘礼节) **to social relations**(3), an informality which older people viewed **with alarm** (4).

Mothers found strange men calling on their daughters, men who came **without letters of introduction**(5) and whose antecedents were unknown.

To their horror(6), mothers found their daughters holding hands **with these men**(7).

Mrs. Merriwether, who had **never**(8) kissed her husband **until after the wedding ceremony**(9), could **scarcely**(10) believe her eyes **when she caught Maybelle kissing the little Zouave**(南方义勇军士兵)(11), René Picard, and her consternation (惊恐) was **even** (12) greater **when Maybelle refused to be ashamed**(13).

Even(14) the fact that René **immediately**(15) asked for her hand (向她求婚) did not improve matters.

Mrs. Merriwether felt that the South was heading(投奔) for a complete moral collapse(向着道德的完全沦丧)(16) and frequently(17) said so.

Other mothers concurred(同意) heartily(18) with her (19) and blamed it on the war.

(M. Mitchell, *Gone with the Wind*)

第六章 语序之二 为沉稳、强调、或承前而倒装

6.1 不要虎头蛇尾,移较长结构压在句末

“倒装”主要指主语、谓语顺序颠倒。其他不合基本句型正常语序的情况,如表语或宾语前移、后位状语前置、前位定语后置等,也属于倒装语序。

在研究直接、间接宾语及各种状语在句中的位置时,我们经常会遇到这样两种情况:为了使句子均衡、平稳,人们常把宾语、状语中较长的一种放在句子后面;为了特别强调某一状语,把它放在句子前面。

实际上,为了平稳或强调,不仅宾语、状语有改变通常位置的情况,句中所有成分,包括主语和谓语,都可以为平稳或强调而改变它们的通常语序。这里先讨论为平稳而倒装。

1) 较长的主语置于谓语之后

Here are *few books she left for you*. 这里是她留给你的几本书。

Then came *the memory of that wonderful time at the seaside*. 然后,浮现脑际的是海边那段美妙时光的回忆。

In the far distance was seen *the glittering surface of a lake surrounded by pine woods*. 远远的地方,可以见到松林环绕的一片湖水那波光闪烁的湖面。

使用引词 *it, there* 把主语置换到句子后面,也属于这种倒装语序:

It takes two *to make a quarrel*. 一个巴掌拍不响。

There appeared in the doorway *a man of middle height and sturdy build*. 门口出现的是个中等身材、体格茁壮的男子。

There's *many a slip between the cup and the lip*. (谚语) 杯将到口,常会失手。

2) 较长的宾语置于状语后

The girl answered correctly *all the questions put to her by the two teachers*. 那女孩正确地回答了两位老师给她提出的所有问题。(比较: She answered the questions correctly.)

Day after day the boys there received for dinner *nothing but very thin gruel with no bread*, but of course, *with plenty of water*. 日复一日,那里的孩子们吃饭时,没有面包,只有很稀的粥,当然,其中有很多水。

3) 复合宾语中较长的宾语置宾语补足语之后

On entering the house you will see standing in the middle *a big round table set with all kinds of good food*. 走进那所房子,你将看见放在中间的是一张大圆饭桌,桌上摆满各种好吃的东西。

使用引词 *it* 引导复合宾语,把较长宾语置换于宾语补足语之后,也属于这种倒装语序:

The fog made it difficult *to calculate the distance*. 大雾使得距离难以测定。

I suppose you think it odd *my having changed the room*. 我想,你会认为我换了房间,这很奇怪。

4) 较长的一串定语(形容词、分词等)置于所修饰的名词之后

The oddly brilliant flowers, *crimson, yellow and purple*, still blossomed in the taiga. 泰加针叶森林中奇妙多彩(绯红色的,黄色的,紫色的)的繁花仍在开放。

It was the third day he had been watching outside the house,

closed, shuttered, and abandoned. 第三天了,他一直在外边守望着那幢关门、闭窗、被遗弃了的房子。

但不很长、原本无需后置的形容词后置时,可看作状语:

A man, (appearing) *timid and hesitant*, approached the official.
(= *Timidly and hesitantly*, a man approached the official.)
一个人,(看样子)胆怯而犹疑地,走近那位官员。

5) 较长的短语定语可不紧接所修饰名词,而置于句子后面(此用法属沉稳性“分离”,并未倒置):

What a vivid picture this gives us *of society in England seven hundred years ago*! 这一作品给了我们一幅多么生动的、描绘 700 年前英国的图画啊!

There is a train which you can take leaving at ten *directly to Beijing*. 有一趟今天上午 10 点开车、直达北京的列车,你可乘坐。

比较:

There is a train leaving at ten which you can take if you like. 有一趟 10 点开的列车,如果你愿意可以坐这趟车。

6.2 打破正常顺序,把强调成分突出在句首

1) 强调的谓语或“联系动词 + 表语”置主语之前

英语正装句的重点一般在句末。I saw her there last week. (上周我见到她在那里。)可能是回答 When did you...? (你何时在那里见到她?) 而 I saw her last week right there. (上周我见她就在那里。)则可能是在回答 Where did you...? (上周你在哪里见到她?) 这样的问题。但打破常规,提到句首的词语也得到特殊的强调。

Sitting at the table are the two little girls. 坐在桌前的是两个小女孩。

Enclosed is a photo of mine recently taken here. 信内附有我最近在这儿照的一张照片。

One memorable visit was that to the Palace Museum yesterday. 昨天参观故宫博物院,真是一次值得纪念的参观活动。

但当“联系动词—表语”句的主语是代词时,强调表语用“表语 + 代词主语 + 联系动词”句型,因为代词主语较短而不置句末:

Terribly cold it certainly was. 的确太冷了。

Tired enough they were. (Tired enough were the riders. 名词主语较联系动词长而要置于句末)他们都相当累了。(都相当累了,那些骑马来的人们。)

2) 强调的宾语置主语、谓语前

主语、谓语可以不颠倒:

“No”, cried he, “**an answer** I must have.” “不行”,他喊道,“我必须得到一个答复”。

Those pictures you may put on the wall, but **this one** I'm going to send to my sister. 那些画,你可以挂在墙上,但这一张,我要寄给我姐姐。

随着强调的宾语置于句首,也可以把谓语中的助动词或情态动词 *will* 等提到主语前面(句首为否定宾语时必须这样,以表“部分倒装”)。如谓语正装时为单一形式,可把助动词 *do*(句首为否定宾语时必须把助动词 *do*)加在主语前面,以表明主、谓“部分倒装”:

Not a word **will** I tell him about it. 一个字儿我也不会告诉他的。

Many sweet little appeals **did** Miss Sharp make to him about the dishes at dinner. (比 Many appeals Miss Sharp made to him about the dishes. 的语气更强。)关于宴会的菜肴,夏普小姐对他提出了很多美妙的、小小的要求。

比较: What can I do for you? 我能为您做些什么?(售货员所说)

由此可见,疑问句倒装语序与强调倒装语序句型相同,都把助动词或情态动词提到主语前。

3) 强调的介词宾语置于主语、谓语之前;介词仍在谓语后面

Two things I cannot live *without* — Truth and Love. 两种东西,如果没有,我就不能生活——真理和爱。

Them I will live *for* and die *for*. 活着,我要为他们而活;死,我也将为他们而死。

4) 强调的状语置于主语、谓语之前,主语、谓语可以不颠倒:

Very, very slowly he began to walk. 很慢,很慢地,他迈步前行。

Now inland, now seaward, I followed the windings of the river.

时而折向内地一边,时而转向大海那方,随着河道的蜿蜒我顺流而下。

随着强调的状语置于句首,也常把谓语动词或助动词或情态动词提到主语前面。如谓语正装时为单一形式,在句首表抽象活动特征的状语后面可把助动词 do 加在主语前面,特别是在句首 Only, Hardly, Little, Seldom 等表示限制、否定的状语之后,必须把助动词 do 加于主语前,以表明主、谓“部分倒装”:

Off went the boat, and *off* went the small bright-haired boy. 开了,那条船;走了,那金色头发的小男孩。

但不说 * *Off* went he. 而应说 *Off* he went. (避免较短的人称代词在句末)

Up shot the rocket into the air. 一下子,火箭射上了高空。(句首表具体运动特征的副词状语后,不加助动词 do,而谓语的单一形式紧随副词,置主语前)

In vain / Bitterly / Often / Very rarely did I cry to myself. 我白白地/悲苦地/常常/很少暗自哭泣。

Only after / Not until everybody else was asleep did I cry to myself. 直到大家都睡着以后,我才暗自哭泣。

Never before had I dreamt of such happiness. 我从来也没梦想过这样的幸福。

In no other way can the matter be explained. 对于此事,以其他任何说法也不能解释。

比较:How do you like it? 你喜欢他吗? How many times did you try? 你试了几次?(疑问句倒装语序与强调倒装语序句型相同,都把助动词或情态动词置主语前。)

6.3 为与前述的内容相接,用关联词语牵引全句

一个句子的沉稳倒装与强调倒装可使句子本身结构更完好,表现力更强。而在多数句子组成的连贯语言中,还有一种承接倒装语序,它能增强句子与句子间的联系,丰富连续语言的表现力。

1) 表语承接上文可置句首

He was single when I first knew him. *And single* he has remained for these fifteen years. 我最初认识他时他是单身。这15年来他一直还是单身。

We are fond of sports. *So* are our children. 我们爱好运动。我们的孩子们有同样的爱好。

2) 宾语承接上文可置句首

Though the gardener longed to sweep them away, he could not reach them with his broom. *The rest of the garden* he swept bare enough. 园丁虽很想把它们扫走,但用他的扫帚够不着。花园其他各处,他已经扫得够干净的了。

3) 副词状语承接上文置于句首(有两种句型):

i. 副词状语 + 动词/系词/助动词/情态动词 + 主语(所指不同于上文主语所指事物,以强调主语的对比)

We speak French, and *so* does she. 我们讲法语,她也讲法语。

Hitler also was washed away by the storms of history. **So** were the Japanese imperialists. 希特勒被历史的风暴冲掉了。日本帝国主义者也是一样。

ii. 副词状语 + 主语(所指同于上文主语所指事物) + 动词/系词/助动词/情态动词(以强调情况是肯定的或更有发展)

I hoped to win and **so** I shall. 我希望能赢,我也必定会赢。

“Father, you promised!” “Well, **so** I did.” “父亲,你答应过的呀?” “哦,我是答应过的”。

比较连用的两种句型:

The monitor often reminds you that you should keep the bedroom clean, **so** you should; and **so** should everyone of your room-mates. 班长常常提醒你,要保持寝室清洁,这一点你真应该做到;而且你所有的同屋同学都应该做到。

4) 介词短语状语承接上文,置于句首(其后多用谓语、主语的倒装语序);

The door opened and **out of it** came a young woman. 房门开了,从门里出来一位青年女子。

The younger generation is to be regarded with respect. **To them** belongs the future. 后生可畏。未来是属于他们的。

Exercise 6

I. 将下列句中的副词移至句首(但 7 中是将作宾语的代词 **little** 前移),构成强调倒装:

1. I have never heard such beautiful music.
2. The stone fell down with a crash.
3. The heavy trucks rolled out.
4. She went off without waiting for my answer.

5. A bell rang, and the elevator went up to the fourteenth floor.
6. He had scarcely time to finish his dinner.
7. He knew little about the conditions of life in that remote region.

II. 说明下列倒装句中划线部分的句法功能:

1. Heavy, chill clouds lay on the summit of the surrounding mountains, and only now and then did the dying breeze rustle through the tops of the poplars around the house.
2. At the edge of the forest stood a little hut half covered with snow.
3. Great was our surprise when we found the room empty.
4. The door opened and out of it came a woman accompanied by two children.
5. Well do I remember the rambles of that spring tide.
6. In the middle of the garden stood an old summer house, and from its wall down to the water grew burdock-plants.
7. Cry I can't.
8. Gone are the days when the Japanese could do what they like to the Chinese people.

III. 改写下列句子,使句子结构沉稳:

1. A small inn, quite alone, by the side of the grey road, set between grey walls of stone, stood midway in the valley.
2. Whether we go together or separate doesn't matter much.
3. The most serious historical earthquake in the country, which killed about 300,000 people took place here.
4. They consider what is really possible impossible.
5. They saw the two workers who had designed the machine

repairing it.

6. The problem whether the temperature is high enough arises.

7. The workers discussed the plan for increasing production with great interest.

第二编

复合句的连接；连接代（副）
词、关系代（副）词；连词

第七章 关系错综的复合结构、分句及从句

7.1—7.2 并列分句与从句的不同用法

7.1 for 是并列连词; because 是主从连词

以下三个句子,前两句是主从复合句(complex sentence)第三句是并列复合句(compound sentence):

Since sharks are heavier than water, they must continuously swim or they will sink to the bottom. (TOEFL 考试, 1985. 5)

由于鲨鱼比水重, 所以它们必须不断地游, 才能不沉入海底。

He distrusted me, *because* I was new. (Cronin) 他不信任我, (这是) 因为我是新来的。(because 前的逗号可以没有, 那么它引述的部分与前关系较密切)

It must have rained in the night, *for* when I woke next morning I saw the grass wet. (Du Maurier) 头天夜里一定下雨了, (说起来) 因为第二天早上我醒来看见草是湿的。(for 前的逗号即停顿, 总是有的, for... 是事后说明。)

for 用在陈述过某种情况后, 再过渡到陈述另一种情况, 这后一情况可能是说话人补充的“原因”, 也可能是他追加的理由:

She must have gone out early, *for* she hadn't show up at breakfast. (Macaulay) (较少用 because 表示理由, 仅见于不算规范的口语中) 她一定是早出去了, (我这样判断的理由是) 因为她没来吃早饭。

Something fell in, *for/because* I heard a splash. 有东西掉进去了, (我这样判断的理由是) 因为我听见扑通一声。

前述情况与 *for* 所引述另一种情况之间的关系比较松散, 书面上常见二者中间用冒号或破折号:

We must start early: *for* we have a long way to go. (LDCE) 我们必须早点出发, (因为) 我们要走的路很远。

I decided to stop and have lunch — *for* I was feeling quite hungry. (Swan) 我决定停下来吃午饭 —— (因为) 我已经很饿了。

for 像 *and*、*but* 等其他并列连词一样也可以引导独立句:

But that question doesn't arise. (Snow) 可是那个问题没有出现。

The angles are equal. *For* ABC is isosceles. 两角相等。因为三角形 ABC 是等腰的。(because, as 等从属连词则不能引导独立句, 省略句是另一回事)。

作为并列连词的 *for* (像其他并列连词一样), 不可以和另外一个并列连词 —— 如 *and* —— 连用, 而主从连词 *because* 却可以和并列连词 *and* 连用: He wouldn't do it — *and* (all) *because* I didn't ask him in person. (GCE) 这事他不肯办 —— (全都) 因为我没有亲自请求他办理。

for 所引导的后一并列分句 (coordinate clause) 不能移到该复合句前, 它所连接的是个并列复合句。而 *because*、*as*、*since* 所引导的从句却可以任意置于主从复合句前部或后部 —— 只是因为句子陈述的重点多在句末, 所以着重指明听话人未知原因的 *because* 从句多居后面; 而语气较轻、仅提及听话人已知原因的 *as/since* 从句才多居前位:

I caught a cold, *for* I had been walking around in the rain. (中间总有停顿, 书面加逗号) 我感冒了, 因为我在雨中走了一阵子。

As / Since he is a qualified doctor, I trust his advice on medical matters. (或 I trust his advice on medical matters *as/since* he....从句在后,中间可无停顿、无逗号; *since* 为较正式语)因为他是一名合格的医生,所以在医疗上我接受他的建议。

Just **because** they make more money than I do, they think they're so superior. (Lewis) 他们认为他们如此优越,只是因为他们比我赚钱多。(just because...是句中次重点,不可改作 just as/since...。They think they're...是句子重点,一般重点在后)回答 why? 既不能用 *as/since*, 也不能用“随后补充”的 *for*:

“Why didn't you ask me then?” — “(I didn't) **Because** you were too busy then.” (此处为省略句)“你当时怎么不问我呢?”
“(我没问你) 因为你当时太忙了。”

Do you know why I am leaving? I'm leaving **because** I'm FED UP! (Swan) 你知道我为什么要离开吗? 我要离开因为我厌烦了。

有些语法书讲 *for* 介于并列连词与从属连词之间;多数语法学家还讲它是并列连词,所引述的是并列分句;只有少数人认为 *for* 是从属连词,所引导的是从句。

我们认为, *for* 在历史上虽然也曾被用作从属连词: **For** the time shall not seem tedious, I'll tell you what befell me. (Shakespeare) 为了这段时间不会觉得烦闷,我来对你讲讲我碰到的事。但在现代英语中,由于它与 *because* 等用法大不相同,最好确认它为并列连词:

	从属连词引导从句		并列连词引导并列从句
	as/since...	because...	for...
主要意义	语气轻轻地提及原因(多属已知原因)	着重指明原因(多属听话人未知原因); 口语中可指理由	事后补充原因或追述理由
在复合句中的位置	或在主从复合句前部, 或在后部(because在非规范口语中,指理由时,要在主句后)		只能在并列复合句后部
与主句或另一分句的联系	联系紧密(在主句后时,中间可无停顿、不加逗号)		联系松散,中间有停顿(加逗号,或冒号、破折号)
能否分出去成为独立句	不能		能
能否与(另一)并列连词连用	能		不能

注:在非规范口语中,指理由的 *because* (代替 *for*) 不可放在主从复合句前部,如: The workers didn't stay in the workshop, *because* I didn't see them. 不可改作 *Because* I didn't see them, they didn't stay in the workshop. 规范说法用 *for*: They didn't stay there, *for* I didn't see them.

7.2 *so* 可为并列连词;*so that* 仅为主从连词

从属连词 *so that* 与可起连接作用的语气副词 *so* 之间可作与上节比较相似的对比:

	从属连词引导从句	连接性语气副词引导并列分句
	so that...	so...
主要意义	表示目的或结果(目的即希望达到的可能的结果)	引述相随发生的另一情况,包括目的、结果及其他相随情况
在复合句中的位置	或在主从复合句前部,或在后部(so that...指结果时要在主句后)	只能在并列复合句后部
与主句或另一分句的联系	联系紧密(表目的从句在主句后时,中间多不加逗号;主句与表结果从句间多加逗号,但语意联系紧密,句子重点常在从句所述的结果)	联系松散,中间一般加逗号
能否分出去成为独立句	不能	能
能否与并列连词连用	表目的从句可与并列连词连用;表结果从句不能与并列连词连用	能

so that...与 so...表示目的时,前者是主从复合句的重点,后者可能是补充说明:

He looked down *so that* she shouldn't see his eyes. (Maugham)
 (目的从句中多有表示可能的情态动词 may/might/should 等)他往下看,为的是她不会看到他的眼睛。

We were now lying flat, *so that* he might not see us. (Devies) 我们现在平躺着,这样他就不会看见我们。

He wore a mask *so that* no one should recognize him. 他带着面罩,(这样)没有人会认出他。

It occurred to me that you were the man to advise me, *so* I have hurried to you now. 我突然想起你会给我以指导,(这样)我现在赶紧来找你了。(用 so...表目的,并列二分句间可加

「 逗号)

so that...表示结果,也是主从复合句的重点,而 so...表示的结果可为补充陈述: My pencil fell under my desk, **so that/so** I couldn't see it. (DAI) 我的铅笔掉到桌子底下了,(结果)我看不到它。/我的铅笔掉到桌子底下了,于是我看不到它。(虽然用 so 比较普遍,但这个 so,既可看作是 so that 之略,又可看作是 and so 之略。GCE, pp. 754, 795)

歧义句应该避免: He spoke clearly **so that** they could understand him. (目的?): 他说得说清楚,好让他们能听明白。(句中 could 应改为 may,或将 so 改为 in order)。(结果?): 他说的话很清楚,他们都能听明白。(句中 could 应改为 are able to)。

so...不只能表示目的、结果,还常表示相随发生的各种情况: I had a headache, **so** I went to bed. (LDCE) 我头疼,就上床睡下了。Her birthday is near, **so** I must buy her a present. (Alexander) 她快过生日了,因而我必须给她买件礼物。

仅表目的的 so that...可放在主句前: **So that** he could buy a car, he saved a lot of money. (GCE) 为了买一辆小汽车,他存了很多钱。**So that** everyone could/should/would hear the announcement, we turned the radio up to the maximum volume. (Close) 为了让大家都听见这一通告,我们把收音机调到最大音量。

仅表目的的 so that...可与并列连词 and 连用: He saved money **so that** he could buy a house **and so that** he would have enough for his old age. (GCE) 他存下钱以便买一所房子,以便老年时钱能够用。

so...不仅可与并列连词 and 连用,而且可分出去成为独立句: **And so** I thought you wouldn't object if I changed them. 于是,我想如果我换掉他们,你不会反对。**So you're back again!** (LDCE) 原来你又回来了! He is fifteen years younger than me. **So what if he is?** (非正式语)他比我年轻 15 岁。那又怎么样呢?

仅用 *that* 表示目的或结果的用法见 11.8, 12.1; *so* + 形容词/副词 + *that* 表示结果的用法见 11.10。

7.3—7.5 逻辑上与语法上的主谓关系

7.3 *for* 等引导的不定式复合结构与从句

下面二句中,第一句里的 *so that* 为连词,第二句里的 *for* 为介词:

I stood aside *so that* she might enter.

I stood aside *for* her to enter. (Hornby) 我站到一旁以便她能进来。

her to enter 是 *for* 的介词宾语(复合宾语),因此代词 *her* 采取宾格形式。应该说,*for her to enter* 不是一个句子,不是从句,也不是并列分句;一般语法书讲这种在逻辑上具备主谓关系的结构叫做“复合结构”(complex construction),其中 *her* 是逻辑主语或“准主语”(logical subject/quasi-subject),*to enter* 是其“准谓语”。

但也有些语法学家称这种结构为 *non-finite clauses* (“非限定分句”)。因为这种结构中的准谓语是动词非限定形式。而 *subordinate clauses* 在我们说叫从句,他们称之为“从属分句”(英语相同而汉译不同)。如在 GCE (A Grammar of Contemporary English, R. Quirk et al) 及大体沿用该书讲法的 CGEL (A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language, R. Quirk et al) 等一些著作中: *In order for the police to catch the culprits*, elaborate plans were made. (GCE) (逗号前 *In order for the police to catch...* 为复合结构作状语,他们称之为非限定分句,状语分句) 为了警察能捉到罪犯,官方制定了周密计划。

The best thing would be *for you to tell everybody*. (CGE, G. Leech et al)
(for...作表语) 你最好把事情告诉大家。

Here is a book *for you to read*. (Close) (for...作定语) 这儿有一本你可以看的书。

He hoped/arranged/planned *for John to come*. (GCE) (for...作宾语) 他希望/安排了/计划让约翰来。

It's natural *for them to be together*. (CGEL) (for...作主语, 后置) 他们常在一起是很自然的。

It is important *for there to be a fire-escape*. (Swan) (引词 There 因居准主语地位, 习惯上作了 for 的介词宾语; 句中 for... 作主语, 全句相当带主语从句的 It's important that there should be a fire-escape.) 要设一个火警安全出口, 这一点很重要。

GCE 说上列这类有“主语”(指逻辑主语)的不定式“分句”前的 for “is perhaps acting more as a conjunction, or clause introducer, than a preposition.” (p. 739) (“可能更大程度上是作为连词或分句连接语, 而不是作为介词”), 实际上未能确认 for 不是介词。

该书讲 with 也引导“不定式分句”(p. 763), 又说 with 引导的是“类似分句的补语”(P. 328, quasi-clause complements), 不同于介词短语, 可看作“非限定分句”(说 with 不是介词, 而作为连词): *With so many essays to write*, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you. (p. 328)(我们讲句中 With... 为复合结构, 作状语) 因有那么多文章要写, 我怀疑我是否还有时间去看望你。

较后出版的 CGEL 也说(大意):“有主语的不定式分句前面要加 for”(原文本 p. 1061)。还说:“加了 subordinator (从属连词) with 或 without 的非限定分句可表条件关系(原文本 p. 1090)”。

对也能引导所谓“非限定分句”的 of, 他们没提到它不是介词。比较:

The idea is *for us to meet on Thursday*. (GCE) 我们计划星期四

见面。

For Roberts to say such a thing is nonsense. It is foolish/wicked/clever/kind/sensible *of him to meet her again*. (Close) 如果罗伯茨说这种话,那真是一派胡言。他还要和她见面,这样太蠢了/太坏了/很聪明/很好/很合适。

It is splendid *of him to wait* (*He is splendid to wait*). (GCE) 他能等着,这太好了。

“形容词 + of + 人 + 不定式”结构用于评价人的主动行为(出于本意或由于其性能已做出或要做出者)是否合适、使人满意等。超出此范围仍用“for + 人或事物 + 不定式”结构(见 14.3):

Is it easy *for a rich widow to find a handsome husband?* (Hornby) (不属对行为适宜与否的评价)一个有钱的寡妇找个漂亮的丈夫就很容易吗?

It's difficult *for anyone to be angry with her*. 任何人都很难对她生气。

It would be best *for the secretary to write to him*. (Wood) (不是指出其本意所做的主动行为)最好由秘书给他写信。(相当: It would be best if the secretary were to write to him.)

所有上述“for/of/with + 逻辑主语 + 不定式”结构,我们都称之为介词引导的不定式复合结构。复合结构有时可与从句互换使用,但更多情况下,二者各有各的用途(见 14.2, 14.3)。

7.4 with 引导的分词复合结构与从句

上节所述能引导不定式复合结构的 with 还能引导分词复合结构。在下列句中 with 不是连词引导从句,而是介词引导复合结构;而 spread 一词不是从句谓语(不是动词过去式、不是限定形式),而是复合结构准谓语——动词非限定形式,过去分词:

Gideon, enjoying the fine sea breeze, stood on the Battery and watched the ship cross the bay *with sails spread*. (with... 为分词复合结构, 作状语, 修饰 cross) 吉迪安享受着从海上吹来的微风, 站在炮台上, 望着那艘船扬帆驶过海湾。

with 不仅能引导以现在分词、过去分词为准谓语的复合结构, 而且能引导以名词、形容词、副词、介词短语为准表语的复合结构:

With the tree growing/grown tall, we get more shade. 这棵树长大起来/已经长高了, 我们的荫凉也大了。

He died *with his daughter yet a schoolgirl*. (名词为准表语) 他的女儿还是个小学生时, 他就去世了。

With the tree now tall, we get more shade. (GCE) (形容词为准表语) 这棵树现在长高了, 我们这片荫凉也大了。

With John away, we've got more room. (LDGE) (副词为准表语) 约翰不在这, 我们的地方大点了。

With three people away ill, we'll have to close the office this afternoon. (Swan) 三个人因病不来, 下午我们只好关门不办公了。

With the whole meeting in uproar, the chairman abandoned the attempt to take a vote. (GCE) (介词短语为准表语) 整个会场一片喧嚣, 主席打消了表决的意图。

with 引导的复合结构多作状语, 有时也作定语:

We came in view of a factory *with its chimney smoking*. 我们望见一座烟囱在冒烟的工厂。

without 也能引导复合结构:

I wouldn't dare go home *without the job finished*. 活没干完, 我不敢回家。

Without a tear on her face, the girl watched him led away. 姑娘

脸上没有一滴眼泪,望着他被人带走了。

with 引导的复合结构以分词为准谓语句者,在 GCE、CGEL 等书中,也属于“非限定分句”(所谓非限定分句包括“不定式分句”与“分词分句”);而 with 引导的复合结构以名词、形容词、副词、介词短语为准表语者,在那些著作中被称之为“无动词分句”(verbless clauses)。

多数语法书讲的分句只是并列复合句中相互并列的较小句子中的一个。我们说,分句、从句与复合结构由于结构上不大相同,主要用途也因而各异,仅仅有时候一个复合结构会在意义上相当于一个分句或一个从句:

- { Three days later they started off, *without another word exchanged on the subject*. (复合结构,状语)
- { Three days later they started off, *but no other word was exchanged on the subject*. (并列分句)三天后他出发了,(但)就这个问题再没交换过意见。
- { We started on our way, *with the dog bounding in front of us*. (复合结构,状语)
- { We started on our way, *and the dog kept bounding in front of us*. (并列分句)我们出发了,那狗蹦蹦跳跳地跑在前面。
- { A small boy, *with his satchel trailing behind him*, ran past. (复合结构,状语)
- { A small boy, *who had his satchel trailing behind him*, ran past. (GCE)(定语从句)一个小男孩,书包拖在身后,跑了过去。

7.5 独立结构与从句

没有介词引导的分词复合结构一般称为分词独立结构 (Participial absolute constructions)(GCE 称之为 absolute clauses,“独

立分句”)。比较上节最后两组例句的第一句与下列二句:

We started on our way, *the dog bounding in front of us*.

A small boy, *his satchel trailing behind*, ran past.

分词独立结构都担任状语,有时意义上相当状语从句。分词独立结构中的准谓语可为现在分词、过去分词或分词的完成形式、被动形式:

The matter having been settled so amicably, I felt quite satisfied with the results. (CGE)(Since the matter had been...) 事情这么友好地解决了,我对此结果非常满意。

The job finished / This done, we went home straight away. (ib) (as soon as the job had been...) 这工作一结束,我们马上就回家了。

The question being settled, we went home. (As the question had been settled, ...) 问题解决了,我们就回家了。

既不用 with 引导,又不用联系动词 being 时,就形成没有动词的“独立结构”(absolute constructions)(GCE 称之为 verbless absolute clauses:“无动词独立分句”),其中的“准表语”可为名词、形容词、副词、介词短语等:

Seventy-three people had been drowned in the area, *many of them (being) children*. (GCE)(准表语为名词)73 人淹死在这一地区,其中好多是孩子。

Suddenly the creature reared up on its hind legs behind the bars, (with its) *teeth bared, jaws wide open*, and started to scratch. (准表语为过去分词、形容词)忽然在栏杆后,那动物用后腿高高站起身来,露出牙齿,张大嘴巴,开始抓挠起来。

The lecture (being) over, we left the hall. (准表语为副词)演讲结束了,我们就离开了礼堂。

She marched briskly up the slope, (with) *the blanket across her*

shoulder. (准表语为介词短语)毯子搭在肩上,她轻快地登上山坡。

Everybody at home, we sat down to dinner. (准表语为介词短语)
大家都在家,我们坐下来吃晚饭。

不用 *with* 时,语句更紧凑,有对应意味;而加用 *with* 时,则是强调复合结构对句子谓语的从属修饰关系,如上节中间一例句,可去掉其 *with*: (*With*) **The whole meeting in uproar**, the chairman abandoned the attempt to take a vote. (GCE)

用 *with* 而无 *being* 者,可去掉 *with* 另用 *being*, 亦在明确修饰关系:

With John away/John being away, we've got more room. 约翰不在这,我们的地方大点了。

在 1.3 中我们曾讨论 *with* 引导的不定式复合结构,用这种“*with* + 逻辑主语 + 不定式”结构时,如去掉 *with* 而修饰关系自明,则可以把 *with* 略去,比较下列三句中的复合结构状语:

Without a thing to worry about, she's often heard singing away over her work. 她无牵无挂,人们常听见她一面工作一面唱歌。

With so much to do within a week, I don't know if I'll have time to go out. 或 I don't know if I'll have time to go out — (*with*) so much to do within a week. (不用 *with*, 成为不定式独立结构)我不知道是否有时间出去 —— 一个星期里要干那么多活。

The plan was that the two parties should first reach an agreement on the basic principle, (*with*) **the details to be worked out later**. 计划是让双方先就基本原则达成协议,细节留待以后再行研究。

下面句中的不定式独立结构作同位语,不带 *with*:

I was quite prepared to see something tremendous happen, *the sun to dance or the earth to heave*. (Schibbye) 我满心预料着要发生非常事件——太阳跳起舞来,地面会起伏震荡。

7.6—7.8 不定式、分词短语等与相当的从句

7.6 不定式、分词短语与从句并非总能互换

比较下列二句前部的状语,复合结构状语和分词短语状语:

With so many essays to be written/to write, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you. (可相当于主从复合句 *As there are so many essays to be written/write*, I doubt if I...) 由于有那么多篇文章要写,我怀疑我是否还有时间去看望你。

Having so many essays to write, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you. (可相当于主从复合句 *As I have so many essays to write*, I doubt if I...) (GCE)

以句子主语为施动者而不带逻辑主语的不定式、分词及其短语,在换用从句表达相当意义时,主句和从句中的主语即是同一个人或同一事物:

{ Lorraine put on her glasses *to see better*.
{ Lorraine put on her glasses *so that she could see better*.
洛林戴上眼镜,以便(她自己)看得清楚些。

{ The royal prisoner, **allowed unusual privileges**, seemed to enjoy his captivity.

{ The royal prisoner, **since he was allowed unusual privileges**, seemed to enjoy his captivity. (CGE) 这王室的囚徒,由于(他)得到特许而享有种种异乎寻常的优待,看来很喜欢他被监禁的生活。

但并非所有使用不定式、分词短语的句子都能与使用从句的主从复合句互相替换。

例如上面第一组例句是不定式短语目的状语换成了目的从句,而与其结构相仿的不定式结果状语却不好换成相仿的结果从句:

{ Thelma looked up suddenly **to find a cat on the chair**. (Lilies)
希尔玛猛然抬头一看,发现椅子上有一只猫。

{ 不宜说 * Thelma looked up suddenly so that she found. . .

{ He stopped smoking **only to start again**. (ib) 他戒烟了,戒的结果只是重新开始抽烟。

{ 不能说 * He stopped smoking so that he only started again.

又如前面第二组互换例句是及物动词过去分词短语 **allowed unusual privilege** 换成了使用该动词的被动从句 **since he was allowed. . .**, 而不及物动词过去分词(如 **arrived**) 却不能用来替换使用该动词的主动从句(如 **which has arrived/who have arrived** 等)。

The train, **which has arrived at Platform One**, is from York.

(GCE, p. 878) 停到一号站台的列车是从约克来的——却不可说

* The train arrived at Platform One is from York.

Go and show the guests in **who have arrived already**. 去把已经到了的客人带进来。——却不可说

* Go and show the arrived guests in. (但 arrived 带副词可用于: The train **recently arrived at Platform One** is from York. Go and show the newly arrived guests in.)

不及物动词过去分词可单独作定语的为数不多: a *fallen* tree, the *risen* sun, a *retired* colonel, the *departed* guests, the *escaped* prisoner, *faded* colors, *vanished* civilizations 等。但有些已是转作形容词,甚至可用作名词: deceased partner, 已故同伙; the deceased 死者(一人或多人); the fallen 阵亡者(多人), the underprivileged 贫困阶层。

7.7 分词、形容词定语不仅后位者相当定语从句

除前位分词定语(如 a working/married man 中的 working 或 married)外,所有不带逻辑主语的不定式、分词及其短语担任状语和担任后位定语的,在 GCE 等书中都称为“没有主语的”“非限定分句”,以区别于有主语的“非限定分句”(我们所说的复合结构)。即使是单一的不定式, GCE 等也说它是非限定分句,理由是它能相当一个从句:

The next train *to arrive* (= that arrived) was from York. (p. 878) 随后到达的那趟列车是从约克来的。

单一的分词作状语, GCE 等也称之为“非限定分句”: *Defeated*, he slunk from the room. (= Since/When he was defeated, he...) (pp. 723, 724) 因为输了,他悄悄溜出这个房间。/ 当他输了的时候,他总是悄悄溜出这个房间。The manager approached us (,) *smiling*. (p. 763) (= ... as/and he was smiling.) 经理微笑着走近我们。

单个的分词后位定语(与形容词后位定语)在 GCE 等书中也被纳入“非限定分句”;只有分词前位定语(与普通形容词前位定语用法相仿)没有被算作“非限定分句”。但我们认为,单个的分词或形容词做定语时,无论它位于中心词之前或是之后,一般都应视为限定性定语。只有作补充性说明的从句叫非限制性定语从句。

Will the students *concerned* (= who are concerned) please write their names on this piece of paper. (Close, p. 96) 请有关的同学在这张纸上写下他们的名字。

The men *present* (= who were present) were his supporters. (GCE, p. 249) 在场的人都是他的支持者。

比较分词前位定语:

The *beginning* student should be given every encouragement. (GCE) 对初学者应该尽量给予鼓励。

再比较: The *wanted* man was last seen in Cambridge. (ib) 被通缉的犯人最后一次有人看到是在剑桥。

如果总是套用相当从句的词语都叫从句(“或分句”)的分析法,分词、形容词前位定语也会等于定语从句。我们认为,不定式、分词及其短语毕竟不同于从句,有时虽可互换,有时却不可互换。似乎不必绕个弯,把非限定形式及其短语说成“没有主语的”“非限定分句”。

7.8 形容词及其短语作状语并非皆为省略的从句

与分词作状语的用法相似,形容词也可以作状语,这种作状语的形容词有时是构成短语,有时只是单个形容词,而在 GCE 等书,该形容词短语或形容词被称为“无动词分句”;作状语的介词短语也被归为此种“无动词分句”:

Of humble parentage, he began his working life in a shoe factory. (p. 726) (由于)他出身卑微,他开始工作是在一家鞋厂。——这里所谓的“无动词分句”*Of humble parentage, ...* 相当于该书所说的“非限定分句”*Born of humble parents, ...*; 我们讲这是介词短语状语,相当于分词短语状语。

The manager approached us *full of apologies*. / *Full of apologies*, the manager approached us. (GCE pp. 763, 764) (被 GCE

等称为“无动词分句”的形容词短语状语)经理满脸歉意,走近我们。

John welcomed Margaret, *glad of her company*. 约翰很高兴玛格列特和他来到一起,对玛格列特表示欢迎。

Lawson, (though) *implacable*, contented himself with a glare of defiance. (GCE) 劳森,虽然是愤愤不平,却只是瞪了一眼,以示对抗。

His gaze traveled round, *irresolute*. (GCE)(单个形容词作状语) 他直盯盯的目光,犹豫不决地调转过来。

We can drink it *hot*. 我们可以趁热喝吧!

Nervous (ly), the man opened the letter. /The man, *nervous*, opened the letter. (GCE pp. 254, 255) 那人忐忑不安地拆开来信。——虽说形容词是表示那人本人当时的属性,而副词是表示那人拆信时动作的特征,但同是作状语,二者语义上差别无几(GCE: with little change of semantic force)。两种说法的意思都应是: The man was nervous when he opened the letter. 因为: Sadly, he roamed the streets. 意为 He was sad when he roamed the streets. (GCE)

GCE 未把这种用法中的副词 *sadly*, *nervously* 归为“无动词分句”(只讲它们是联系主语的状态),却把相似用法的形容词 *nervous* 等归为“无动词分句”了。

我们认为,形容词、介词及其短语这种状语用法既然很普遍,还是简单地说该词、该短语可作状语为好,不必说成是什么分句。虽然有时分词、形容词、介词短语前可加用连词,可看成是一个有所省略的状语从句,表示时间、条件等,但上面所举多数分词、形容词、介词短语状语都是不可加用连词,特别是那些表示原因、结果、行为方式的分词、形容词、介词短语状语。

下列句中分词、形容词、介词短语状语限于表示时间、条件或让步:

(*If*) *Cleared*, this site would be very valuable. (If it were to be

cleared, ...) 这个地方清理出来会很有价值的。

(*When*) *Enthusiastic*, they make good students. (When they are...) 他们热情高涨时,都是好学生。

(*While*) *At college*, he was a prominent member of the dramatic society. (While he was at college, ...) 他上大学时,是个很优秀的戏剧社成员。

(*Whether*) *Right or wrong*, he always comes worst in an argument because of his inability to speak coherently. 无论他是对或不对,只因说不清楚,和人争辩时总是一败涂地。

The two accidents, (*though*) *unnecessarily tragic*, seemed natural enough. 这两次事件,虽然本来不一定这样悲惨,看来却是发生得十分自然。

下列句中分词、形容词、介词短语状语表示原因、结果、方式或伴随情况,不可使用连词:

Angry with the girl for oversleeping, he went down to wake her up. (原因)姑娘睡过了,他很生气,就下去叫她。

He sat down beside Christina, *propping his feet up on the railing, feeling the warmth of the sun against his face, able to relax for the first time in days*. (方式,结果)他坐在克丽斯蒂娜身边,脚搭在栏杆上,感受着阳光照在脸上的温暖,多少天来这才得以松一口气。

Never at a loss for a word, he was an excellent speaker. (Close) (伴随情况)他总不会找不到适当词句,是个杰出的演说家。

Exercise 7

I. 选用 *because* 或 *for* 填空,完成下列句子:

1. He will succeed _____ he is in earnest.

2. The day breaks _____ the birds are singing.
3. _____ the weather was very hot, he carried the bed on to the roof of this house.
4. He must be at home _____ the light in his room is on.

II. 用 so 或 so that 选择填空, 完成下列句子:

1. Let's try and arrange _____ we can get there at one o'clock.
2. Nobody seemed about, _____ I went in.
3. She consented, _____ they left.
4. I'm going to make an early start _____ I won't get stuck in the traffic.

III. 辨认下面句中划线部分是复合结构还是独立结构, 并将其还原为相应的从句或分句:

1. The children walked home arm in arm, with the school finished.
2. The lab building being well on its way to completion, we began to think about the facilities to have for experiments.
3. The problem settled, they went back to their respective posts.
4. Here is the first volume, the second one to come out next month.
5. The flood having destroyed his hut, he and his family had to live in a cave.
6. With this large field leveled and a new irrigation channel controlling the volume of water, no such problem arose again.
7. Without anyone noticing, I slipped out of the room.
8. Tom didn't answer immediately, but meditated again, with his eyes fixed on the opposite wall. (汤姆没有马上回答, 而是又沉思起来, 他的眼睛盯着对面的墙壁。)

IV. 用分词、动名词或不定式短语,而不用从句,把以下的汉语译成英语:

1. 当他们走了一半路的时候,他们决定回来。
2. 因为我们有许多时间,所以我们不着急。
3. 我停下了脚步,因为雪很深不能再往前走了。
4. 我要把你的地址写下来,这样可以不致忘记。
5. 我买了这本书,好让你在火车里读一读它。
6. 我疲乏到这样程度,以致不能够继续赶路。
7. 一切都准备好后,我们就出发上路。
8. 下课了,我们可以出去散散步。

第八章 名词从句用法的关键在于关联词性质——从句用法关键之一

8.1—8.3 按“主/表/宾从句”或关联词性质分类

8.1 名词能担任的成分,名词从句都能担任

从句可按所任成分为主语/表语/宾语从句、定语从句、状语从句等。除定语从句修饰名词/代词、状语从句修饰动词/形容词等外,主语/表语/宾语等多种从句因相当于名词功能,统称名词从句(nominal/noun clauses)。

名词从句具有名词所有的基本句法功能,可担任主语、表语、直接宾语、间接宾语、宾语补语、介词宾语、同位语、呼语。比较担任这些成分的名词性词语(名词/代词,不定式/动名词短语)和名词从句:

主语:

The news / That is certainly a consolation. *That she is still alive* is a consolation. (It is a consolation *that she is still alive*.) 她还活着,这(消息)使人安慰。

The man was lying. *Whoever told you that* were lying. 不管是谁对你说的,那人都是在说假话。

表语:

The problem is *this*. The problem is *that I've caught my hand in a jar*. 问题是我的手卡在坛子里了。

You are not *the right person*. You are not *who I thought you were*. (GGE, p. 739) 你不是我原来想的那个人。

宾语:

She knows *the answer*. She knows *that you are the guilty one*.
她知道有罪的是你。

I want to see *the person* in charge of the investigation. 我要见负责调查工作的人。

I want to see *whoever deals with complaints*. 我要见任何一位处理申诉事项的人。

间接宾语:

She will send *me* a prize. She will send *whoever answers the question* a prize. 不论是谁回答问题,她都要给他一份奖品。

She threw me a radiant smile. 她容光焕发地向我微微一笑。

He gave *whoever came to the door* a winning smile. (GCE) 无论是谁来到门口,他都给人家一个可亲的笑脸。

宾语补语:

How could you do such a nasty thing and still call yourself *my friend*? 你干着这种下流勾当,怎能还说自己是我的朋友呢?

You can call me *what (ever) you like*. 你随便称呼我什么都可以。

同位语:

The idea *of spending the night on the mountain* came as a shock to the two old ladies. The idea *that they would spend the night on the mountain* came as a shock to the two old ladies. 她们将在山上过夜,一想到这一点,就使两位老太太大为震惊。

呼语:

You with the red hair, come out here. 那个红头发的,出来。

Whoever said that, come out here. 说这话的人,不管你是谁,出来。

8.2 作定语、状语的名词的性质与相应的定语从句、状语从句

但是,名词除担任主语、表语、宾语等名词性成分外,还有两种扩展用法——用作定语和状语,这两种功能却是名词从句所没有的(该二功能可分别由定语从句、状语从句担任)。

名词作定语时,实际已失去名词的种种基本性质,如失去数、格形式,及转取比较级形式或可由副词修饰(取得形容词性质):

an *apple* tree (不说 an apples' tree) 苹果树, a course of four *years* / a *four-year* course / a four years' course (NDEC) 四年的课程。

We objected on *pure business* ground. 我们反对此事,是单纯基于公事上的原因。

He told the story in *choice phrases*. 他以精选的词句讲述了这个故事。

She swore at him angrily, but he used even *choice phrases* in reply. (LDCE) 她愤怒地骂他,但他回敬的词句更妙。

比较定语从句: He borrowed a phrase (*that*) *the first speaker had just used*. 他借用了头一位发言人刚刚用过的话。

名词作状语,本应都带介词,由该介词短语作为状语,因介词常常惯于略去不用,才形成了名词或名词词组担任的状语。

不略介词的时间状语: We met *on the morning of 1st June* / *in the early morning of 15th September*. (GCE) 我们是6月1日上午/9月15日大清早见面的。(分别用 on, in) I left *before the strike*. 我是罢工前离开的。

比较状语从句: I left *before the votes were counted*. 我是在选票计数前离开的。

可略介词的时间状语: We met (*on*) *that day/the following day*. 我们就是在那一天 / 是第二天见面的。We met (*in*) *the January before last/the previous spring*. 我们是在前年一月 / 那以前的那个春天见面的。

紧挨现在或直属现在的日期惯于不带介词, 例如:

We met yesterday morning/last Sunday/last week/last month/
last spring/last year.

We'll meet tomorrow morning.

We'll meet next Sunday/month/year.

We haven't met this morning/week/month/spring/year.

I shall be seeing him this day week (= in a week's time). 下星期的今天, 我将要见到他。

This day week (= a week ago) we were in Wales. (Hornby) 上星期的今天, 我们还在威尔士。I go there every (other) day. (兼属时间状语和频度状语) 我每天都到那儿去(每隔一天去那儿一次)。

惯于不带介词的常用时间状语还有下列句中的斜体部分:

I saw her *one day last week/the other day/the day before yesterday/the day after her birthday*. (GCE)

I went there *one sunny June morning* (但 on a sunny June morning). (Hornby)

I'll go there *one day/someday/the day after tomorrow*.

但不带定语的周日(指本周某日)一般还带介词:

I suggest that we see him tomorrow evening or on Sunday at latest. 我建议咱们明天晚上或最迟星期日去看他。

仅在非正式说法(特别是美国口语)中可以说 I'll see you *Sunday*. *Sundays* we go into the country.

不可以省略介词的持续状语:

I haven't spoken to him *for three months*. (对非持续运动作的否定)
She didn't answer *for several minutes*. (LGCE) (对非持续运动的否定)

She spoke with him *for an hour*. (RHD) (用于兼有非持续与持续性质的动词)

For 600 years, the cross lay unnoticed. (For 居句首, 强调持续之久) 长达 600 年, 这十字架躺在那里, 无人理会。

He has been ill *since the end of May*. 他从 5 月底就一直闹病。

I'll be staying *until summer*. 我将一直呆在这里, 呆到夏天。

可略介词的持续状语: (*For*) *How long* are you staying? (问句 How long 前加 for 时一般表示强调)

紧接或接近表持续状态的动词或“be + 表语”之后可略 for:

I'm going to stay (*for*) *a long time / three months / the whole time* you are here.

We stayed there/have been here (*for*) *six weeks*.

He has been ill/was away from school (*for*) *four or five days*.

Wait here *a moment*. I guess I'll stop in the bar *a minute* before going up. (小西) 我想, 在往上去以前我要去酒吧间坐上一会儿。

比较:

We'll stop here (*for*) *a moment* (and see poor W). (Schibslbye)
(后有 and ... 时, 前面持续状语表示部分过程, 要用 for) 咱们要在这停留一会儿, (看望一下可怜的 W 先生)。

前有 all 或后有 round 的名词持续状语惯于不带介词:

The sun shines in our country *all the year (round) / the whole year round*. 在我国, 一年到头都有太阳照耀空中。

表示距离的 for... 只在紧接动词之后时可略:

They ran fast *for a mile or two*. (LDCE) 有一两英里, 他们跑得

很快。

Charles ran (for) a mile *in four minutes*. 查理四分钟跑了一英里。

The play ran (*for*) *more than two years*. (Hornby) (表持续全过程的 for... 紧接动词可略该介词) 这出话剧连续演了两年多。

They had to wait (for) *an hour and a quarter* to see G. (ib) 等了一小时零一刻钟才见到 G 先生。Ma waited (for) *a few moments* and finding Emma made no reply, turned towards the door. (ib) 妈妈等了一小会儿, 发现爱玛默不作声, 就转身向门口走去。

指全过程或全部长度多不用 for; 指部分过程或部分长度要用 for: Walter ran *the entire distance*. He ran/walked *for three miles*, then took a bus *for the rest of the trip*. (Schibsbye)

在完成时态句中多不用 for, 指已完成全程; 在进行时态句中多半用 for, 指所经为一定长度、部分长度(时、空间长度, 即持续、距离等)。

完成体句紧接或接近动词的 for 多略去(已尽全程):

I have waited *ages*. 我已等了太久了。

They had come/gone *a long way*. (Hornby) 他们走了很长的路。

So you've been here (*three*) *hours/days/weeks*. (EGS) 所以, 那来这里有(数)小时/天/星期了。

进行意义句中多不略 for (过程未必完结, 可能仍在延续):

We were kept waiting *for over half an hour*. (Hornby) 我们一直等了半个多小时了。

I've been coming to see you *for ages*. 好久了, 我总想来看你。

We'd been going to Paris *for years*. (but never went) (Palmer) 多年来我们总要去巴黎(总没去成)。

This show has been running *for six weeks*. 这出戏一直演了六个星期了。

一般现在时句也多不略 *for*(过程在延续):

The story runs *for eight pages*. The land frontiers run *for 15,000 miles*. 其陆地边界长 1 万 5 千英里。

其他介词用于表示各种长度的状语皆不可略:

The term runs *from April till July*. 学期是从 4 月到 7 月。

The book runs *to nearly 120 pages*. 这本书近 120 页。

Nothing did he see but the sand running *to a rim* against the sky.
除了连绵不断、直到天边的沙漠外,他什么也看不见。

He ran *as far as* the railway station. (*as far as* 可看作复合介词,不必说后一 *as* 为连词,其后为有省略的从句)

8.3 引导从句的 *what*, *where* 等可保留或失去疑问意义

从 8.1 前面的主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句等例句中已可看出,那样分类的各种名词从句在结构上有相通之处,正如下列两组例句中的主语/表语/宾语从句所示:

- { It may safely be assumed *that things will improve*. (NDEC) 情况将会好转,对此可以满有把握地设想。
- { The assumption is *that things will improve*. (CGE) 大家的设想是情况将会好转。
- { We can safely assume *that things will improve*. 我们可以满有把握地设想情况将会好转。

It is a complete mystery **what caused the accident**. (Close) 事故是由什么造成的, 这一点神秘莫测。

The question is **what caused the accident**. 问题在于是什么造成了这次事故。

No one knows **what caused the accident**. 没有一个人知道是什么造成了这次事故。

但在同是含有主语从句而结构相同的以下二句中, 两个 What 的意义和性质却截然不同:

(1) **What caused the accident** is a complete mystery. (...将上组第一句中的主语从句改置句前) (2) **What caused the accident** is a broken bottle. 前一句中的 What 仍是疑问意义(为疑问代词):“什么”造成了这一事故是神秘莫测的;后一句中的 What 却失去了疑问意义,为连接代词,这里 what = the thing which/that 或 that which, 后接定语从句:造成这一事故的东西原是一个破瓶子。

再比较下面前三句中的 where 与第四句中的 where 所具不同意义(分别为疑问副词、连接副词):

It's quite clear **where you are mistaken**. 你错在哪里,这是十分清楚的。

The point is **not where you aren't clear enough, but where you are mistaken**. 问题不是你哪里不够清楚,而是你错在哪里。

But I don't know **where I am mistaken**. 但我不知道我错在哪里。

That's **where you are mistaken**. (ALD) 这就是你的错误所在。

后一 where = the place where ..., 可相当“名词 + 定语从句”正是 what, where 等关联词所具有的不同性质使这些 Wh-形式引导的名词从句有着不同的意义与用法。

8.4—8.6 Wh-间接问句与问题从句

8.4 大多数 Wh-形式能够引导特殊问题从句

英语所有疑问词都以 Wh-开头或包含该二字母(How),因而被称为 Wh-forms。其中有名词、形容词功能的为疑问代词: who(m), whose, what, which; 有副词功能的为疑问副词: when, where, how, why; 另外属于 Wh-forms 的还有一个现已失去原疑问代词功能、只具连接功能的连词(虚词)whether: “是否”。

如果把一般问句和特殊问句作为从句,分别构成主从复合句,则两种主从复合句中可分别形成间接一般问句、间接特殊问句:

I don't know *whether I will be able to come*. (从句助动词不再置主语前)我不知道我是否能来。

Guess *what famous person said this*. (ALD)(此从句词序惯与问句相同)你猜,是哪位名人说的话。

I wonder *who he is*. (ib)(从句主语、系词不再倒装)我想知道他是谁。

She doesn't know *what you have done*. (从句助动词不再前置)她不知道你做了什么。

间接问句仍在提出疑问,属名词性问题从句(nominal question-clauses)的一种。名词性问题从句有的仅指已解决的问题:

We know *who they are and what they are*. 我们知道他们是谁,他们是干什么的。

I know *who you are talking to*. (非正式说法)

I know to *whom you are talking*. (正式说法,介词 to 属于从句)

所有疑问代词都能引导名词性问题从句,这些从句在主从复合句中能担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语以外的各种主要名词性成分:

主语从句:

It matters *who's coming / what you'll do*. 谁来/你要做什么,都至关重要。

表语从句:

This is *what my child wants*. 这是我的孩子想要的东西。

宾语从句:

I want to know *whom you like best*. (做动词宾语)我想知道你最喜欢谁。

保留宾语从句:

We were asked *who she was*. (CGE)他们问我们她是什么人?
(相应主动从句是 They asked us *who she was*. 原间接宾语 us 在变为被动句主句 we 时,原宾语从句保留于上面被动句中,成为“保留宾语从句”)

带补语宾语从句:

Did you make it clear *what the tape is about*? (it 为宾语从句引词,clear 为其补语)你弄清楚这磁带是什么内容吗?(关于什么的)

介词宾语从句:

I wondered *to whom he had addressed the letter*. 我奇怪,他把那封信写给谁了。He began to think *about just what he wanted to do*. (Hemingway) 他开始考虑他究竟该怎么办。

同位语从句:

The government hasn't solved the problem *who should be in charge of that*. 政府还没有解决谁应负责那工作的问题。

His yesterday question, *whose fault it was*, has not been ans-

ered. (后句所含为非限制性同位语,前后有停顿) 他昨天的问题,事情失败是谁的问题,还没得到回答。

因名词性问题从句只能是抽象问题,所以它们不能成为指具体人、具体事物的间接宾语从句、宾语补语从句和呼语从句。而 8.8 所属名词性关系从句则既能表示抽象事物,又能表示具体人或事物;名词性关系从句有名词的所有基本句法功能,包括担任间接宾语、宾语补语、和呼语的功能。

上面包括问题从句的主从复合句多属陈述句。如主从复合句为疑问句而包括问题从句为其宾语时,多数是主句位于整个宾语从句之前,如上面包含带补语宾语从句的 *Have you made it clear what the tape is about?* 及可以另举的 *Did you know who(m) I asked?* 等例,其所问焦点是 *Have/did you...* 之类,而回答是 *Yes / No, ...*。

但当主句动词是 *think, say* 等时,主句常插在被分成两半的问题从句中间:

Who do you think will speak? (Who 为从句主语) 你认为谁将讲话呢?

Who(m)/What/Which does she say you saw? (Whom 为从句宾语,口语中可用 Who)

Who(m) does he think I gave the money to in the shop at that time? With whom do they believe I discussed?

Who(m) do they believe I discussed with? Who will Susan assume opened the door? 苏珊将设想是谁开的门呢?

Which French director did he think had directed the film? 他认为的是哪个法国导演执导了那部电影呢?

这些问句所问焦点是 *Who/Whom/What/Which...* 之类,就不能指回答 *Yes/No*, 而要求回答出特殊的人、事物等等。

比较 *Do you know what is there?* 与 *What do you know is there?* 二句译成汉语“你知道那里有什么东西吗?”时,重读处应不同 ——

前句着重“知道”(或不知道),后句着重“(告诉我到底是)什么东西”。

以上例句讲 *what, which, who* 疑问代词都能引导特殊问题从句,以下例句进而讲述疑问副词引导特殊问题从句的情况。所有的疑问副词 *when, where, how, why* 也都能引导名词性问题从句,这些从句在主从复合句中也是担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语以外的各种主要名词性成分。

主语从句:

When he did it is a mystery. 他什么时候干了这件事是个谜。

Why didn't he show up is not clear. 他为什么没有露面,不清楚。

How shall I tell Mr Gruffydd is something beyond me. 我实在想不出个好办法,我将如何告诉格鲁菲德先生。

It doesn't matter *when you finish it*. 你什么时候完成不要紧。

表语从句:

The point is *how we go there*. 重要的是我们怎样去那儿。

The problem is *how she loves me*. 问题是她对我的感情如何。

宾语从句:

I wonder *when he did it*. 我不知道他什么时候做了此事。

The student still don't know *where they will do their field practice*. 学生们还不知道将去哪儿实习。

保留宾语从句:相当主动句是 I taught them where they could find the best berries. (LDCE) 原间接宾语 *them* 在变为被动句主语 *they* 时,原宾语从句保留下面被动句中,成为保留宾语。They were taught *where they could find the best berries*.

带补语宾语从句:

He has made it known *why the pingpong match has to be put off*. 他已经说明了这次乒乓球比赛为什么要延期举行。

介词宾语从句:

It depends on *when he did it*. (Alexander) 这取决于他什么时候做了此事。

They will be prized according to *how they finish their task*. 他们将根据各自任务完成的情况得到相应的重视。

同位语从句:

They have no idea *where they should be this afternoon*. 他们一点也不知道今天下午应该呆在什么地方。

The teacher's question, *why the solution should be like this*, has not yet been answered. (后句所含为非限制性同位语, 书面语中前后有逗号)

疑问副词本身是从句状语, 而所引导问题从句则是整个主从复合句中的各种名词性成分。

8.5 转为连词的 Wh-形式 *whether* 引导一般问题从句

whether 引导的名词性问题从句是一般问题从句, 即引述可由 Yes/No 回答的问题。一般问题从句在主从复合句中, 也是担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语以外的各种主要名词性成分。If, 在这方面与 *whether* 功能相似, 主要是引导宾语从句(多用于口语中), 表示不了解的情况, 而不是所临选择作法; *if* 引导主语从句、表语从句者较为少见。

主语从句:

Whether it will do us harm or good remains to be seen. (Galsworthy) 这对我们究竟是害还是利, 还有待分晓。

Whether he losses his soul in the process and how much his sister's witchcraft has to do with it is for the reader to decide. (RWRT) 他是否在这一过程丧失了灵魂, 以及他姐姐的魔法与此事有多大关系, 这却要由读者来判断了。

Whether he's coming (or not) is still uncertain. It's still uncertain **whether/if he's coming**. (EGS) 他是否会来还有待确定。

表语从句:

What I'm anxious to know is **whether/if the shops are open now**.
我急于知道的是商店是否现在开门。

The question is **whether or not the figures are accurate**. 问题是这些数字是否确切。

宾语从句:

(在口语中, ask, doubt, know, learn, say, see, tell, understand, wonder 等动词可接 **if** 宾语从句, 指情况不明) Do you know **if/whether the shops are open now**? I doubt/can't tell **if/whether it is him/he or not**. I wonder **if/whether she isn't mistaken**. (LDCE) 我想她错了。(半否定暗中带有“肯定意向”, 实际是肯定其错误) 我在怀疑她是不是错了。I'll see **if he wants to talk to you**. (see if 属惯用语) I'll see **if I can't get the job done today**. (Harper) (see if I can't 亦属惯用语) 我来试试看, 今天能不能把这件工作干完。She asked **whether Nick would arrive in time or whether he would be late**. (RWRT) (两个连用的 **whether** 不能由 **if** 代替)

保留宾语从句:

I wasn't asked **whether my wife was coming**. 没有人问我, 我的妻子来不来。

带补语宾语从句:

You haven't made it clear **whether financial help will be forthcoming**. (ib) 你还没有讲清, 财政援助是否将及时提供。

介词宾语从句:

I worry about **whether I hurt her feelings**. (LDCE) 我很担心是否我伤了她的感情。

I'm not interested in *whether you like the plan or not*. 我不管你
是不是喜欢这个计划。

Everything depends on *whether we have enough money*. 一切取
决于我们的钱够不够用。

同位语从句:

The question *whether it is right or wrong* depends. 这是对是错,
要根据具体情况。

If someone can do his or her job really well, then the question
(of) *whether they are male or female* is not important. 如果有
人能真正做好工作,那他们是男是女就无关紧要。

I'm in doubt *whether I ought to give this plan my approval*.
(ALD) 我犹豫不决,不知该不该同意这个计划。

8.6 连词 *whether* 与 *if* 的相通与不同

whether 在古英语中原属疑问代词,意思本是 *which of the two*,
现只用作连词,而保留疑问意义。*whether* 兼及两个方面,常和 *or not*
连用(紧接或不紧接)。在引导宾语从句时,特别是口语中,常用 *if*
代替 *whether*, *if* 着重一个方面,因而句中即使加 *or not* 也只能加在
后面,也不能紧接 *if*。

whether 已兼及正反两面,故从句为否定句时,一般不用
whether: I don't care *if it doesn't rain*. 天如果不下雨,我也不在意。
仅在否定句实属“肯定意向”时可用 *whether*:

I wonder *whether he doesn't think too much of himself*. (GCE)
我不知道他是不是把自己看得太了不起了(不应如此却很可能
如此)。

不用 *if*, 而只能用 *whether* 的情况较多:

1) 句首: *Whether your car breaks down or not* doesn't concern

me. / *Whether your car breaks down or not*, I don't care. 你的车坏不坏,与我无关/我并不在意。(比较: I don't care *if/whether your car breaks down.*)

2) 紧接 or not: I don't care *whether or not* your car breaks down. (特别加强语气)

3) 名词后作同位语从句: *The question whether* he should make a clean breast of his guilt troubled him. 他是否应该坦白交代他的罪行,这个问题苦恼着他。

4) 介词后作介词宾语从句: It all *depends on whether* he's coming or not. I haven't settled *the question (of) whether* I'll go back home. (Swan)

5) 不定式前(引导表疑问不定式短语): The decision *whether to see her* was mine alone. (LDCE) 是否去看她,当时完全由我自己决定。She doesn't know *whether to get married now*.

6) 表选择的主句后: I didn't know *whether I should laugh or not*. We discussed *whether we should close the shop*. (Swan) 二句意思是:自己要在“是否应该笑”、“是否应关店门”的正反两者中选择其一。比较不由自己选择的事可以用 if: He wants to know/He asked *if/whether he should carry my bag*. (Swan, 535)

在上述六种情况下,从句(或不定式短语)都是指“一件事”的正反两面。而当从句(或不定式短语)指出“两件事”时——不是说“是否...”,而是说“或是...或是...”,显然不用 if:

I didn't know *whether I should laugh or cry/whether to laugh or to cry*. (whether...or... 被称为复合连词)

We discussed the question (as to) *whether China will gain or lose by the war*. 我们讨论了中国对于这次战争的得失问题。
I wonder *whether we shall be in time for the last bus or whether we shall have to walk home*. (ALD) (shall be... shall have to

walk... 并列二宾语从句、重复 *whether* 及主语 *we* 时, 特别强调区分; 亦可略去后面此二词, 见《新英汉词典》)

whether 与 *if* 引导让步状语从句时, 区别较为明显: *whether* 与 *or* 连用, 指“即使会有这样、那样两种情况”, 而 *if* 仅指“即使会有某一情况”:

Whether we beat them *or* they beat us, the match will be enjoyable. (比较 *If* we beat them, *or even if* they beat us, ...)(CGE) 不管是我们打败他们, 还是他们打败我们, 这场比赛都会是很有意思的。

If he's poor, at least he's honest. 虽然他穷, 但至少他是诚实的。

Whether it be that he is unwilling to work, *or* that he has no need of working, he is, at all events, the most lazy dog I ever set eyes on. (《综合英汉大辞典》) 无论是他不愿意工作, 或者是他不需要工作, 无论如何, 他是我见过的最懒的懒虫。

8.7—8.9 Wh-名词性关系从句

8.7 what/which/Wh-ever 可相当“先行词 + 关系代词”

在名词性关系从句中, *what* 意为 the thing which/that (接定语从句) 或 that which. *what* 一身二任, 相当“主句中未提明的先行词 (antecedent) + 定语从句中的关系代词”。因而这一 *what* 称为连接代词, 如 Quality is *what* counts most. = Quality is that *which* counts most. (GCE) 质量是最关键的问题。

连接代词 *which* + 名词相当于 “that/those + 名词 + *which* /

that/who (接定语从句)”: You should vote for *which/whichever* candidate you think best. = You should vote *for that candidate whom* you think best. 你应投票选举你认为最好的候选人。

但连接代词 what/which 并非突然、无端失去疑问意义的。在某些关系从句中,其疑问意义可以保留,同时又在减弱,甚至可以趋于消失: It is not yet known what they did. — What did they do? We don't know that yet. — We don't know *the thing which/that they did*. He often told me *what he had learned at school*. ——他常常告诉我,他在学校学的是什么。——他常常对我讲他在学校里学的东西。

保留疑问意义的疑问代词用法与失去疑问意义的连接代词用法并存,有时会使从句中的 what 产生歧义。如: They asked me *what I didn't know*. 可理解为: 1) They asked me: “*What don't you know?*” 2) They asked me things *which/that I didn't know*. 歧义句应该避免。

what 作为从句主语时多接用单数动词谓语,但当它指复数事物时可接复数谓语:

What is needed is books.

What is needed are books. (is, are: 前单后复)

What are needed are books. (are, are: 前后皆复)(EGS) (但不说 * *What are needed* is books.)

Colonel Aref went about the country saying *what are always understood to be hair-raising things*. (Schibsbye) 阿列夫上校在国内各处走动,讲些总是被认为令人毛骨悚然的事情。

还有人认为这类 what 主从复合句中,前单后复是错误的,最好都用单数动词,其次都用复数动词: What worries him is the rumours. (RWRT) 使他烦恼的是那些谣言。What worry him are the rumours. (ib) “前后皆复”已不太好,更不能“前单后复”: * What

worries him are the rumours. (ib)

名词性关系从句中 *which* 所修饰的名词如果不提, *which* 即成为名词性成分。而主要担任名词性关系从句中各种名词性成分的 *what* 有时又用作关系从句中的定语:

The squirrels are feasting on *what walnuts the jays have left*. 松鼠把松鸦剩下的胡桃当美餐,正在享用。

He visits *what few friends he has*. (LDCE) 他常去访问他仅有的几个朋友。

I'll give you *what (little)/whatever* help I can. (EGS) 我将尽我所能,给你些帮助。

单独的 *who* 在现代英语中不用作连接代词来引导关系从句(不用来表示 *the person who*), 仅在谚语与个别作家文字中还保留它旧有的连接代词用法。而 *Wh-ever* 诸代词 *whoever*, *whatever*, *whichever* 都可作为连接代词引导名词性关系从句。

但不连写的 *what ever* 则是疑问代词(非连接代词),可引导问题从句(而非关系从句)。下列二句所含从句分属问题从句与关系从句: I asked him *what ever/what on earth* he was up to. 我问他,他究竟是想达到什么目的。You may ask him *whatever* (anything that) you don't understand. 任何你不懂的东西,你都可以问他。——句中的 *whatever* 也相当“先行词 + 关系代词 *that* (其后接定语从句)。” *whatever* 引导的从句在意义上包含了先行词,该从句在性质上相当名词,故称名词性关系从句(*nominal relative clauses*)。

8.8 失去疑问意义的 *what/which/Wh-ever* 引导名词性关系从句

除 *who* 仅在旧用法中可引导名词性关系从句外, *what*, *which* 与 *Wh-ever* 诸连接代词都可引导名词性关系从句,所引导从句在主

从复合句中担任包括间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语在内的所有名词性成分。

主语从句：

What / Whatever you did has been forgiven. 你所做的(一切)事(都)已得到宽恕。

What is true of Korean sculpture is even more true of Korean painting. 对于朝鲜雕刻是适宜的这种评价,对于朝鲜绘画尤为适宜。

Whichever you want is yours. *Whoever comes late* can't be admitted. 任何迟到者都不得入场。

谚语中 *who/whom* 引导主语从句(旧用法)：

Who chatters to you, will chatter of you. 对你议论人的,也会对人议论你。

Who fears to suffer, suffers from fear. 害怕吃苦的,苦就苦在害怕。

Who goes a-borrowing, goes a-sorrowing. 总是借账,总是够呛。

Who shows mercy to an enemy denies it(mercy) to himself. 对敌温情就是对己无情。

Whom the gods love die young. 天赋奇才常短命。

[当代作家偶借此旧用法: It crowded the small room, so that *who came and went* must circle and press about it. (Pearl Buck) 那东西占了大半个小屋,来去之人必须绕着挤过。]

表语从句：

He was *what Adam was when first made*. 亚当刚出世是什么样子,他就是那个样子。

Laputa is to Lilliput *what Alice in Wonderland is to surrealism*. (格列佛游记中的)飞行浮岛之于小人国,正如梦游仙境的爱丽斯之于超现实主义,(都是大不相同的)。

You're not *who I thought you were*. (旧用法) 你不是我原来设想的那个样子了。

宾语从句:

Do *what (ever) you like*. 你愿意怎么办就怎么办吧。

Take *whichever one(s) you want*. (EGS) 你想拿哪个(些)就拿哪个(些)。

Ask *whoever you meet*. (Schibsbye, 正式说法 Ask *whomever you meet*.)

Whom God would ruin, he first deprives of reason. (谚语; 比较 God first deprives the person whom he would ruin of reason.) 上帝要把谁毁掉, 先让他丧失理性。

保留宾语从句:

You'll be given *whatever you need*. 无论你需要什么, 都将给你。(相应主动句是 We'll give you *whatever you need*. 原间接宾语 *you* 在变为被动句主语时, 原宾语从句保留于上面被动句中, 成为“保留宾语从句”)

间接宾语从句:

I gave *whoever it was a drink*. (CGE) 不管谁来, 我都给他一杯酒喝。

He told *whoever would listen his adventure story*. (He told his adventure story to *whoever would listen*.) 不论是谁愿意听, 他都对人家讲述他的冒险故事。

带补语宾语从句:

Choose *whoever is the wisest* (as) your leader. 谁最英明就选谁为你们的领袖。

We shouldn't regard as impossible *what is really possible*. 我们不应该把实际可能的事当作是不可能的。

宾语补语从句:

I don't know *what it is*. (名词性问题从句)

Call it *what you will*. (名词性关系从句) 我不知道这是什么。

你想叫它什么就叫它什么吧。(称之为你给它的名字)

It's Andrew who made the group *what it is*. 正是安德鲁使这个团体发展到今天这样。

You may consider our deeds *whatever (crime) you can imagine*.

你可以随便设想,我们的所作所为是何种行径(罪行)。

介词宾语从句:

The actual sum is no greater than *what Mr. Eisenhower asked for*. (从句中 *what* 为 *for* 的介词宾语,而整个复合句中 *what* 所引导从句为介词 *than* 的宾语)实际数量正如艾森豪威尔先生所要求的,一点也不多。

He won more immediate support in the conference than (*what* 一般略) *might have been expected*. (Schibsbye) 在会议上,他赢得了超出意料的,更多人的当场支持。

We can assign the work to *whoever is reliable/to whomever we can trust*. 我们可以把这项工作交给任何可靠的人/我们信任的任何人。

Return the parcel to *whosoever address is on it*. 这邮包上写着谁的地址,就把邮包退到他那里去。

She will sit beside *whom she chooses*. (Liles) 她总是要坐在她自己挑选的人旁边。

同位语从句:

I gave the girl a big doll, *exactly what she longed to have*. 我给了那女孩一个大洋娃娃,这正是她盼望得到的。

Only his wife knew his secret, *why he was up to staying up all night*. 只有他的妻子知道他的秘密:他为什么整夜不睡。

呼语从句:

Whoever wants to stay here a little longer, please stand up. 谁想在这里再呆一会儿,请站起来。

8.9 失去疑问意义的 *when/where/why/how* 引导名词性关系从句

连接副词 *when, where, why, how* 引导名词性关系从句时,其意义分别是: *the time when...*, *the place where...* *the reason why...* 与 *the way that/in which...*。所引关系从句一般不能担任主从复合句中的间接宾语、宾语补语或呼语,因为这些从句一般不指具体人或具体事物。仅 *where* 所指较为具体,偶见所引名词性关系从句为复合句中的间接宾语:

He gave *where the island had disappeared into the sea* a last, parting look. 他向那海岛消失在海面的地方投以最后的、告别的一瞥。

4个连接副词所引导名词性关系从句可在主从复合句中担任各种主要名词性成分。(连写于 *ever* 的三个连接副词 *whenever, wherever* 与 *however* 却不像 *whatever* 等连接代词那样用于引导名词性关系从句,而仅用于引导状语从句、表示时间、处所、方式及让步,见下节)

主语从句:

Why (The reason why) he shot her isn't important. (LDCE) 他为什么开枪打死她/他开枪打死她的原因并不重要。

It is a mystery *how (the way in which) you are going to do it*. 你即将做这件事所采取的办法,是神秘莫测的。

表语从句:

Before breakfast is *when (the time when) I do my best work*. (CGE) 早饭前我干工作精力最充沛。

Home is *where your family and friends are*. 家是亲属与友人之

所在。

That's *where the shoe pinches*. 毛病就在这里。

Is that *why (the reason why/for which) you did it?*

This is *how (the way that/in which) you start the engine*. 你这样来启动发动机。

Tomorrow is *when it would be most convenient*. (GCE) 明天是最合适的时间。

宾语从句:

I remember *when (the time when) it happened*.

Show me *where (the place where) Shakespeare lived*. 领我看看莎士比亚住过的地方。

I'll never forget *how you sang and danced that night*. 我将永远忘不了那天晚上你唱歌、跳舞的情景。

保留宾语从句:

I was told *when (the time when) they were to leave*. 有人告诉他们出发的时间了。

They were shown *how (the way in which) it was done*. 有人指点给他们那工作的作法。比较相应主动句中的间接宾语和宾语从句: Someone showed them how (the way in which) it was done.

带补语宾语从句:

He has never made public *when and where they meet regularly*. 他从未公开说明他们经常会面的时间、地点。

Have you made it known *how you obviated a threatening danger to them all?* 你排除了威胁他们所有的人的危险,这事你告诉大家了吗?

介词宾语从句:

I'll wait till *when we meet again*. He lives ten miles from *where I'm living*. 他住在离我现在住的地方十英里处。

同位语从句:

Let us know your college address, *where you live during the term/in term time*. 告诉我们你在学院的地址,学期当中你住的地方。

At last I got to know her secret, *how she had won him back and why she had to*. 我终于知道了她的秘密:她是怎样重新赢得他的欢心的,以及她为什么必须这样做。

8.10—8.11 Wh-形式不只能引导名词从句

8.10 介词宾语从句前省略介词,转成 Wh-方面状语从句

担任状语不是名词的基本功能,作状语的名词及名词词组原是省略了所带的介词(见 8.2)。同样,名词从句本来也没有担任状语的功能,当我们读到语法所讲或见到复合句实例中“名词从句作状语”或“名词性状语从句”的时候,应理解这也是省略了介词的结果:

She was not aware (of) *how much her husband earned*. (Hornby)

她不知道她丈夫挣多少钱(状语从句修饰形容词)。

介词宾语从句属名词从句,当它在形容词后略去介词时,就成为修饰形容词的状语从句;当它在“及物动词+宾语”后略去介词时,就成为修饰该动宾短语的状语:

I can't make up my mind (*about*) *who (m) we should ask to speak first*. (EGS) 我下不了决心,不知应该首先请谁讲话。

(从句作状语,说明在哪方面下定决心)

介词宾语从句略去介词最常见的是在形容词后面,这就使原名词从句取得了超出名词性质的状语功能,因其表示形容词属性的相

关方面,可称方面状语从句(adverbial clause of respect):

I wasn't certain (*of*) *whose house I was in*. (GCE) 我弄不清我是在谁家里。

Do you feel sure about it? I'm not sure *whether I have a copy/where I left my copy/when I lost it/why he wants it*. (ALD)
你觉得确实没错吗? 我弄不清我有一份(本)没有/我那份(本)丢在哪儿了/什么时候丢的/他为什么要。

I was not aware (*of*) *how deeply he had felt the death of his mother*. (ib) 我不知道,他为他母亲的死感到多么悲痛。

Be careful (*about*) *what you do/where you go/how you carry it*.
你所作的事/到什么地方去/怎么拿它,要多加小心。

He's very fussy (*about*) *how his meals are cooked*. (Hornby) 他对他的饭菜做得怎么样,是很挑剔的。

He's doubtful (*about*) *whether he can afford it*. (ib) 他怀疑这一耗费自己能否承担。

略去介词的 Wh-状语从句一般为名词性问题从句,有的亦可理解为名词性关系从句:

I'm quite aware *how you must feel*. (LDCE) (I'm quite aware of the way that...)我完全理解你现在的心情。

但显然只属于名词性关系从句的 what (the thing which/that) ...前的 aware of/certain of 等却不能略去介词: It was several minutes before I was aware *of what was happening*. (Wood) 过了几分钟,我才理解正在发生的事。He was not aware *of what was going on around him*. (ib) Are you certain *of what* (the things that) *you say*? (ib) 对于你所说的情况,你确实了解吗?

Wh-介词宾语从句前介词的省略属于习惯搭配,很多情况下不能省略: I'm worried about *where she is*. (Swan) I was very upset *about what you did to me*. (ib) (二句中过去分词转成的形容词后、介

词宾语从句前, 不略介词)你对我干下的勾当让让我很伤心。

The police questioned me *about where I'd been*. (ib) (“及物动词 + 宾语”后)警察们盘问我曾到什么地方去。

I often think *about when (the time when) I was young*. (ib) (及物动词后)我常常回想我年轻的时候。

8.11 Wh-形式引导名词从句及其他从句综述

本节归纳一下上述 Wh-形式引导名词从句的用法, 并大略提及哪些 Wh-形式还能引导定语从句、状语从句, 以便联系、比较。

根据本章以上各节, 先把 Wh-名词从句所用关联词与从句的句法功能综合如下:

		引导 Wh-名词从句所用的关联词	从句在复合句中所担任指具体事物或抽象事物的成分	从句在复合句中所担任指具体事物(包括人)的成分
名词性问题从句	特殊问题从句	所有疑问代词、疑问副词	主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语、同位语(介词宾语从句前略介词形成状语从句)	(不能担任间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语)
	一般问题从句	连词 whether (if)		(不能担任间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语)
名词性关系从句	连接代词引导的关系从句	除 who 以外的连接代词 (what, which) 及 whoever, whatever, whichever	主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语、同位语(介词宾语从句前略介词形成状语从句)	能担任间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语
	连接副词引导的关系从句	when 等所有连接副词(而 whenever, wherever, however, 不能引导关系从句)	主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语、同位语(介词宾语从句前略介词形成状语从句)	(一般不能担任间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语)

Wh-形式除引导名词从句外,其中很多还分别能引导定语从句及状语从句。

其中能引导让步状语从句的 Wh-形式最多,包括 *whether*(...*or*...)与所有 Wh-形式加-*ever* 构成的复合连接代词和复合连接副词:

Whether they arrive tonight, tomorrow or whenever, they'll be welcome. 不论他们今天晚上来、明天来或者任何时候来,我们总是欢迎。

We'll go out ***whatever the weather*** (is like). (EGS)不管天气怎么样,我们也要出去。

I won't let him in, ***whoever he is***. 无论他是谁,我也不让进。

You must leave your membership card here, ***whichever book you borrow***. 无论你借哪本书,都得把会员证留在这儿。

Whenever it happened, it was certainly not yesterday. 不管事情是什么时候发生的,肯定不是昨天。

Wherever you met her, it was not in my house. 你是在哪儿碰见她都有可能,但肯定不是在我家里。

However experienced you may be, driving fast is always dangerous. 无论你多么有经验,开快车总是很危险的。

whenever, *wherever* 与 *however* 还能像 *when*, *where*, *how* 那样分别引导时间状语从句、处所状语从句、方式状语从句:

When/Whenever (I am) in doubt, I consult the dictionary. 有疑问时/无论何时一有疑问,我就查字典。

You may park your car ***where there is a parking sign/wherever you like***. 有停车标志的地方/你愿意在哪儿停车,你就可以在那儿停车。

Some people drive ***how they like*** (in any way that they like). 有些人愿意怎么开车就怎么开车。

They drive ***however they like*** (in any way that they like). 他们任

意开车。

Wh-形式中有 5 种能引导定语从句: who(以及 whom, whose), which, when, when, where, why(用法见第九章)。

代词性的 Wh-形式能引导的从句归纳如下:

	作为疑问/连接代词 引导名词从句	作为关系代词 引导定语从句	作为连接代词 引导状语从句
what	问题从句、关系从句	——	——
who(包括 whom, whose)	问题从句(一般不用 于引导关系从句)	定语从句 the man/those who the man whom/ whose...	——
which	问题从句、关系从句	定语从句 the book which...	——
whatever, whoever(包括 whomever, whosever), whichever	关系从句(不用于引 导问题从句)	——	让步状语从句

副词性的 Wh-形式能引导的从句归纳如下:

	作为疑问/连接副 词引导名词从句	作为关系副词 引导定语从句	作为连接副词、连 词, 引导状语从句
when	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 the time when...	趋于虚化, 成连词, 引导时间状语从句
where	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 the place where...	趋于虚化, 成连词, 引导处所状语从句
how	问题从句 关系从句	(不说 the way how ...而说 the way that /in which...)	趋于虚化, 成连词, 引导方式状语从句
why	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 The reason why...	——
whenever, wherever, however	——	——	分别引导时间/处所/ 方式状语从句; 都能 引导让步状语从句

8.12—8.16 that 名词从句及其转成的状语从句

8.12 主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句等 5 种 that 从句

《美国独立宣言》有句话中，两个 *these* 是指示代词；三个 *that* 是已虚化的连词，所引导三个名词从句作前面 *these truths* 的同位语：

We hold *these truths* to be self-evident, *that* all men are created equal, *that* they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights, *that* among *these* are life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness. 我们认为这些真理不言而喻：所有的人生来都是平等的，他们的造物主赋予了他们一些不可剥夺的权利，其中包括生存、自由与对幸福的追求。

比较：

I think it best *that you should stay here*. 我想你最好呆在这儿。

I used to feel it a terrible thing *that my mother should have to toil so endlessly*. 我那时总觉得我妈妈没完没了的苦干是件很可怕的事情。

Why don't you bring it to his attention *that you're too ill to go on working?* (Hornby) 你为什么 not 把你病得很厉害不能继续工作的情况摆出来，让他过问呢？

I have it on my conscience *that I offended you*. (Wells) 我惹你生气了，心里很过意不去。

He doesn't want it to be known *that he's going away*. (Hornby) 他不想让大家知道他要走了。

It 因常用于指后随的 *that* 名词从句而虚化为引导词 (introductory

word)。除像此处这样引导带补语(上面一句中的 to be known)的 that 宾语从句外,更常见引导 that 主语从句,使较长的主语结构位于句子后边,而句子不致头重脚轻:

但是,如果要强调表语,也可以不用引导词 it,而把 that 主语从句直接放在复合句前头,即系词和补语之前:

That they should have different views is natural. (Wilde) 他们会有不同的观点是自然的。

That he should, on the whole, have ignored the working class was natural. (Fox) 总的看来,他忽视了工人阶级是自然的事情。

That collectivization should be followed by mechanization is the foundational policy for the development of their agriculture. (此句系词、表语加上定语比主语从句要长,主语从句在前,句子较平衡;如前用引导词 it 而把较短主语从句置于句末,反而会头重脚轻)继集体化之后实现机械化,是他们发展农业的基本方针。

但带 that 主语从句的复合句为疑问句者,却只能用由 it 引导(引导词 it 作形式主语“formal subject”),使主谓倒装或部分倒装(系词、助动词或情态动词前置)只涉及简短的 it,疑问形式明确,而较长的主语从句总是位于复合句后边:

Why is it ***that everyone thinks I'm forward?*** (Sinclair) 为什么大家都认为我是急进的?

How could it happen ***that he's forgot to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam?*** 考试必带的身份证他怎么会忘记带了昵?

Is it possible ***that they can't afford to rent that apartment?*** (CGEL) 说他们租不起那个公寓,这有可能吗?

How strange it is ***that the children are so quiet!*** (CGEL) 孩子们这么安静,这可真奇怪!

虚词性质的连词 that 引导的名词性从句总是指一种抽象情况,

不能像 *who(ever)* 等所引导名词从句那样可能指具体的人或物,因而, *that* 名词从句不能担任间接宾语、宾语补语或呼语,而是担任其他主要名词性成分:

主语从句:

That he forgot to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam amazed me. 他忘记带考试必须带的身份证,这使我很惊讶。
(强调说法;一般说: *It amazed me that he forgot to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam.*)

表语从句:

What amazed me is *that he forgot to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam*. The fact is *that he forgot to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam*. 事实是他忘记带考试必须带的身份证。

宾语从句:

His teacher doesn't believe (*that*) *he forget to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam*. 他的老师不信他忘记带考试必须带的身份证。

保留宾语从句:

His teacher has been told *that he forgot to bring the ID card badly needed for the exam*. 有人已告诉老师,他忘记带考试必须带的身份证。

带补语宾语从句:

We must make sure *that the blade of the saw is sharp*. 我们必须确认锯齿锋利。

His job is to make sure *that the structures are sound*. 他的工作就是保证这些结构安全可靠。

Please make sure *that the house is properly locked*. 请检查落实房子已经锁好了。

I took it for granted **that you would stay with us**. 我以为理所当然,你会和我们呆在一起。

They have come to know it wrong **that the solution is 5**. 他们已经知道了,答案为5是错误的。(带补语宾语从句多以 it 引导,该 it 为形式宾语,“formal object”。

介词宾语从句:(that 名词从句只能作 except, in, save 三个介词的宾语):

She had no idea where Cork Street was, **except that it was near Bond Street**. (Galsworthy) 她只知道库克街在邦德街附近,别的就不知道了。

A turtle differs from all other reptiles **in that it has its body encased in a protective shell of its own**. (TOEFL 试题) 乌龟不同于其他爬行动物之处,在于它能把自己的躯体藏在自己的保护壳内。

Some antibiotics used in the treatment of human disease are alike only **in that they are obtained from fungi and bacteria**. (TOEFL 试题) 用于治疗人的疾病的某些抗菌素仅仅在它们都取自霉菌和细菌这一点上是相似的。

He would have gone, **save that he had no means**. 要不是没钱支付旅费,他就走了。

I agree with you, **save that you have got one or two facts wrong**. (LDCE) 除了你把一两个事实弄错以外,我同意你的意见。

同位语从句:

Our strategy has been based on the assumption **that our adversary is just one man**. 我们的策略基于这样的设想,即我们的敌方只是一个人。

The rumor **that they would get married** spread at once. 他们要结婚的谣言马上传了开来。

I have a feeling *that our team is going to win*. 我有一种感觉, 我们队要赢。

下列两组例句中的 *that* 名词从句应为 *this* 或 *it* 的同位语。如果 *it* 可看作虚词性的引导词, 则该 *it* 所引导的 *that* 名词从句可看作宾语从句(第一组各句中)或介词宾语从句(第二组各句中); 但各动词与从句间惯用的 *it* 不能省去, 介词与 *it* 连用者有时可一起省去 (8.16, 3):

You may take it *that we shall not be asking you to rejoin the company*. 你可以认为, 我们不会请你重返公司。

I take it *that you are not interested*. 我想你不感兴趣。

I take it (*that*) *you were responsible for this*. (Snow) 我认为你要对此负责。

I take it from your silence *that you don't want to go*. (DAI) 根据你的沉默, 我猜想你不愿意去。

We own it to Mr. Reed *that we have become college students*. 我们成了大学生, 应该感谢里德先生。

She doesn't like it *that he should have lunch alone with the girl*. 她不喜欢他单独和那个女孩吃午饭。

You will be leaving England quite soon, I take it. (Macaulay) 你很快就要离开英国, 我设想是这样的。

This I know / I know this, *you love me*. 你爱我, 这一点我知道。
It has come to this, *that he is asked to quit school*. 事情到了这个地步, 校方要他退学。

You can believe it *that he is a kind young man*. 你可以相信这一点, 他是个善良的年轻人。

We may depend on it *that you will be together with us on the whole journey*. 我们可以相信, 整个旅途之上, 你都有我们同你在一起。

8.13 复合宾语/主语可相当宾语/主语从句

下列各组例句中上边一(二)句中的复合宾语显然相当于下边复合句中的宾语从句,在这些带复合宾语的句中或复合句的主句中,谓语(如 *believed*, *declared*)都表示思想或言谈:

- { We believed *the president to be dead*.
We believed (*that*) *the president was dead*.
我们相信总统已经死去。
- { They declared *him (to be) an honest man*.
他们宣称他是个诚实人。
They declared/said (*that*) *he was an honest man*.
(习惯上不说 *They said him to be ...*)

- { We know *him to be a rich man*.
We know (*that*) *he's a rich man*.
我们知道他是个有钱的人。

- { We could hardly expect *Ruth to be on time*.
We could hardly expect *that Ruth would be on time*.
我们难以指望露斯会准时来到。

- { They reported *thousands to be starving*.
They reported *that thousands were starving*.
他们报告说,成千上万的人没有饭吃。

- { The captain ordered *his men to fire a salute*.
The captain ordered *a salute to be fired*.
The captain ordered *that the men (should) fire a salute*
/a salute (should) be fired. 舰长令水兵/下令放礼炮。

可以看出,复合宾语中带补语的宾语(可称逻辑主语或准主语)相当于宾语从句中的主语,而复合宾语中的宾语补语(可称准表语:

名词、形容词；或称准谓语：分词、不定式）则分别相当宾语从句的表语或谓语。

以上带复合宾语的句子如改为被动句，原复合宾语就会形成复合主语，而复合主语相当主从复合句中的主语从句。带复合主语的句子和带主语从句的复合句中，谓语除可表示“思想、言谈”（was believed/reported）外，还可以表示“发生、表明”（happened/turned out）以及“确定性、可能性”（seemed, was certain/likely）等。

1) 谓语表示思想、言谈：

{ *The president* was reported/believed *to be dead*.
It was reported/believed by the UPI *that the president was dead*. 合众国际社报导/相信总统已死。
也可以说：*That the president was dead* was reported by the UPI. (小西) *That the president was dead* was generally believed. (ib)

上组例句最后两句以 *that* 开头，主语从句在前；谓语带状语在句子末尾，作为“句末重点”（end-focus）传达听者未知的情况。而带主语从句复合句中并非传达听者未知情况的简短谓语一般不放在句子末尾，以免头重脚轻。如常说 *A salute was ordered to be fired*. It was ordered *that a salute (should) be fired*. *He is said to be a miser*. It was said that *he is a miser*. 一般不说 *That a salute (should) be fired was ordered*. 或 *That he is a miser is said*.

{ He is known *to be a rich man*.
It's known *that he is a rich man*.
或说 *That he's a rich man* is known to everyone here.
{ *Ruth* could hardly be expected *to be on time*.
It could hardly be expected (*that*) *Ruth would be on time*.
也可以说 *That Ruth would be on time* could hardly be expected.
(GCE) 露斯很少准时来到，大家都难以指望她会准时。

It dawned on/occurred to somebody. 也表示思想活动,但该二动词(表示“明白”/“想到”)只能使用由引导词 it 引导主语从句的一种句型,既没有用 that 开头的主从复合句形式,也没有对应的复合主语形式:

Has it ever dawned on you *that his story may be a fabrication?* (Wood) 你明白了吗:他所说的可能全是编造? It dawned on Fred *that he would fail the course if he did not study harder.* (DAI) 弗莱德理解到,如果他再不努一把力用功学习,这门课他将不能及格。

It occurred to me *that we should go there more often.* (LDCE) 我想到,我们应该更加经常地到那里去。

2)谓语句表示“发生”、“表明”等:

{ I happened *to see him yesterday.*
It (so) happened *that I saw him yesterday.* (LDCE)
不说 * That I saw him yesterday happened.

{ It chanced *that I was out when he called.* (ALD)
他来访时赶上我不在家。
不说 * That I was out ... chanced.

{ His country cottage turned out *to be an enormous bungalow.*
It turned out *that his country cottage was an enormous bungalow.* 他的农舍原来是一座非常高大的有游廊的平房。
不说 * That his country cottage was... turned out.

It comes about 也表示“发生”,但只能使用由引导词 it 引导主语从句的一种句型,既没有用 that 开头的主从复合句形式,也没有对应的复合主语形式:

How does it come about that you did not report the theft until two days after it occurred? (DCIE) 你怎么直到盗案发生两天后才报案的呢? Thus it came about that the year 1849 saw a gréat war in Hungary. 就这样,1894年在匈牙利发生了一场大战。

3) 谓语表示可能性、确定性:

- { You seem *to have made a mistake*.
It seems *that you have made a mistake*. 看来你犯了一个错误。
不说 * That you have made a mistake seems.
- { He appears *to have been ill*.
It appears *that he has been ill*. 看样子他曾闹病。
不说 * That he has been ill appears.
- { There appears *to have been a mistake*. So it appears/It appears
not. (ALD) 好像原来有个错误。好像有/好像没错。
It appears (to me) *that there has been a mistake*.
不说 * That there has been a mistake appears.

有的语法书把这类句中 seem、appear 后的 that 名词从句解释成表语从句(或称主语补语从句),理由是 seem, appear 等为联系动词,而且把本节 2)所述 It happened 后面的 that 从句也归为表语从句,似乎 happen 也成了联系动词,这是说不通的。

实际上,seem 与 appear 既可为不及物动词(实意动词的一种),又可为联系动词。在以上三组例句中,seem、appear 与本节 2)所述 happen, turn out 同为不及物动词,同为复合主语或主语从句的谓语,seem 表示“显示”(对观察、理解来说),appear 表示“呈现”(对较单纯的直观来说),都是表示事物的运动。

而下面两组例句中 seem 与 appear 才是作为联系动词,接有表语,表示事物与属性的联系。注意,与这两个联系动词连用的主语从句可以前置,整个复合句以连词 that 开头:

- { *It seemed strange* to my mother that I liked arithmetic.
That I liked arithmetic *seemed strange* to my mother.
我喜欢算术,在我母亲看来,这很奇怪。

{ *It appears true* that she will win.
That she will win *appears true*. (LDCE) 看样子是真的,她会取胜的。

对 *It appears* (不及物动词) *that she will win*. 来说,却没有相应的 * *That she will win appears*. 那种说法。(可以说 *She appears to be winning / going to win*.)

但再观察后面三组例句,各组分别以 *is likely/unlikely/certain* 为表语性谓语,就可以使用把主语从句前置并以 *that* 开头的句子形式(尽管远不如用引导词 *it* 开头的复合句句型那么常用):

{ *The weather* is likely enough to be fine.
It's likely enough/probable *that the weather will be fine*.
That the weather will be fine is likely enough.
天气会好的,这很有希望。

{ He is unlikely *to refuse the offer*.
It's unlikely *that he will refuse the offer*.
That he will refuse the offer is unlikely. (Eckersley)
他不大可能拒绝这个提议(给他的价钱、工作机会等)。

{ *Prices* are certain *to go up*. *Prices* are sure *to go up*.
It's certain that *prices will go up*.
That *prices will go up* is certain. (Thomson)
物价要上涨,这是确定不疑的。

三种句型中, *sure* 只用于带复合主语的句型,如: *When they come together, there is sure to be trouble*. (Jespersen) (他们到一起时就一定会闹乱子。)却不说:... * *It is sure that there is /will be trouble*. 也不说: *It's sure that prices will go up*. (*sure* 应改 *certain*, LDCE)

另外二形容词却不用于复合主语句,常接主语从句说 *It is possible but not probable that I shall go there next week*. (LDCE) 下

周我有可能去那儿,但可能性不大。而不说 * I am possible/probable to go. 也不说 * The weather is possible/probable to be fine. (Hornby) 比较用作状语的语气副词 possibly, probably: He's possibly/perhaps the most selfish man in town. 他可能是城里最自私的人。The weather will **probably be fine**. 天气大概会很好的。

8.14 介词宾语从句前略介词, 转成 **that** 方面/原因状语从句

和 8.10 所述“前略介词转成 Wh-方面状语从句”相仿, 原为介词之宾语的 **that** 从句, 前面略去介词, 也转成了状语从句, 即可表示方面, 表示原因:

1) 形容词、分词 + 原介词宾语从句——形容词、分词 + 表示方面、原因等的状语从句:

Are you aware **of the difficulty**?

Are you aware **that there is a difficulty**? (LDCE) 你知道这种困难吗? 你知道有一种困难吗?

I'm afraid **of fire**. I'm afraid (**that**) **the house will catch fire**.
我怕火灾。我怕房子会着火。

2) 及物动词 + 宾语 + 原介词宾语从句 —— 及物动词 + 宾语 + 方面状语从句:

Take care of the baby. Take care (**that**) **nothing happens to the baby**. 注意照看孩子。注意让孩子平安无事。

3) 不及物动词 + 原介词宾语从句 —— 不及物动词 + 宾语从句:

She complained to me of his rudeness. She complained to me **that he had been rude to her**. (ALD) 她对我诉说他的粗暴。她对我诉说, 他曾很粗暴地对待她。

I wonder *at the fact* that he wasn't killed. I wonder *that he wasn't killed*. (ib) 我很奇怪,他没有死。(比较 *that* 主语从句与被动的 *to be wondered at* 连用: *That the criminal was caught* was not to be wondered at. It was not to be wondered at *that the criminal was caught*. 见 LDCE)

I agree to the plan (对...表示同意) (*that*) *we ought to try again*. We agreed on the plan (就...取得一致意见) (*that*) *we should start early*.

The entire family agreed (with each other about the fact) *that by her actions she had seemed to be mothering him*. (Fast) 全家一致认为,从她的所作所为看来,她曾像母亲一样照看他。

that 名词从句前原有介词现已不用的上述三种情况中,最常见的还是第一种——在形容词、分词后,这就使得名词从句取得了超出名词性质的状语功能,表示形容词、分词所表属性或状态的关系方面或造成原因。

如下列句中的方面状语从句:

We are anxious *that everything should go smoothly*. 我们很焦急,希望一切顺利。

The government was clear *that it had the right to legislate for the secession of a territory*. 政府方面很清楚,他们有权通过立法把一块领土划分出去。

I'm certain/sure (*that*) *I'll get there in time*. 我有把握及时到达那里。(比较可说 *It's certain that I...* 不说 * *It's sure that I...*, 见 8.13, 3)

She is confident/convinced *that he is honest*. 她确信他是诚实的。(此句及下句中可见从句修饰分词)

He is determined *that nothing shall prevent him from going*. 他已下定决心,什么也不能阻止他前往。

再看下列句中的原因状语从句：

I'm very sorry (*that*) *I was rude to you*. 我很抱歉曾对你无礼。

I'm so glad (*that*) *you won the prize*. 你得奖,我很高兴。

They are proud *that they belong to such a fine regiment*. 他们为自己属于这样优秀的一团而自豪。

Many of us will be bitterly regretful *that we did not economize in the use of these necessities*. 我们许多人将惨痛地悔恨,过去没有节约使用这些必需品。

You should be thankful *that you have escaped with minor injuries*. (ALD) 你受点轻伤就逃了出来,你应感到欣慰。

I am flattered *that you wished to see me*. 得知你想见我,我感到非常高兴。(由此往下三句中从句修饰分词)

She was appalled *that Bess had to do such work*. 贝斯不得不干这种活,这使她大吃一惊。

Satisfied *that her eldest grandson was present and that the world was still at meridian*, she'd returned to her cooking or prayer. 看到大孙子在那里,而且时间还是正午,她很感满意,已经回屋去做饭,也许是回去祷告去了。

8.15 *that* 名词从句的语气用或不用 *should*

大量 *that* 名词从句中可以使用情态动词(语气动词) *should*, *should* 本属虚拟语气,是由情态动词 *shall* (“必须”)的过去形式构成的。在英语的历史发展中, *should* 先取得了“应该”的语气意义(约 897 年,见 OED),后又取得了“竟然”的语气意义(约 1330 年)。比较下列二句:

We think/believe (*that*) *somebody neutral should take the chair*. 我们认为/相信,应该由一位中立人士担任会议主席。(这一句中

should 不可去掉不用,如把 should 换成别的情态动词 would/will, might/may 等或助动词 is (taking), has (taken)等,意思也会大不一样)

It's impossible *that he should be working*. 他竟然还在工作,这是不可能的。(这一句中 should 也不可去掉不用;但使用虚拟语气情态动词的 should be 可换成直陈语气助动词 is, 句子基本意义不变,不过... that he is working 没有那种虚拟的,设想他“竟然在...”的语气意义。)

再比较 It's not impossible/It's just possible that he will/may/would/might be working when you come again. 其中 will/may 直陈其“将会/可能”,而 would/might 虚拟其“或许将会/或许可能”。

从条件从句中 should 与 were to 的同类用法也可看出二过去形式同表虚拟:If he should/were to ask you, ... 如果他竟然问你/假设他会问你...(皆不大可能实现的条件)。条件从句中表示可实现的条件现用直陈语气,旧用法用虚拟语气 be 型(原形动词型):If music be/is the food of love, play on! 如果音乐是爱情的粮食,那就演奏下去吧!

名词从句中常常使用 should be 型虚拟语气, should be 型虚拟语气有时可以换成 be 型虚拟语气,有时又不可以。should be 型虚拟语气还有时可以、有时不可以换成直陈语气。这三种语气形式的区别是:

直陈语气(按其时态、变位形式变化)——直接陈述现实的情况;
be 型虚拟语气(用动词原形)——单纯虚拟意想中未然的情况;
should be 型虚拟语气(should + 动词原形)——评论意想中(未然)或感受到(已然)“应该”、“竟会”发生的情况。

下列 1)中各组例句可用这三种语气形式,而 2),3),4)各组例句仅可用其中两种语气形式:

1)未然:直陈现实、单纯意想、评论“应该”:

主语从句:

It is absolutely essential that all the facts *are examined first*. (把未然情况看作是必然的、既定的现实)

It is absolutely essential that all the facts *be examined first*. (美国英语及英国正式用语说法)

It is absolutely essential that all the facts *should be examined first*. (英国英语一般说法) 首先(应)把全部事实查明, 这极为重要。

It's important that he *has/have/should have all the facts*. (EGS) 他要掌握全部事实, 这一点很要紧。

表语从句:

The decision was that he *lectures/lecture/should lecture* on changing English. (大家或某决策人) 决定是他(应该)讲变化中的英语。

宾语从句:

People are demanding that she *leave/leaves (BrE)/should leave* the company. (CGEL, p. 1182, 其中 leaves 限于 BrE 英国英语) 人们要求他离开本公司。(如用 shall leave..., “必须离开...”)

2) 未然(主句谓语动词或主语名词表示“设想”, 从句不用直陈语气表示): 单纯意想、评论“应该”:

主语从句:

It is requested that a vote (*should*) *be taken*. 有人请求表决。

It was suggested that we (*should*) *divide* ourselves into two groups. (suggest 比 propose 语气弱, 不宜接直陈语气从句) 有人建议我们分成两组。

表语从句:

The idea is that the railway (*should*) *be improved first*. 我们的

想法是应先把铁路改进。

宾语从句:

We requested that he (*should*) *use* his influence on our behalf.

我们请求他运用他的影响,给我们一些支持。

I urged that he (*should*) *be* a good father. (GCE) 我极力劝他,要做一位好父亲。

3)已然(不用只表示意想中未然情况的虚拟 be 型):直陈现实、评论“应该”:

主语从句:

It's a good thing that he *recognizes* his fault. It's a good thing that he *should recognize* his fault. (It's a good thing that he recognize his fault. 中用虚拟 be 型,为古旧用法, Leech, p. 108) 他(应该)认识自己的错误,这是好事。

宾语从句:

We thought it right that he *was/had been punished*. We thought it right that he *should have been punished*. 他(应该)受到惩罚,我们认为这样是对的。

4)已然(不用只表示意想中未然情况的虚拟 be 型):直陈现实、评论“竟然、竟会”:

主语从句:

It's laughable that Septimus is in love. It's laughable that Septimus *should be* in love. 塞普提摩斯(竟然)落入情网,这事真好笑。

It worries me that you *are/should be looking* so tired. 你看上去(竟是)这么疲劳,这使我很担心。

表语从句:

What worries me is that men *are able/should be able* to threaten ordinary peaceful citizens with bombs and bullets. 使我不安

的是,有人(竟)能用炸弹和枪弹威胁安详的平民。

What surprised me was that Al *married/should have married* her. 使我惊讶的是,亚尔(竟)和她结了婚(Ablert 简称 Al)。

宾语从句:

We regret that you *feel/should feel* obliged to resign. 我们感到很遗憾,你(竟然)觉得你必须辞职。

状语从句:

I'm surprised that your wife *objects/should object*. (be surprised at something, 本用 at... 表示原因,但在 that 名词从句前略去介词,原介词宾语从句成为原因状语从句) 你的妻子(竟然)反对,这使我惊讶。

8.16 引导名词从句的 that 的省略

说引导名词从句的 that 可以“省略”,并非严格科学的说法。回溯英语的历史发展,现属从句的连词 that 原属主句一代词。OED 论述了 that 读音弱化转为连词的过程: He once lived here: we all know that. —We all know that/this (重读): he once lived here. —We all know that (非重读) he once lived here.

但表达同样的意思,还有另一种说法——根本不用 that: We all know: he once lived here. —We all know he once lived here.

两种说法比较起来,用 that 的说法中,有 that 指示主、从句间的关系,使从属关系更加明确。讲求明晰的书面语、正式用语或者说“标准”说法(特别在较复杂、较长的句中),就经常使用 that 来引导名词从句。大家就把只讲求简便、不用 that 的口语说法,说成是省略了 that。

在口语惯用法影响下,至今连书面语中, would rather (其中 would 为实意动词,“希望”)等的宾语从句也不用 that 引导, wish 的

宾语从句一般不用 *that* 引导, *hope* 的宾语从句也很少用 *that* 引导:

I'd rather *you knew that now*, than afterwards. (Cronin) (从句虚拟语气, 过去形式指将来) 我希望你现在知道那件事, 而不是以后。

I'd sooner (rather) *you didn't ask me to speak*. (Eckersley) (从句虚拟语气, 过去形式指将来) 我宁愿你不让我发言。

I wish *I lived nearer London*. (Wood) (从句虚拟语气, 过去形式指现在) 我但愿能住得离伦敦更近些。

I hope (不可用 *wish*) *you will be there then*. (从句直陈语气) 我希望那时你在那儿。

H. W. Fowler 在 *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage* 中指出, 其宾语从句一般不用 *that* 的有 *believe*, *suppose* 等 4 个动词, 一般要用的有 *agree*, *suggest* 等 12 个动词, 可用可不用 *that* 的若干。但我们常见不合他“一般”规律的实例:

People used to believe *that the earth was flat*. (ALD) 人们过去相信地球是平的。

I supposed *that you had gone*. (RHD) 我原设想, 你已经走了。

We've all agreed *it's unjust*. (Cronin) 我们都认为这是不正当的。

I suggested *he should adapt himself to his new conditions*. (Wells) 我建议他应该使自己适应新条件。

倒是 M. Swan 的概括说法比较合适: 常用表述动词 (*reporting verbs*) *say*, *suggest* 等 (应加上常用认识动词, *know*, *think* 等) 的宾语从句可不用 *that*, 而只用于书面语、正式用语的不常用动词 (如 *reply*, *object* 等) 的宾语从句则要用 *that* 引导: *He replied that he was busy*. 他答复说他很忙。

这里我们从三方面归纳一下, 引导名词从句的 *that* 可以“略去”不用与不可略去不用的主要规则:

第一, 复合句中间 *that* 多可略去 —— 复合句开头或略去主句

的从句开头不可略,见下表;

第二,口语特别是简短句中 that 多被略去 —— 书面正式语,特别是较复杂句中不略,见表后 2);

第三,除某些限制性同位语从句外,引导同位语从句者不可略去,见表后 3)。

1)复合句中间 that 可略 —— 复合句开头,或略去主句的从句开头 that 不略

<p>It is right <u>we should go</u>. (主语从句)</p> <p>It worried me a bit <u>she didn't phone</u>. (主语从句)</p> <p>I know <u>the job is difficult</u>. (宾语从句)</p> <p>I see <u>he is an able man</u>.</p> <p>但 He was really frightened, I believe/I think/I'm afraid, 并非主从复合句倒装(I believe, I think, 或 I'm afraid 为短句形式语气状语,见 14.7)</p> <p>I wish <u>I were a bird</u>.</p> <p>I suggested <u>we should go home</u>.</p> <p>It is strange <u>he should be late</u>. 很奇怪,他竟然迟到了。</p> <p>It's essential <u>they should be told at once</u>. (PEU) 关键是马上告诉他们。</p> <p>Who would have thought <u>she should be a deceiver!</u> 谁能想到她竟然是个大骗子!</p>	<p>[主语从句在前, <u>that</u> 不略]</p> <p><u>That you are coming to London</u> is the best news I have heard this long time.</p> <p><u>That we leave at once</u> is imperative. (Halsey)</p> <p>[略去主句时的宾语从句开头, <u>that</u> 不略]</p> <p>Oh <u>that I could see him again!</u> (ALD)我真希望能再见到他!</p> <p>(How I wish) <u>that he would be there!</u></p> <p>That it were so! 但愿那样!</p> <p>That it might be the last! 但愿这是最后一次!</p> <p>That she should betray me! 她竟然背叛我!</p> <p>That I should see a child of mine arrested for selling drugs! (ALD)我竟然看到自己的孩子因贩毒而被捕!</p> <p>That I could fly! 我要是能飞就好了!</p> <p>That he should act so rudely toward you! 他对你竟然这样粗鲁!</p>
--	---

2)口语特别是简短句中 that 多略 —— 书面语,特别是较复杂

句中 that 不略

简短句中多略去引导名词从句的 that:

主语从句:

It's a pity *you don't know Russian*. (CGEL) 很遗憾你不懂俄语。

It seems unlikely *she will refuse the offer*. 似乎她不大可能拒绝这个建议。

表语从句:

Yet the fact is *we know very little about gorillas*. (New Concept English, Book 4) 然而, 事实是我们不太了解大猩猩。

The reason was *he was afraid*. 原因是他害怕了。

宾语从句:

We know *he will come*. He saw *I was coming*. I take it *you have been out*. (Macaulay) 我认为你曾经外出。

原介词宾语从句转成的状语从句:

He feels confident of passing/confident (*that*) *he'll pass the examination*. 他觉得有信心通过这次考试。

较复杂句中不略去引导名词从句的 that:

带补语宾语从句:

Under the circumstance, I feel it right *that you should know*. (Bennet) 在这种情况下, 我觉得让你知道才好。

前带 to be 宾语补语从句 (that 名词从句仅偶见担任这种宾语补语):

I thought his argument to be *that we should pay*. (GCE) 我想他的说法就是我们应当付钱。

较长从句:

It is fairly certain *that* the same struggle was going on in Chamberlain's mind as in the mind of the ordinary people. His opponents professed to see in him a dark and wily schemer,

plotting to sell England to Hitler, but it is far likelier *that* he was merely a stupid old man doing his best according to his very dim lights. (Orwell) 可以有相当把握地说, 张伯伦(第二次世界大战前夕的英国首相)头脑里也在进行着普通人头脑里那样的思想斗争。张伯伦的反对者们声称, 他们认为他是个黑心、狡猾的阴谋家, 一心策划着, 把英国出卖给希特勒, 然而比较起来远远更为可能的情况时, 他只是一个愚蠢的老头子, 只是在按他那非常昏庸的眼光, 尽心尽力。

前有插入语的从句:

I don't know the thing, as you see, *that he has been here for 3 days*. 如你所知, 我不了解这样的情况, 他在这儿呆了三天。

We suggested *that*, under such circumstances, *we should start at once*. 在这种情况下, 我建议我们应该马上开始。

Everyone could see, I believe, *that George was terrified*. 我确信大家都能看到乔治吓坏了。

与前并列的第二、三个及以下从句:

I realize *that I'm in charge and that everybody accept my leadership*. 我意识到, 我在负责, 而且每个人都接受我的领导。

She promised *that she would come and see him sometimes, and that she would never forget him*. (Maugham) 她承诺说, 她会不时来看他, 而且她永远也不会忘记他。

The three girls repeatedly declared they had never heard of Christ, and two (declared) *that they had never heard of God*. (Jespersen) 三位姑娘反复声称他们从来没听说过基督, 两位姑娘声称他们从来没听说过上帝。

I believe (*that*) *you have done your best and that things will improve*. 我相信你已经做了最大努力, 情况也会得到改进。

使用 that 可避免歧义的从句:

They told us that once again the situation was serious. 他们告诉我们,形势再一次很糟糕。

They told us once again that the situation was serious. (CGEL)
他们又告诉我们,形势很糟糕。

I felt sure that last Friday the sale was going through. (在谈生意以前)我曾感到满有把握,上星期五(双方面谈时)这批货物的销售就要谈妥了。

I felt sure last Friday that the sale was going through. (RWRT)
我在上周五曾经感到满有把握,这批货物的销售就要谈妥了。

3) 同位语从句较少略 that——非限制性同位语从句 that 不略, it 的同位语从句 that 多不略:

feeling, idea, impression, notion 等意念名词及 fact 一词的同位语从句可略 that:

I can't understand why, suddenly I had this feeling (that) something terrible was going to happen. 我说不清为什么,但我忽然感到要出事了。

Where did you get the idea (that) she doesn't like you? 你是从哪儿的来的这个印象,说她不喜欢你?

I had the distinct impression (that) I was being followed. (ALD)
我清楚地感到有人跟踪我。

I had a notion (that) she originally came from Poland. (ALD) 我有个想法她的原籍是波兰。

A holiday would be wonderful, but the fact just now is (that) we can't afford one. 如能休假是真好,可眼下事实是我们办不到。

构成复合连词的 seeing (that) (鉴于), provided/on condition

(that) (只要), supposing/in case/in the event (that) (如果), for fear (that)(以免)中 that (本来也在引导名词从句) 现常略去, 所引导的可看作是各种状语从句:

You can go swimming on condition (that) you don't go far from the bank. 只有在你能保持不远离海岸的条件下, 你才可以去。

非限制性同位语从句不略 that: The hard truth, the proven fact that Maria was killed in a car accident, was a great shock to her parents. (两个逗号中间的同位语从句对前边名词是修饰而非限定, 句中的 truth, fact 原本就已是确定的、已知的) 玛利亚死于车祸, 这一残酷事实对她父母是个沉重的打击。一般限制性同位语从句不略 that: They had to face the fact *that the nearest filling station is thirty kilometers away*. 他们不得不面对这样的事实, 最近的加油站离这里 30 公里。Now that energy prices are rising so rapidly, further prices are very uncertain, and the risk *that a new investment depending on them may fail* is greater. 现在能源价格如此迅猛地上涨, 今后的价格涨落未卜, 所以, 以现价为为基础的新投资项目失败的危险性很大。

只有少数惯用的“动词(+ 介词)+ it”后, it 的同位语从句可略 that[一般“动词(…)it”后, it 的同位语从句不略 that]:

I'll answer for it *the next shall be as good*. (Jespersen) 我担保, 下一个质量还是这么好。

They saw to it *I was not disturbed while I was working*. (Schibsbye) 他们负责在我工作时让我不受干扰。

You may depend on it *he will say "Why not?"* (ib) 你可以肯定, 他一定会问“怎么不行呢?”

Am I to take it (that 略) *you want to find it out?* (Bennett) 我可以认为你想知道内情吗?

下列句中所略 *that* 引导的不是同位语从句,也不是任何别种名词从句: I have no doubt that we shall be able to do something for you. (Doyle) (连词引导方面状语从句)我确信我们能帮你做些什么。There was no doubt that he was a fine scholar. (Maugham) (连词引导方面状语从句)毫无疑问他是一位优秀的学者。

The bus is so full that I could hardly turn around. (DAI) (连词引导结果状语从句)公共汽车挤得很,我几乎转不过身来。

Billy pitched so well that everyone cheered him at the end of the game. (连词引导程度状语从句)(棒球赛中)比利投球投得很棒,比赛结束时大家都为他鼓掌。

I stay at home on the days that I'm not busy. (ELD) (关系代词引导定语从句)不忙的日子里我呆在家中。

It's high time (that) we leave. (关系代词引导定语从句)是我们该离去的时候了。

下列句中,*that* 引导的也不是名词从句(见第十、十一章有关各节): I ask you to come here — (it was) not that you should pay for the accident, but that I want to know the reason for it in detail. (分裂句强调的部分,在此是强调原因从句。)我要你到这儿来 —— 这不是为了要你赔钱,而是我想知道事故的详细原因。

What have I done that he should cut me? (OED) (推论状语从句)我怎么了,他为什么竟对我不理不睬?

Exercise 8

I. 判断哪些 *that* 是可以省略的、必须略去的、不可省略的:

1. I would rather *that* you came tomorrow than today.
2. *That* he will be on time seems doubtful.
3. It's a pity *that* he should vanish from the public life.

4. The obvious explanation, *that* they had run out of petrol, had not occurred to him at first.
5. I got the impression *that* they had just had an agreement.
6. (How I wish) *That* he would/could be here!
7. Am I to take it *that* you want to find out all you can?

II . 用 *that* 引导方面或原因状语从句代替介词短语, 略去介词:

1. I am sure of his innocence.
2. Everyone is aware of their conflict.
3. Take care of what you are doing.
4. I wonder at your allowing him to do such a thing.
5. You can be certain of success.
6. Turgis was confident of his ability to get work for himself.

III . 选择合适的选项填空:

1. The team can handle whatever _____.
 A. that needs handling B. which needs handling
 C. it needs handling D. needs to be handled
2. We agreed to accept _____ they thought was the best tourist guide.
 A. whatever B. whomever
 C. whichever D. whoever
3. _____ difficulties we may come across, we'll help one another to overcome them.
 A. Wherever B. Whatever
 C. However D. Whenever
4. There is no doubt _____ the company has made the right decision on the sales project.

A. why

B. that

C. whether

D. when

IV. 改正句中的错误:

1. No matter whatever happens, don't come out.
2. When have you grown a beard?
3. Who of these boys is the strongest?
4. Which kind of books do you like best?
5. We stopped at a village where are many temples.
6. Which time do you usually get up?
7. How do you think of this?

V. 翻译下列句子里的汉语部分:

1. (书的销路如何) _____ depends largely on its author.
2. The question is _____ (这东西要花多少钱).
3. She was asked _____ (这工作要花多长时间).
4. It all depends on _____ (你们是何时何地会面).
5. You have no ideas _____ (我是多么发愁)!
6. Have you made it known _____ (会议为何要延期)?

第九章 定语从句的选用或者不用关系代词、 关系副词的规律——从句 用法关键之二

9.1—9.4 不同关系代词的性质

9.1 非限制性定语从句之所以不用 *that* 引导

由指示代词演化为连词的 *that* 引导名词从句和状语从句时,本身作为虚词,不担任从句的句子成分:

This shut off all hope *that they would be reconciled*. (同位语从句)这断绝了促使他们和解的一切希望。

Thus they gave their patient high hopes of cure *that he willingly underwent the painful operation*. (结果状语从句)于是就这样,他们使病人满怀希望把病治好,病人自愿接受了那痛苦的手术。

再比较下列四句中的...fact that...:

It was an amazing fact **that she used to be a pickpocket**. (It 为虚词、引导词,引出主语从句) 她过去常常偷东西,这真是惊人的事。

It/This was such an amazing fact **that everyone was struck dumb**.

(It, 实词,主句主语;that 引导结果状语从句,该 that 可换作 and 或逗号) 这件事是如此惊人,大家都惊得目瞪口呆。

She wanted to conceal the fact **that she used to be a pickpocket**.

(引导同位语从句的 that 也因并非句子成分,可换作一个冒号:...conceal the fact: she used to be...) 她想隐瞒自己是个扒手的实情。(她想隐瞒实情:自己是个扒手)

He unearthed an amazing fact **that/which threw much light**

upon the problem. (that 或 which 为定语从句中的主语) 他揭露了一件惊人的事实,这一事实使大家对问题的了解清楚多了。

引导定语从句的 that, who, which 等有先行词,不同于引导名词性关系从句的连接代词 what(ever), whoever, whichever, 这些连接代词在从句虽也担任名词性成分,却没有先行词:

Say what (ever) you will. 你想说什么就说什么吧!

Whichever (of you) comes in first will receive a prize. (不说 which comes in first will...) (你们)谁先进来,谁就得奖。

Whoever does handsomely is handsome. (岩波)(说得漂亮没有用处,)办得漂亮才算漂亮。(改用定语从句可说:He **who does handsomely** is handsome.)

使用没有先行词的关系代词 that, which 属于一种古旧用法,仅残存于谚语、仿古说法中: Handsome are **that handsome does**. (谚语) Be killed or kill; choose **which you will**. (Butler) 不是被人杀掉就要杀人,随你挑一样。

that 的多种功能表现在国外语法家编造的两个古怪句子中:

I said that that "**that**" **that that man wrote in the sentence** was wrong. (H. E. Palmer; 5 个 that 依次为连词、指示代词、所引原文中

该词、关系代词、指示代词) 我说,那个人在那句里所用的那个 *that* 是用错了。

My Lords! — says he with humble submission—**THAT *that I say is this: that THAT that that gentleman has advanced***, is not **THAT, *that he should have proved to your Lordships***. (Brewer) (3个 *that* 引导的定语从句各限定其前指示代词 **THAT**, 当中重复 4 次的 *that THAT that that (gentleman...)* 中, 第 1 个和第 4 个是限定后面代词或名词的指示代词, 第 2 个是关系代词; 全句相当: ... the point that I make is this: that “**THAT**” which that gentleman advanced is not the main thing that he should have proved ...) 各位大人, 他恭恭敬敬地说, 我要说的是: 那位先生所提出来的那个, 并非他本应向各位大人证明的那个事情。

实际语言中, 两个 *that* 连用倒是较常见的: *Anything **that that lady does** looks pretty.* (第一个 *that* 为关系代词, 作从句宾语可略) 那位女士不论在做什么都很好看。Sing us a song, *that **that was sung by you and your daughter, when I last passed**.* (第二个 *that* 为关系代词, 作从句主语不可略) 给我们唱个歌吧, 就唱上次我经过时你和你女儿唱的那个歌。

代替“指示代词 *that* + 关系代词 *that*”, 更常用的是 *the one that/which*, 或者 *that which*: ... the one that was sung . . . , . . . that which was sung . . . 。

关系代词 *that* 与关系代词 *which* 的根本区别是: *that* 是最早的关系代词, 因而口语中一直更为常用, 既可指物又可指人; 而 *which* 较晚转作关系代词, 多用于书面语、较正式说法, 主要用来指事物, 另用关系代词 *who* 指人, 以相区别。

在限制性定语从句中 *that* 与 *which* 各有专用、但不可互换的情况不多, 大多数情况下可以通用, 可随各人愿用口语或书面语体而任选其一。因而据统计, 爱用口语体写诗的桂冠诗人 Tennyson 一段诗

歌中关系代词 *that* 与 *which* 之比是 48:7; 而偏爱正式文体的史学家 Macaulay 一段文字中关系代词 *that* 与 *which* 之比却是 1:51。

正因为 *which*, *who* 等是讲究“明确”的书面语惯用的关系代词, 非限制性定语从句(仅书面常用的附加修饰句), 才只用 *which*, *who* 等引导, 而不用 *that* 引导。讲求简便的口语中对无需限定的词、句, 一般不附加累赘的修饰语句。需要时, 口语中会另起一句联系于前句某名词或整个前句。比较下列书面语、口语说法:

Thank you for your letter, in answer to **which** I sent you the following telegram. — Thank you for your letter. I sent you the following telegram in answer to it. (Close)

He said he had lost the book, **which** was untrue. — He said he had lost the book, but **this** was untrue.

She borrowed a history book. (句号后亦可另起一非限制性定语“从句”) **Which** suggests that her teacher was having some influence on her. 这句话的意思大致相当于: She borrowed a history book. (And) **That** suggests... (that 为指示代词) 她借了本历史书, 这表明她的老师对她已有所影响。

He admires Mrs. Brown, **which** I find strange/**which** (或 *as*) is natural. — He admires Mrs. Brown, **and this** I find strange/**and this** is natural. 他很欣赏布朗夫人, 我觉得这很奇怪/这是很自然的。

不过, 非限制性定语从句不用 *that* 引导, 并非人们全都遵从的规律, 爱用 *that* 的 Tennyson 就以其引导非限制性定语从句:

Is it kind to have made me a grave so rough? Me, **that** was never a quiet sleeper? 给我造这样粗陋的坟能说是尽了心? 给我, 我这人睡觉从来睡得沉!

9.2 关系代词 that, which, as 的不同用法

在前节末尾一组例句中有 He admires Mrs. Brown, *which* I find strange/*which* (或 *as*) is natural. 一句。其中的 *as* 可以说由连词转作了关系代词(详见 9.3)。关系代词 *that*, *which* 与 *as* 的区别,可按其限定或修饰的词、句,分三种情况加以论述:1)在限定性定语从句中限定主句一名词时;2)在非限定性定语从句中修饰主句一名词或形容词时;3)在非限定性定语从句中修饰主句一部分或主句全句时。

1) 限定主句一名词(或代词)时:

that, *which* 可作限制性定语从句的主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语——指事物(指人也可用 *that/which* 的情况见 9.5):

All the books that/which has pictures in them were sent to the little girl. (作从句主语)所有的带插图的书都给那小女孩儿送去了。

Holiday resorts which are crowded are not very pleasant. (作主语)所有的那些拥挤的度假场所令人感到不很愉快。

This is the photo which/that I took. (作宾语)这是我拍的照片。

The material which it contains will form part of another book quite different from this one. (作宾语)其中的材料将成为与这本书大不相同的另一本书的一部分。

This is the pan that I boiled the milk in. (作介词宾语)这是我煮牛奶的锅。

(与度量副词 *as*, *so*, 确定代词 *such*, 形容词 *same* 连用)关系代词 *as* 可作限制性定语从句的主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语——指事物或指人:

Such women as knew Tom thought he was charming. (ALD) (作主语)认识汤姆的女人都觉得他很招人喜欢。

I never heard such stories as he tells. (Eckersley) (作宾语)我从未听过像他讲的这样的故事。

He is not such a fool as he looks. (Palmer) (作表语)他实际不是像看上去那样傻的傻瓜。

We had hoped to give you a chance such as nobody else ever had. (有时 *such* 和 *as* 可连在一起) (Lewis) (作宾语)我们曾有一段时间希望给你一次没人曾得到过的机会。

It was an agreement the details of which could not be altered. (作介词宾语)这是一项不能更改细节的协定。

Here is the car that I told you about. (或 about which I told you)(作介词宾语)这是我告诉过你的那辆车。

None of theirs is the kind of garden which mine is. (which 为从句表语, 指类属、性质) 他们的园子全都不是我的那样的花园。

The Sunday Times was enabled to become, not merely the great property that it now is, but the foundation of the vast interests of the Berry brothers. (Schibbye) (that 为从句表语, 指具体事物) 这使得《星期日时报》不仅成为现在这个样子的巨大产业, 而且也成了贝利兄弟这般丰厚的利益的基础。

It was a newspaper of a new type, such as had never before existed in the history of the labor movement. (作主语)这是一种新型报纸, 劳动阶级运动史上从未有过的。We drove out of the town by the same road as we had entered by. (作介词宾语) 我们沿进城的同一条路出了城。

So much of the sky as could be seen between the buildings was serene. (主语) 楼房之间看到的部分是晴朗的。

He never remembered to have such weariness as he feel now. (Wolpole) (作表语) 在他的记忆中, 他从来没有感觉过像今天这样的疲劳。

关系代词 as 指人时同样可以作以上右边所列各种名词性成分:

Such women as Tom knew thought he was charming. (ALD) (宾语) 汤姆认识的女人都觉得他很招人喜欢。

I like a man as you are. (表语) 我喜欢像你这样的男人。

... child as beautiful as ever clung around a mother's neck, or as a father fondly gazed upon with pride. (as ever clung 中 as 为从句主语, as ... gazed 中的为介词宾语) 在所有紧搂着母亲的肩头的孩子中, 在所有让父亲骄傲地含情凝望着的孩子中, 最俊美的一个 ...

As a 50-year woman, she will never be the same delicate-skinned and fair-complexioned as she was when she was 18-years old. (表语) 作为一个 50 岁的妇女, 她永远也不会像 18 岁时那样细皮嫩肉的了。

2) 修饰主句中一个名词、形容词或分词时:

which 可作非限制性定语从句名词性成分, 指事物; 特别是作表语, 可指事物, 亦可指人(作表语, 宾语, 多指某类人的性格、人品、素质、地位或职业, 与人有关的集体)(that 一般不用于非限制性定语从句)

She was very fond of French, which (宾语) she indeed spoke well. 她非常喜欢法语, 而且法语的确讲得很好。

The London team, which (主语) played so well last season, has done badly this season. 伦敦队上个赛季打得很好, 这个赛季打得很糟糕。

His sister is a scholar, which he is not. (表语, 指素质) 他姐姐是位学者, 他不是。

She treated him like a tame cat, which is what he was. (表语) 她待他像只温顺的猫, 那时他就是这样一只猫。

My mother is wordy, which she was not. (表语) 我妈妈现在爱唠叨, 她过去不。

The new car, which he paid \$ 7000 for, has already had to be repaired. (介词宾语) 他花了 7000 美元买辆新车, 现已不得不修理了。

This encyclopedia, of which the second volume is missing, is quite out of date. (Hornby) 这部百科全书的第二册已经丢失, 而且这套全书也太过时了。

This long road, along which poplar trees were planted many years ago, goes to Arras. (Hornby) 这条大路通往阿拉斯, 路两边很多年前种了白杨树。

They accused him of being a traitor, which he was. (CGEL) (表语, 指性质) 他们指责他是叛徒, 他真是个叛徒。

关系代词 as 在非限制性定语从句中, 修饰主句——名词、形容词或分词时, 主要作该非限定定语从句的表语, 指事物或指人:

The girls seem Americans, as in fact they are. 这些女孩子看上去像是美国人, 实际上真是美国人。

(He is a basketball player, as we perceive by his big figure. 句中 as 为从句宾语, 但所修饰的不是主句一名词, 而是整个主句, 指主句所述情况)

She is an architecture student, as are the whole group. 她是学建筑的学生, 这一帮都是学建筑的学生。

The manager seemed very much astonished at it, as indeed he was. (修饰主句中分词 astonished) 看样子经理大吃一惊, 实际真是这样。

These splendid buildings are not newly built, as many tourists think they are/them to be. (as 为从句表语或宾语补语即复合宾语中的表语修饰主句中的 newly built) 这些华丽的建筑物不是新建的, 尽管很多人认为它们是新建的。

David is tall, as is my brothers. (LDCE) (修饰主句中的形容词 tall) 他个子很高, 我的兄弟们也是这样。

He thinks her answer incorrect, as/which it probably is. (as 或 which 修饰主句中的形容词 incorrect) 他认为她的答案不对, (我想) 她那答案很可能是不对的。

主句中一个名词还可以由“which + 名词”来代替,该 which 在非限定性定语从句中为定语:

My father may have to go into hospital, *in which case* he won't be going on holiday. (Chambers) 我父亲可能必须去医院,在这种情况下,他就不会去度假了。

I called him by the wrong name, *for which mistake* I apologize. (Chambers) 我(上次)叫他叫错名字了,为此我向他道歉。

He is studying economics, *which knowledge* is very important today. 他在攻读经济学,当今这门知识很重要。

I may have to work late, *in which case* I'll telephone. 我可能得晚点下班,那样我会打电话的。

3) 修饰主句一部分或整个主句时

which 代表主句一部分或其全句时,多作非限制性定语从句的主语、宾语(that 一般不用于非限制性定语从句); which 所引导该从句一般在主句后:

He admires Mrs. Brown, which surprises me. (不说 as surprises me) (which, 主语) 他钦佩布朗太太,这使我感到吃惊。

I could do nothing but stand, which I did. (不说 as I did) (which, 宾语, 代表 but stand) 我只能站着,别无他法,我也就这么站着。

He invited us to dinner, which was very kind of him. (which, 主语) 他邀请我们去吃饭,他真是太好了。

He changed his mind, which made me very angry. (which, 主语) 他改变了主意,这使我非常生气。

关系代词 as 除在表示“惯常”、“已知”等的某些惯用简短从句中作从句主语外,多为非限制性定语从句的宾语、表语或被动句主语; as 所引导该从句可在主句前、后、或中间:

Spiders are not insects, as many people think, nor even nearly related to them. (*New Concept English*, Book 4) (as, 从句宾语, 修饰主句) 蜘蛛不是昆虫,尽管许多人都这样认为,它甚至与昆虫没有很近的关系。

A careful observer will notice that a wire becomes thinner when it is stretched, as may be seen by pulling on a piece of rubber hose. (as, 被动句主语) 细心的观察者会注意到,当金属丝拉长时,它会变细,就像拉伸一根橡皮管时所看到的那样。

She was married again, which was unexpected. (which, 主语) 她又结婚, 真出人意料。

[比较: As was natural, he married her. (as, 主语, 指其后的主句) 很自然, 他和她结婚了。]

She dislikes John, which is not surprising. (which, 主语) 她不喜欢约翰, 这不奇怪。

Pam didn't go to the show, which is a pity. (which, 主语) 帕姆没去看表演, 真遗憾。

They say he plays truant, which he doesn't. 他们说他爱逃学, 但他并没有那么做。

I said nothing, which made him still more furious. (which, 主语) 我什么也没说, 这使他更加愤怒。

Rabindranath Tagore is a poet, which you know. (which, 宾语) 罗宾德拉纳特·泰戈尔是位诗人, 这你是知道的。

下列从句中 which 从句置主句前, which 指其后整个主句所述情况, 这是语序变异用法, 比较少见:

He also decided, which was more to his purpose, that Eleanor did not care a straw for him. (which, 主语, 指其后的 that 宾语从句) 他也肯定下来, 艾莉诺对他毫不在意, 这更合乎他的愿望。

Moreover, which/what you may hardly believe, the examiners had decided in advance to fail half the candidates! (ALD) (which 为宾语) 而且, 这你可能难以相信, 主持考试的人们先已决定, 半数应试者不能及格!

This is part of your job, as I told you before. (as 宾语) 我曾告诉过你, 这也是你工作的一部分。

Cyprus, as you know, is an island in the Mediterranean. (as 宾语) 如你所知, 塞浦路斯岛是地中海的一个岛屿。

He is a doctor, as was his wife before she had children. (as 表语) 他是大夫, 他夫人生小孩前也是大夫。

He really can't lend you the money, as you might not realize. (as, 宾语, 指主句) 他真的不能借钱给你, 你可能没有意识到。

As he realized, I was very useful to him. (as, 宾语, 指其后的主句) 他意识到了, 我对他很有用处。

As he hoped, he saw the girl. (as, 宾语, 指其后的主句) 他见到了那姑娘, 这是他希望的事。

The man was a teacher, as was evident from his way of speaking. (as 主语, 指主句) 那人是教师, 他的说话方式显示了这一点。

Why had not she gone to her own room, as she felt to be the safest? (带补语的宾语, as 指主句一部分: had gone to, 不包括否定词 not) 她觉得回到自己的房间去最安全, 却为什么没有回呢?

as 从句如不是如前所示, 在表否定的主句中间或主句后, 而在表否定的主句前时, 该 as 指整个主句, 包括其否定意义:

As had been said above, grammar is not a set of dead rules. (as 被动句主语, 指整个主句, 包括其否定意义) 正如前面所说的, 语法不是一套死条文。

	<p><u>As</u> is very natural, man cannot live without air. (as 作主动句主语,指整个主句,包括其否定意义) 没有空气,人就不能生活。(as 在非限制性定语从句中作主动句主语,限于惯用简短从句,见 9.3)</p>
--	---

整个主句或其一部分还可用“which + 名词”来修饰,该 which 在非限制性定语从句中为定语:

He is old, *which fact* is important. 他已经老了,这个事实是很重要的。

If the medium is a solid, *in which case* the electrons are more tightly packed, the electron flow will be slower. 如果介质是固体,此时电子排列更为紧密,电子流就会变慢。

9.3 as 由连词转作关系代词

在 He is as diligent a man *as* ever lived. 句中后一个 as 可以说是关系代词,它相当从句中 ever lived 的主语,全句意思相当 He is one of the most diligent men *that* ever lived. (井上)

但从根本上说,该句应为下面一句的省略: He is as diligent a man *as* anyone that ever lived (is diligent). 在这没有省略的句中,后一个 as 显然是连词(非句子成分),比较另一句中后一个 as 亦为连词: He is as diligent a man *as* any of you (are diligent). (前一个 as 为度量副词,功能与 so 相仿)

在 He is reading the same book *as* she is. 句中,as 原亦为连词,说它是关系代词也可以,因它可看作是 is (reading) 的宾语,全句结构同于: He is reading the same book *that* she is reading. 只是,前者 the same ... as 指“同一种”或“同名的一本(书等)”。后者即 one and the same ... that 同一个或同一本之意。

He was a Catholic, *as* were most of his friends. (Swan) 可译作“正如他的大多数朋友一样,他也是个天主教徒。” I am no orator, *as* Brutus is. (Shakespeare) 可译作“我根本不是像勃鲁塔斯那样的雄辩家。”以上二句中的 *as* 也可以说是关系代词,作定语从句中的表语,但多译作“正如(像)…那样”,就因为它原为连词——(Swan, 73 条)就仍然认为二句中 *as* 为连词,所引导从句表示“比较”(一般所说比较状语从句)。

David works hard, *as* do my brothers. (LDCE) 该词典讲句中 *as* 为代词,即关系代词,所任成分应为定语从句动词 *do* 的宾语,*do* 就应是及物动词。而结构相同的 He believed, *as* did all his family… 句中的 *as*, Swan (73 条)仍认为是连词, *did* 就是不及物动词。另一相仿句中 *as* 只能是连词: He ran away from home, *as* his brother had (run away) the year before. (ib) (不能说 *as* 是 *had* 的宾语)像一年前他的哥哥离家出走一样,他也离家出走了。

如上节所述, *As* he hoped, he saw the girl. 句中可以说关系代词 *as* 是 *hoped* 的宾语,但在把原被省略的成分加进去后,又可看出 *as* 本来是连词: (Just) *as* he hoped he would (see the girl), he saw the girl. (GCE) 正如他所希望的那样,他真的见到了这个姑娘。

因此我们说:由于 *as* 从句中与主句词语重复的部分经常省略,当略去名词性成分时,往往使 *as* 处于名词性成分的地位,从而使它取得关系代词的功能——既联系于主句词语,又作为从句主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语等成分。*as* 转作关系代词的这种讲法,可以更简便地概括有所省略的大量 *as* 从句几种句型的用法。

因不必与主句的一部或全句重复, *as* 从句中的表语、宾语、介词宾语较常省略,而更为关键的从句主语则较少省略(除与 *so*, *such*, *same* 等连用时 *as* 从句主语亦常略去外),故 *as* 指主句一部分或全句而代替从句主语的情况就比较少见。下列惯用简短从句实为古英语无人称动词句的残余(参见前节 9.3, 3 有关例句):

as (is/was) usual (with somebody)

as is/was natural/clear

as is/was often/always the case

as often happens/happened

as is well known

as is/was expected/required

as has been said before/pointed out

as will be shown in ... (被动形式的不同短句还较常见)

原无人称动词句本无主语,因而至今 as 后不可加 it,也不可把单数第三人称动词改为复数形式:

She put her long and elegant hands on his shoulders, *as was* her wont each evening, and kissed him on both cheeks in her French fashion. 这是她每晚的习惯,她总是把修长秀美的双手放在他两肩上,再按她们法国人的方式,吻吻他的左右两颊。

There were not so many casualties *as was* (不用 were) feared. (Wood) 伤亡人数不是像原来担心的那么多。

Objections were raised by a number of Opposition members, *as was* (不用 were) to be expected. (ib) 正如应该预料的那样,反对派一些成员提出了不同意见。

as follow, as regards 与 as seems best 都是连词 as 引导古无人称(方式/方面)状语从句的遗迹,中间都不能插入 it:

The chief points are *as follows*. (Wood) 诸要点如下。

I don't believe you *as regards* that. (岩波)关于那件事,我不能相信你的话。

As regards wheat, prices are rising. (ib) 至于小麦,价格看涨。

I shall act *as seems best*. (ALD) 我看情况尽量办好。

无人称动词句表示客观情况,没有主语,却可把有关该情况之人以人称代词宾格形式连用于动词,如古英语留下的 methinks,

meseems(Onions;现代德语、俄语等有同种说法):

Methinks (It seems to me) (that) I have heard them echo back.

(岩波)我觉得好像听到这些声音有回声传来。

此外,补上重要的一点:as象that一样,可指主句中一个表时间、处所或方式的名词,以其为先行词,而在定语从句中担任时间/处所/方式状语(不再是名词性成分)。不同于that的只是该as仅用在“so/such/same + 此类先行词”之后。有些语法书说这里的as为关系副词,我们认为不必再给它另一关系副词之名,关系代词that有相同的功能,一般不说that还是个关系副词:

He went away/back the same way (as) he came/had come. (as为从句状语) 他从他来的原路走了。

I went out the same way (as/that) I'd got in. (Swan)(as为状语, in为副词,修饰got)我从我进来的原路出去了。比较: We drove out of the town by the same road as we had entered by. (ALD) 句中as为介词by的宾语,可见应为名词性成分的关系代词as作状语似乎也像by that那样略去了介词。

Shall we meet at the same place as/that we last met? (以上三句中as为处所状语)咱们还在上次见面的老地方见面好吗?

Our eggs are sold the same day as/that they come in. (as为时间状语)我们的鸡蛋进货当天就卖出去。

We will support the struggle of the colonial peoples until such time as they win their complete independence. (as为时间状语)我们要支持各殖民地人民的斗争,直到他们取得完全独立的时候。

She dances in so graceful a manner as her sister does. (as为方式状语或看作连词)她跳舞跳得像她姐姐一样优美。

Old people do not feel the same about these things as the younger generation (does/feels). (as为方式状语)对于这些事,老年人

的想法和年轻的一代不同。

I shall not be surprised if he does this the same way *as* I do. (*as*, 方式状语)如果他办这件事和我的做法一样,我是不会感到奇怪的。

He answered with the same absolute simplicity *as* he was questioned. (Jespersen; *as*, 方式状语) 他的回答也像对方的问题那样极其简单。

注意:主句中 the same way 前多略介词,而 in the same manner, with the same simplicity 等则要使用介词。

9.4 *but* 由介词转作关系代词

but 在古英语时期就是连词(“但是”)兼介词(“除了…”)。后来在“否定句 + *but* + 代词…”的句型中,代词被略去,*but* 就成了具有“否定之否定”意义的关系代词:

There is no rule *but it/that* has exceptions. — There is no rule *but* has exceptions. (= There is no rule that does not have exceptions.) 没有无例外之规则,所有规则都有例外情况。

There is nothing else about me *but* what is intolerable. (Jespersen) — There is nothing about me *but* is intolerable. (= There is nothing about me that is not intolerable.) 我周围没有一事物不是不可容忍的(一切都可容忍)。

I see around me none *but* shipwrecked too. (= ... none *except those who* are shipwrecked too.) 我看见自己周围也都是乘船遇难的人们。

Not a tree, a bush, scarce a wild flowers in their path, *but* revived in Rosamund some recollection. (*but* 为从句主语) 在他们走过的小路上,没有一棵树,没有一处树丛,几乎没有一朵野花,不引起罗萨蒙某些回忆。

There's not a pond within five miles of the place *but* they can tell the taste of. (*but* 为介词 *of* 的宾语) 所有离这个地方 5 英里范围内的池塘水是什么味道的, 他们无不清楚。

Few of the men who were there *but* judged me a happy man. (There were few of the men... 主句有省略; 属否定意义) 那里几乎没有人否认我是个幸福的人(差不多都认为我是幸福的人)。

关系代词 *but* 也用于疑问句:

Who (is there) *but* knows it? (= Who is there that doesn't know it?) 谁不知道这事呢? (谁都知道啊!)

9.5—9.10 *who/which/that* 等的选择与“省略”

9.5 一般要用 *who/whom/whose* 的情况

限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句形式可能相似, 而意义大不相同:

{ There were very few passengers *who/that* escaped without serious injury. 没受重伤的乘客寥寥无几。

{ There were very few passengers, *who* escaped without serious injury. 乘客本来很少, 他们都侥幸没有受重伤。

{ He had four sons *who/that* became lawyers. (And two *who/that* became clergymen.) 他有四个当律师的儿子。(还有两个当牧师的儿子。)

{ He had four sons, *who* became lawyers. 他有四个儿子, 都当了律师。

在限制性定语从句中,指人关系代词要按所任从句成分,分别使用 *who/whom/whose* 或 *that*(非正式语、口语):

主语——一般用 *who*, 在非正式语且不太讲究礼貌、文雅时,可用 *that*。但当用关系代词指类属或性质时(不是指特定的个别人或人们),则要用 *which*(较正式语)或 *that*(非正式语):

He had gone over to meet a friend *who* was staying there. 他到那边去会见一位当时住在那里的朋友。

Any other woman would have done something — all except myself *who* am not a woman, but a peevish, ill-tempered, dried-up old maid. (myself *who* am... 从句谓语动词按先行词的数、人称变位)任何别的女人都会有些办法的——只是除我在外,我算不上是个女人,而是一个暴躁、易怒的、干瘪的老处女。

There is the driver *who/that* overtook us five minutes ago. 5分钟以前超我们的车的那个司机就在那里。

The country village and the urban housing estate both needed the very best men *which/that* can be found for them. (Schibsbye) (指性质、类属在正式语中用 *which*) 农村与城市住宅区都需要我们为之寻求可能找到的最优秀的人才。

表语 —— 限制性定语从句中,作表语的关系代词不仅指事物用 *which/that*, 而且指人也用 *which/that*, 不用 *who*。表示性质、类属时,可按正式或非正式语体用 *which* 或 *that*; 指特定的个别人时要用 *that*, 或“省略”、不用关系代词:

Shaw is commonly regarded as a funny man than as the revolutionary *which/that*, at bottom, he is. (Schibsbye) (指 the revolutionary, 类属) 一般都把萧看作滑稽人,不看作革命者,而骨子里他却是个革命者。

The mirror of his lovely lyrics shows you the man *that* he was in

reality. (ib) 他那美好的抒情诗如同一面镜子，为你反映出他真实的本人。

He would have revealed himself as the man (*that*) he really was.

(Jespersen) (指 the man, 特定个人) 他本来想要透露他实际是谁的。

宾语 —— 限制性定语从句中, 作宾语的指人关系代词, 在正式语要用 *whom*, 不予省略; 在非正式语用 *who* 或 *that*, 或“省略”不用关系代词:

Where is the man *whom* / (*who*) / (*that*) I saw this morning?

(Close) 我今天早晨看见的那人现在在哪儿?

The man *whom* we feared we had injured proved to be unharmed. 我们害怕我们碰伤了的那个人结果是没受伤。(比较: The man who we thought was guilty proved to be innocent. 其中 *we thought* 可看作插入的语气短语 = The man was guilty, we thought, but he proved to be innocent. 我们以为有罪的那人, 结果证明是无辜的。)

介词宾语 —— 限制性定语从句中, 作介词宾语的指人关系代词用 *whom* 或下列代用形式:

正式语: 从句前置介词 + *whom*

较正式: *whom*... 后置介词

非正式语: (*who*)... 后置介词

非正式、口语: (*that*)... 后置介词

Do you know the boy *to whom* your daughter writes? Do you

know the boy *whom* / (*who*) / (*that*) your daughter writes to?

(CGE) 你认识你的女儿常给他写信的那个男孩子吗?

Swan 提出 I think you should stay faithful to the person *whom* you're married to. (525) 是错的, 应说 I think you should stay faithful to the person (*who* / *that*) you're married to 或... to the person *to whom* you are married. 其实“*whom*... 后置介词”是可用的:

The boy *whom* / (*who*) / (*that*) the dog ran towards. . . (GCE)

Is that the man *whom* / (*who*) / (*that*) you gave your tickets to?
(Close) The boys *whom* / (*that*) I went to school *with* have all grown up. (EGS) He is one person *whom* I would never confide in. (Schibsbye) 他是我根本不会信任的一个人。

只是这种说法既不是正式用语,又不是最常用的非正式语、口语的说法。

所属关系定语 —— 限制性定语从句中,表示所属关系的定语,指属于人时用 *whose*; 指属于事物时用 *of which*。但 *of which* 用起来常觉不简便,于是指属于事物的所属关系也常用 *whose* 表示(在非限制性定语从句中也是这样):

He mentioned a book the title *of which* has slipped my memory.

He mentioned a book *whose* title has slipped my memory. (Close)

他提到一本书,书名我现已忘记。

He stood looking through some trees the shadows *of whose* trunks were spilled out along the ground. (不说 *the shadows of the trunks of which*) 他站在那里从树木中间望去,那些树干的影子洒落在地上。

The blend of liberal and national idealism is now reaching the shores of Africa and Asia in tidal waves, *whose* speed and intensity are making nonsense of slower, more considered policies. (非限制性定语从句)这种自由主义理想与民族主义理想的混合思想,现已随着大海的浪潮传到亚、非海岸,这浪潮的速度与力量使各种动作迟慢、审慎从事的政策都失去了意义。

另外,英语惯于把某些名词看作既可属于“指人”,又可属于“指事物”的名词,如表示国家、民族的名词、指婴幼儿的名词、指家禽或者家畜的名词,以及船只的名称等。定语从句以这些名词为先行词时,关系代词就既可以用 *who* 等,又可以用 *which*。

国家、民族：

Japan, *who* but yesterday emerged from the medieval rule, is today showing what wisdom she has acquired. 日本, 昨天刚刚从中世纪的封建统治下解脱出来, 今天已在显示她所取得的智慧。

Italy, *which* entered the war in May 1915, attacked Austria from the south. 1915年5月参战的意大利从南边攻打奥地利。

Britain also gave enormous sums to her allies *who* were struggling against Napoleon. 英国也向其正同拿破仑作斗争的盟国提供了大量资助。

We are happy to receive him not merely because he represents an ally *to which* we are bound by warm friendship and respect. 我们很高兴接待他, 不仅因为他代表着一个与我们有着热诚友好关系, 并为我们所尊敬的盟国。

婴幼儿：

Any boy *who* wants to can learn to swim. (boy 指稍大儿童) 任何想学游泳的男孩子都能学会。

Livia had just been delivered of twin boys, *of which*, by the way Sejanus seems to have been the father. (指婴儿) 莉维雅刚生了一对孪生男孩, 说起来, 色占纳好像是孩子的父亲。

家禽、家畜等：

Leotard had a cat of his own *whom/which* both he and Blanche doted on. 柳塔自己有一只猫, 他和勃兰奇都很喜爱这只猫。They must be swallows who have come back from the south. (RHD) 那一定是从南方回来的燕子吧。

船只等：

"Yankee" has won four matches over "Rainbow", *who* has not won any races. "扬基号" 胜过 "彩虹号", 4 次比赛获胜, "彩虹号" 一次也没获胜。

London heard the enemy destroying the fine ships, *which* Charles II had laid up. 在伦敦,人们听到敌人在炸毁查理二世停泊在那里的精良的船只。

9.6 一般只用 *which* 的情况

在非限制性定语从句中,指事物关系代词一般只用 *which*。非限制性定语从句前有停顿,书面上有逗号或分号(偶见句号)。但并非所有前有停顿(逗号等)的定语从句都属非限制性,下列二句中定语从句是限制性的(可从意义上看出),前有逗号为的是把插入语隔开:

A civilization, today common to the whole world, *that* allows such crime to proceed unchecked deserves to perish, and inevitably will. 一种对这样的罪行不予制止、任其泛滥的社会——这样的社会今天在全世界还很普通——是应该灭亡,也必定要灭亡的。

It was just the sort of place, he reflected whimsically, *which* his aunt had loved to write about in her books. 他很古怪地回想起来:这正是他的姑姑爱在书里描写的那种地方。

但也偶见有人在非限制性定语从句前使用关系代词 *that*:

I looked at Mary's sad face, (a face) *that* I had once so passionately loved. (CGEL) 我望着玛丽忧伤的面貌,这面貌我一度那样地热爱过。

不过,在本来属于非限制性定语从句的“*that* I know”之类惯用短句中又只能用 *that*:

I never was hand and glove with him, *that* I remember. 在我的记忆中,我从来没和他有什么勾搭。

He took a book sometimes, but never read it *that* I saw. (*that* 前可无停顿,书面上可无逗号)他有时拿着一本书,可是就我所

看到的,那书他却从来没读过。

He had no particular liking, *that* I could discover, for anything.

就我所见,他没有特殊爱好,什么都不大喜爱。

My father has not, *that* I can think of, left his fellow. 按我的想法,我父亲并没有离开他的伙伴。

which 所引导的非限制性定语从句,也有时插在主句中间,甚至置于主语前(连词等后),指后边主句的一部分或整个主句:

He hung around for hours and, *which* was worse, kept me from doing my work. 他在我这里闲呆了几个小时,更糟糕的是,他让我无法工作。

I'm interested in wine. And — *which* is the point — I know that the wine is always there. 我对酒很感兴趣。而关键问题是:我知道这酒总有的是。

Change of meaning may also be effected, by means of figurative language, or *which* is a similar process, the use of a concrete term for an abstract conception. 也可以用比喻语言这一方法促使意义上发生变化,或用(这是一种相似的方法)以表具体事物的词语代表抽象概念的办法。

Primarily, *which* is very notable and curious, I observe that men of business rarely know the meaning of the word "rich". 首先,我看到,商人们很少有人懂得“富裕”这个字眼的意义,这很明显又很奇怪。

which 在非限制性定语从句中除可作主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语外,还可以作定语:

She spoke in French, *which* language I did not understand. 她说法语,这种语言我是不懂的。

Possibly they're all lying, in *which* case it's hopeless and we might as well give up! 可能他们都在说谎,那样的话,就没有希望了,我们还是放弃原来的打算吧!

非限制性定语从句,指人关系代词一般用 *who*,但当所指不是具体的人,而是人的性质或类属时,则要用 *which*(在限制性定语从句中指人的性质,类属时用 *which/that*,见本节后面及下节):

They made him king, *which* he had long wanted to be. 他们推举他为国王,他早有为王的愿望。

John is a soldier, *which* I should also like to be. (RHD) 约翰是个军人,我也想当军人。

which 还可兼用于指人、指事物两种先行词: the persons and events *which* we have to deal with (RHD, that 条)

在限制性定语从句中, *which* 多可与 *that* 交替使用,仅作介词宾语时, *which* 可带前位介词或后位介词,而 *that* 不可带前位介词、只能跟有后位介词。比较 *which* 任各种成分的情况:

which 指事物	which 指人(性质、类属)
<p>Marks were discovered near the bedroom window, <u>which</u> the constable insisted had been made by a dog. (从句主语 <i>which</i> 代表 marks) 卧室窗户旁边发现有些痕迹,警察坚持说这些痕迹是一只狗留下来的。</p>	<p>All his conversation was a dialogue with himself or that little doppelganger <u>which</u> stood invisibly to one side of the people. (主语) 他的谈话全是自言自语,或者是在同那看不见的、站在人们一边的、他自己的小小出窍魂灵交谈。</p>
<p>We begin to take note of whims, fancies, peculiarities on the part of the essayist <u>which</u> light up the prim, impeccable countenance of the moralist. (主语,隔人指事物) 我们开始注意这位杂文作家的奇思、想象与特色,就是这些把那位道学家一本正经、无懈可击的面貌表现得十分鲜明。</p>	<p>John is not the scholar <u>which/that</u> James is. (表语) 詹姆士是位学者,约翰可不是那种人物。</p> <p>He had no relation with his home, not this man <u>which</u> he now was. (表语) 他同他的家没有关系,现在他就是这样一种人,这种人不是要家的。</p>
<p>There is one point that I would like to make <u>which</u> will interest the House. (that... which 连用) 有一个论点我愿提出,这一论点会使议院感到兴趣的。</p>	<p>比较: She is not the silly girl <u>that</u> she was. (<i>that</i> 所担任从句表语,表示实际的特定之人,而不像 <i>which</i> 是指类属) 她不是以前原来那傻乎乎的女孩子了。</p>

which 指事物	which 指人(性质、类属)
<p>If we stand firm, his threats will be seen as the empty words <u>which</u> they really are. (表语) 如果我们坚定不移,他的恫吓就会被看破,他的恫吓本来就是一套空话。</p> <p>The House of Lords falls short of that perfection <u>which</u> abstract political theory would require. (宾语,用 <u>which</u> 避免 <u>that</u> 的重复) 上议院不是像抽象政治理论所要求的那样完美无瑕。</p> <p>A report of <u>which</u> half/half of <u>which</u> was false deceived them. (介词宾语:不说 of that) 一个半属虚假的报告欺骗了他们。</p> <p>There are few things of <u>which</u> man stands in more fear than the absence of noise. (介词宾语) 几乎没有什么比绝对寂静更让人害怕了。</p>	<p>I was surprised to find Tom a different man from the one <u>which/that</u> I used to know. (宾语) 我很惊讶发现汤姆不是我原来熟知的那种人了。</p> <p>He is exactly the man <u>which</u> such an education was likely to form. (宾语) 他正是这样的教育会培养出来的那种人。</p> <p>The more sophisticated steelworkers — of <u>which</u> Port Talbot has many delightful samples — suggest that the company's decision is an overture to the Common Market battle. (Schibsbye) (介词宾语) 要用技术更高超的炼钢工——这样的工人可喜的代表,朴塔堡这里拥有很多——这说明公司的决定是共同市场贸易战的序曲。</p>

9.7 一般只用或多用 that 的情况

that 是历史最久,使用最广的关系代词,特别是在口语和非正式语中。在限制性定语从句中,除以若干代词限定的名词为先行词时多用 that 为关系代词(见下节)外,先就关系代词担任从句各种成分而论,有很多情况一般只用或多用 that(指特定人或事物的表语、指时间/处所/方式/原因的状语一般只用 that;指人或指事物的宾语及跟后位介词的介词宾语一般多用 that)。即使关系代词作从句主语时,也有些情况无论指人或指事物都只用或多用 that。现按所任成分分述如下:

1) 主语 —— 作从句主语的 that,当说话人选用较温文有礼或较为正式的语体时,多可换作 who/which,但在指人的性质、类属时,一般不用 who,而只用 that(即使正式语中,用 which 作主语指人的

类属的也很少见):

The soldiers *that* captured the post subsequently withdrew.

(GCE) 攻占了那个堡垒的士兵们随即撤退了。

They give prizes to the boys *that* have the best manners. (井上)

他们给最有礼貌的孩子发奖品。

谚语、格言讲的是普遍道理,因而其中定语从句指人主语是指一类人,而不是特定的个别人,原只用关系代词 *that*,仅后来有较少谚语、格言中,定语从句指人主语用 *who*:

He *that* respects not is not respected. 不知敬人的,人也不敬他。

He *that* goes a borrowing goes a sorrowing. 常借账,常心慌。

He *that* mischief hatches, mischief catches. 害人先害己。

He *that* will not when he may, when he will he shall have nay.

可要他不要,要时捞不到。

He is lifeless *that* is faultless. 只要活着,总有过错。

He needs a long spoon *that* sups with the devil. 跟魔鬼一起喝汤,得使一把长汤匙。(和坏人打交道必须手段高强)。

He was a bold man *that* first ate an oyster. 头一个吃牡蛎的真是位大胆之人。

He laughs best *that/who* laughs last. 最后笑的人,笑得最开心。

She is always married too soon *who* gets a bad husband, and she is never married too late *who* gets a good one. (Defoe) 碰上一个坏丈夫,出嫁总嫌太早;能得一位好丈夫,出嫁总不算迟。

在以 *be*(表示“存在”)为谓语的“*that be/is*”或“(that) there is”之类定语从句中,从句主语只能用 *that*,不用 *who/which*:

The decisions are in the hands of the powers *that* be. (RHD) 决定权在掌权的当局手中。

Mrs. Dombey *that* is to be will be very sensible of your attention.

(Dickens) 对于你的注意,这位未来的唐贝夫人将是非常敏

感的。

Right (*that was*) now is wrong, and wrong *that was* is right.

(Jespersen) 过去是正确的,而现在却错了,而过去是错误的,而现在成了正确的。

She was away back in the life *that* had been. (RHD) 她完全沉浸在对过去生活的回忆中。

I asked for the best book (*that*) there was on the subject.

(Eckersley) 我提出要看有关这一问题的最优秀著作。

He took all (*that*) there was. (ALD) 所有的他都拿走了。

This is the only one (*that*) there is. (Hornby) 这是此处仅有的一个。

That's all (*that*) there is to it. 如此而已。

My children have had every complaint (*that*) there is to be had.

我的孩子们抱怨这、抱怨那,所有可抱怨的都提到了。

当关系代词 *that* 为从句主语而从句为 *there be* “存在句”时, *that* 无论在什么语体,通常都“略去”不用;而当先行词为主句主语而主句为 *there be* “存在句”时,关系代词 *that/who* 在口语中常“略去”不用(见下节表 2 各例)。

另外,当主句中已有 *who/what/which* 时(不管主句为疑问句或陈述句),限制性定语从句一般只用 *that* 引导,以避免 WH-语音的重复,该 *that* 多为从句主语,也可为从句宾语等成分:

Who *that* had been there for but a few hours could ever forget?

在那里即使只呆了几个小时,谁会忘记那情景呢?

Who was the man (*that*) called a moment ago? 刚才来访的那个

男人是谁?

What man is there *that* has not some things in life to complain of?

什么人生活里没有一些可抱怨的事呢?

Which is the car *that* overtook us? 哪辆是曾超车越过我们的小

汽车?

He wouldn't say who or what it was *that* bothered him. 他不肯说明,是谁或是什么事在烦扰着他。

I told him whom it was *that* they had helped to rescue. (that, 从句宾语)我告诉他了,他们帮助援救的是什么人。

2)表语 —— 作限制性定语从句表语的关系代词大都使用 *that* (指人不用 *who*, 仅限正式语才用 *which* 指人或事物的性质、类属)。*that* 担任定语从句表语,不仅能指特定的个别人或个别事物,也可含指其类属意义:

He was at heart still the peasant *that* his forebears had been. 他在内心里,仍然是像他的祖先一样,是农民。

Even the queen is not the central figure *that* she once was. 甚至女王也不是从前那样的中心人物了。

If he is the murderer (*that*) I think him (to be), we have done no more than is just. (*that* 为定语从句的宾语补语,即复合宾语中 *him* 的表语;此句中 *that* 指特定的个人)我认为他就是那个凶手,如果他是凶手,那么我们所做的全都是正当的。

My calculator is not the machine *that* it was. 我的计算器已不是它原来那个样子了。

“名词、形容词 + *that*(从句表语)引导的定语从句”可以表示感叹,还可以表示评论、原因或“让步(“虽然……)”意义:

Beast *that* I was, to trust him! (评论)我真是混蛋,竟相信他!

Oh, miserable, unhappy *that* I am! 啊,我是多么凄惨,多么不幸!

You recovered the estate easily enough then, robber and rascal *that* you are. 那么你轻而易举地弄回了这份产业,你真是个强盗,是个无赖!

But Philemon, simple and kind-hearted old man *that* he was, had

not many secrets. (评论或原因)但是,费列芒,他真是个单纯而好心的老人,并没有多少秘密。

Child *that/as* he was, he knew what was the right thing to do.
(让步)他虽然是个孩子,却也知道怎么办才对。

Naked *that/as* I was, I braved the storm. (GCE; 表示让步更常用 *as* 或 *though*) 我虽然没穿衣服,也冒着暴风雨跑去。

3) 宾语 —— 作限制性定语从句宾语的关系代词,不但指人或事物的类属时多用 *that* (比用 *which* 普遍),而且指特定的人或事物也多用 *that*,这就避免了过分正式的 *whom* (*which* 也较正式)和不属宾格的 *who*:

I am not the sort of man *that* women love. (类属)我不是女人们喜爱的那种男人。

Then the nurse, an awkward, plain girl *that* nobody helped, tumbled out by herself. 然后那保姆,一个动作蠢笨、不太漂亮的姑娘,没有人搀扶她,自己跌跌撞撞地下来了出来。

He has little talent for pictorial description: the ladies *that* he loves are, visually speaking, almost interchangeable: 他没有什么形象化描绘的才能:他所爱的那些女人,从外貌上说来,几乎都可以互相替换。

4) 介词宾语 —— 作限制性定语从句介词宾语的关系代词多用 *that* (或“略去”不用),后跟后位介词;这样可以避免不那么简便的“介词 + *which*”,可以避免选择过分正式的 *whom* 或不属宾格的 *who*:

the table *that* the boy crawled under (那孩子往那下边爬的那张桌子)

the boy *that* the dog ran towards (狗向他跑去的那个男孩子)

They are the boys (*that*) I went to school with. 他们就是我跟着一起上学去的男孩子们。

This is the house (*that*) he stood in front of. (GCE) 这就是他曾
在房前边站着的那所房子。

但 *besides*, *during*, *in spite of* 等不能后置(参见 9.10, 1 表后说明): That was the meeting *during which* I kept falling asleep. 不能改为 * That was the meeting that I kept falling asleep during. (就是在那次会议上,我总是打瞌睡。)

尤其是当关系代词兼指人与事物两种先行词时,更多使用 *that* (作从句各种名词性成分):

I made notes of the people and places *that* excited my interest.
(主语) 我把引起我兴趣的人和地方记了下来。

9.8 先行词为某些代词、形容词限定的名词时

当先行词为“某些代词、形容词等 + 名词”或先行词为名词性代词、而所表示的是唯一的、全部的定量的或无有的人或事物时,限制性定语从句的关系代词(指人或事物)一般多用 *that*, 指人也可以用 *who*。主句以 *There is/Here is/That is/It is* 等引导先行词时,关系代词亦多用 *that*, 也可以用 *who*, 但一般“省略”(实际上是本来不用)。

1) 先行词指唯一特定的人或事物 —— 由形容词、序数词、代词 *the only*, *the very*, *the first*, *the last*, *the next*, *the same*, *the best* 等(形容词最高级)及 *such*, *this* 所限定的名词:

Adrian the Fourth is the only Englishman *that* has become Pope.
亚德里安四世是唯一当了教皇的英国人。

I was the only child of my parents *who* have survived. 我是我父母所生的唯一活下来的孩子。

The very people *that/who* used to love her hate her now. 不仅别人,就是那些过去喜欢她的人们,现在也都恨她了。

Which was the first/next/fastest steamship *that* crossed the Atlantic? 横渡大西洋的第一艘/下一艘/当时最快的汽船是哪只船?

Teachers are the last persons on earth *that/who* can believe all men are born equal. 教师们是最不会相信“人人生来皆平等”的人了。

I attend the same school *that/as* he does. 我和他在一个学校上学。

It's the best film *that* has ever been on the subject of madness. 这是已有的疯人题材影片中最好的一部。

He's the greatest man *that/who* has ever lived. 他是有史以来最伟大的人物。

Such loud and lamentable cries were heard as we walked along the streets, *that* would pierce the very heart to think of. 我们走在街上时可以听到那样凄惨的高声呼喊,那喊叫声只要想来就使人心寒。

On which side had he cast the weight of his opinion — this man *that/whom* we had never seen? 他那颇有分量的意见是赞助了哪一边呢 —— 我们从没见过的这个人?

They asked themselves in whispers what man this was *that* came among them with so sad an expression. 他们悄悄地互相询问:跟他们一起来的这满面愁容的人是谁?

This *that* Knox did for his nation, we may really call a resurrection as from death. 诺克斯为自己的国家所作的这一贡献,我们真可以说就是使国家起死回生了。

2)先行词指某一情况下的全部人或事物——以代词“all, any, every, whatever, whichever (+ 名词)”或 any-, every-复合代词为先行词:

All *that/who* had resented his superciliousness were triumphant because his pride had had a fall. 所有对他的傲慢感到不满的人都兴高采烈, 因为他的傲气有些消退了。

They had swept the country of all *that* could be collected, *which* was esteemed fit for their master's table. (避免重复, 后用 *which*) 他们在全国把所有被认为适于摆上主人餐桌, 而能搜罗到的东西, 都给搜刮净尽了。

Anyone *that* knows anything knows this. 任何人懂得一点道理的都懂得这一点。

Have you got anything *that* belongs to me? 你那儿有我的什么东西吗?

I owe more undiluted happiness to him than to any man *that* ever lived. 为了我所得到的纯真美好的幸福, 我感谢他胜过感谢任何人。

Whatever I had within me *that* was romantic and dreamy was encouraged. (Jespersen) 我心中任何浪漫的, 虚幻的想法都得到(他的)鼓舞。

Take whichever book *that* you like. 你喜欢哪本书, 就拿哪本书。

In that far-off time superstition clung easily round every person or thing *that* was all unwonted. 在那久远的时代, 迷信思想很容易随着十分异常的人或事物而产生。

People asked him to fix everything *that* needed repairing. 所有需要修理的东西, 大家都让他修。

Your profession frightens every woman *that/who* is not a fury. 任何妇女只要不是泼妇, 都会被你的职业吓坏的。

“those (+ 名词)”也可以说某一情况下的全部人或事物, 它所接定语从句一般也不用 *which* 作关系代词:

Those *who* think must govern those *that* toil. 劳心者治人, 劳力者治于人。

The Wood Gods are rather horrible to those *who* molest them — horrible perhaps to those *that* believe in them. (Schibsbye) (believe 依 those 属动词复数形式) 这些林间的神仙对于骚扰他们的人们是很可怕的 —— 或许对相信这些神仙的人才是可怕的。

Life is full of perils, but the wise man ignores those *that* are inevitable. (are 依 those 属复数形式) 人生充满危险, 但对不可避免之事, 聪明人并不在意。

Many *that* heard him on Sunday at Lincoln's inn went to St. Lawrence Jewry on the following Tuesday in the hope of hearing the same sermon over again. (Schibsbye) 星期日在林肯客店听过他讲道的许多人, 在星期二来到圣劳伦斯犹太居民区, 希望把这次讲道再听一遍。

His writings contain little *that* is new and startling, and much *that* is old and even trite. 他的作品中新颖、奇异的东西很少, 陈旧甚至陈腐的东西太多。

All the few friends *that* I have here have been very kind to me. (What few friends I have here...) 我在这里的不太多的朋友对我都非常照顾。

3) 先行词指无有的人或事物 —— 以否定代词 no one, none, nothing 为先行词, 或以 no 等所限定的名词为先行词:

There is no one *that* I know of, who deserves to love you. 我所知道的没有一个人配得上爱你。

No heart is pure *that* is not passionate. 没有热情的心灵都不是纯真的。

There is not one *who* knew him, I believe, *that* will not give

cheerfully. 我相信原来认识他的人将没有一个不是乐意捐助的。

Nothing should be done in a hurry **that** can be done slowly. 任何可以从容做好的事情都不应该匆忙从事。

In fact there was **nothing**, **which** really mattered **that** Jack could not do. (which 可与 that 轮换使用) 事实上,任何真正重要的事,没有一件是杰克办不到的。

顺便提及,如先行词为 some(+ 名词)或 something(并非强调特定、全部、定量、无有、不属以上 1—4 条),则关系代词用 that 或 which 都很常见:

Some (universities) **which** were originally private are now partly or wholly supported by the municipalities. 有些(大学)原属私立,现也部分或全部由各地市政当局资助。

something which/that made an impression on them (RHD) 某些给他们较深印象的东西。

Death control is not something **which** can be provided by a few technicians. 使公众祛病延年并非少数专业人员能够办到的事。

There's **something** about him, every now and then, **which** shows me he's got pluck somewhere in him. 在他身上有某种表现,常常显示出来,使我看到他心胸里还是蕴藏着勇气。

4) 在主句中,以 There/Here is 等引导先行词,表示“有着、存在”某种人或事物,或者以 That/It is 等引导先行词,表示“那是”某种人或事物时——先行词为主句 There/Here is... (存在句)的主语时,关系代词多用 that,也可用 who,口语中常“略去”(比较:从句为存在句时,关系代词为从句主语,只用 that,口语或书面语一般都“略去”不用,见上节 9.7,1 后面)。先行词为主语 That/It is... 的表语时,关系代词也多用 that,可用 who,口语中亦常“省略”不用:

There's something (*that*) keeps upsetting him. 有什么事一直烦扰着他。

There is somebody (*who*) wants you on the telephone. (ALD) 有人打电话找你。

Here's an old gouty chair of my grandfather's (*that*) will answer the purpose. 有一把我祖父的、又旧又破的椅子可以干这个用。

There was never any army (*that*) had their men stand in better battle array. 从来没有一支军队的士兵的战斗队形摆布得这么好的。

There are very surprising things happen in this world. (Fielding) 这个世界上常有非常惊人的事情发生。(happen 前略去了 that)

下列 That/This/It is 等引导先行词的句子,有些属于分裂句(cleft sentences, 即特殊强调结构),如关系代词为从句主语,把 That/This/It is 和关系代词一起略去,句子仍属完整,而且意义不变;但也有些不属于分裂句,试作上述省略时,句子就不完整,意义就会变动:

Was it/*that* someone (*that/who*) brought you a note? (分裂句,相当于 Someone brought you a note?) 是有人给你带个条子来了吗?

This is the man (*that/who*) has written the article himself. (不同于 The man has written the article himself.) 就是这个人他自己写的这篇文章。

It's this sort of book *that* is banned here. (分裂句,相当于 This sort of book is banned here.) 就是这种书,在这里是禁书。

It's the sort of book *that* people hide. (LDCE) (不是分裂句,不能简略地说 The sort of book people hide. 或 People hide the sort of book.) 那是人们总要藏起来的那种书。

It's a thing (*that*) happens once in a blue moon. 这种事是百年不遇的。

That's a thing (*that*) might happen to anyone. 这种事可能发生在任何人身上。

That's all (*that*) is the matter with me. (Jespersen) 对我说来, 有问题的就是这些。

9.9 time when 与 time that 的不同用途

疑问副词 when, where, why 还可用作关系副词引导定语从句, 从句的先行词分别为表示时间的名词(time, day 等)、表示处所的名词(place 等)、表示原因的名词(reason)。关系副词担任从句中的时间状语、处所状语、原因状语:

It happened the day *when/that* I was born. 这事就发生在我出生的那天。

That's the place *where/that* I tried out the new car. 这就是我试验新车的地方。

This is the reason *why/(that)* he came. 这就是他到这里来的原因。

在某些情况下, 关系副词 when, where, why 可换作关系代词 that。我们说 that 在此仍为关系代词是因为与 that 连用的介词被省略了: ... the day *that* I was born (on)... the place *that* I tried out the new car (at)... the reason *that* he came (for)。比较: the day *on which* I was born... The place *at which* I tried out the new car... the reason *for which* he came. (介词 + which 的说法用得较少)。

但在很多情况下, 那三个关系副词不可换作关系代词 that。让我们先以 time when/time that 等为代表, 研究一下关系副词 when 与相应的 that(从句状语)的不同用途:

关系副词 when 所限定的 time 等(带定冠词或不定冠词或为无冠词复数)先行词为句子重点——先行词多为主语、表语、宾语;指的是听话人未知的新信息或说话人想让对方注意的中心事物

The time when such things could happen is gone. (先行词为主语)会发生那种事的时代已经过去了。

There was a time when man never cooked his food. 过去有个时期,人类一直不会弄熟食吃。

There are times when joking is not permissible. 有些时候,是不容许开玩笑的。

I decided that this was a moment when no stranger should intrude. (表语)我决定,这样的时刻,任何外人不得干扰。

It was one of those cold, wet evenings when most people stay indoors. (ALD) 那是一个寒冷、下着雨的晚上,那样的晚上大多数人都呆在家里。

It's a sort of day when we'd like to stay in bed. (LDCE) 那是那种天气,要是赶上那种天气时,我们喜欢躺着不起床。

关系代词 that 所限定的 the time 等(带定冠词)先行词并非句子重点——先行词多为介词宾语或略去介词形成的状语;定语从句及先行词所指是听话人已知的、确定的时间

By the time (that) I arrived they had already left. (先行词为介词宾语)(By the time that... 近似于连词引导状语从句: They had already left before I arrived.) 我来到时,他们已经走了。

The moment (that) I saw you coming I came out to meet you. (状语)(比较可用复合连词引导的状语从句: As soon as I saw you coming...) 我一见你来了,立刻就出来迎接你。

I had given it to her the same night (that) she talked so foolishly. (状语)她说那样的傻话的当天夜晚,我就把那东西给她了。

On the day that I retire I shall receive a cheque for a thousand pounds. (介词宾语)在我退休的那天,我将得到一张一千镑的支票。

关系副词 *when* 所限定的 *time* 等(带定冠词或不定冠词或为无冠词复数)先行词为句子重点——先行词多为主语、表语、宾语;指的是听话人未知的新信息或说话人想让对方注意的中心事物

There are cases when politeness cuts deeper than impertinence. (主语)有些情况,彬彬有礼比粗鲁傲慢能更深地刺伤人心。

I'm looking forward to the day when I retire. (短语动词 look forward to 的宾语)我在盼望着我退休的那一天。

Do you remember the day when you knocked a policeman's helmet off? (Erados)(宾语)你还记得你把一个警察的头盔打落在地的那一天吗?

关系代词 *that* 所限定的 *the time* 等(带定冠词)先行词并非句子重点——先行词多为介词宾语或略去介词形成的状语;定语从句及先行词所指是听话人已知的、确定的时间

It happened the day that you knocked that policeman's helmet off. (状语)事情就发生在你把那个警察头盔打掉的那天。

比较: Take your coat in case it rains. (= ... lest it rains. LDCE) Take your dancing shoes in case you decide to go dancing. (= because you might decide..., ib) (虽然 *case* 也表时间,二句中已不用 *in the case that*, *in case* 已转为复合连词)拿着外衣以防下雨。拿着舞鞋,也许你到时候想去跳舞。

Then ***the day*** came when I had to leave. 句中, *the day* 为主语, *when* 不可换为 *that*, 而 He died ***on the day when/that*** his son arrived. 句中, *the day* 为介词宾语。用 *when* 时,强调 *the day when* his son arrived, 可回答 On which day? 的问题;而用 *that* 时可能不是强调 *the day that...*, 而是强调 *died*, 回答 What happened to him on the day that his son arrived? 的问题。

但当“*day/time* 等 + *that*”中的先行词 *day* 或 *time* 等担任主句表语或宾语时,该定语从句与所限定先行词可为句子重点:

That was ***the day that he left*** (on). (CGE) 那就是他走的那一天。

Can you tell me *the exact time (that)* the exhibition opens? 你能告诉我展览会开幕的确切时间吗?

特别是当 *time* 不带冠词、作表语时,在 *It's time that...* 中表明听话人不明其属性(该干什么了)的时候,该定语从句与先行词为句子重点:

It's time that you should once more enjoy life. 现在你应该再度享受生活的乐趣了。

Is it not *high time that this question should be gone into?* 难道现在不急需对这一问题进行研究吗?

作表语的 *about time*(该 *time* 本身为介词宾语)同样可为句子重点:

It is *about time (that) the thing should be done.* 事情差不多该办了。

It's *about time (that) she found out what that reason is.* (RHD) 大概现在她该了解一下那是什么原因了。

询问方式的疑问副词 *how* 不能用作关系副词引导定语从句,来限定 *way, manner* 等名词。这些表方式名词后要接用 *that*(多略去)或 *in which*(用于正式说法)引导的定语从句:

This is the way (*that*)/*in which* he did it. (或者说 This is how he did it. 用连接副词 *how* 引导名词性关系从句)这件事,他就是以这种方式办的。

She spells the words in the very same manner *that/as* they are pronounced in the local dialect. 这些词,她的拼写方式和当地方言的发音一样。

If only he had seen the matter in the same light *that* I did! 他看这个问题,要是用和我同样的眼光那就好了!

9.10 关系代词的省略

正像宾语从句等名词从句可以不用连词 *that* 引导而直接连于主句一样,定语从句本来就有不用关系代词 *that* 等引导而直接连于主句的,在讲求简洁的口语中尤为常见,特别是当主、从句相接而主句中的先行词兼作从句的表语、宾语、介词宾语、状语等(即非主语的)情况下: *She is not the cheerful woman she used to be.* (*the cheerful woman* 属于主句,作为先行词兼任从句表语;如其后用 *that* 引导从句, *that* 即从句表语)她现在不是过去那样,一个总是高高兴兴的女人了。

有些语法著作把直接连于主句的定语从句叫做触合从句 (*contact clauses*)。一般语法书把不用关系代词说成是“省略”关系代词——这么讲也可以,只是应该弄清,这种“省略”并不是较晚才有的次要表现法。古时英语口语中,定语从句常随便连于主句,不用关系代词:

Was never widow had so dear a loss. (Shakespeare) (= *There was never a widow who had such a dear loss.*) 从来没有一个寡妇经受过这样重大的损失。(先行词兼从句主语)

以下二表归纳关系代词“省略”不用的各种情况。第一表中,先行词兼任从句表语、宾语、介词宾语、状语(一般可以不用关系代词);第二表中,先行词兼任从句主语(仅在几种特殊情况下可以不用关系代词)。

先行词兼(或者说所缺关系代词如果补上应为)从句几种非主语成分:

表语	<p>You said he was <u>everything</u> a man should be. 你说他是个尽善尽美的男人。</p> <p>She was <u>twice</u> the man her son was. 她一个人顶她的儿子两个人干活。</p>
宾语	<p>I feel as though I were beginning to be able to use <u>that power</u> (I feel) I've got inside me. 我觉得好像我已经能运用(自己感到)业已拥有的威力。(that power 兼任插入句 I feel 后定语从句 I've got... 的宾语)</p> <p>先行词相当插入句宾语者: Grace would look up <u>things</u> she thought would take his interest. 葛丽思常常搜寻她认为会使他感兴趣的東西。<u>Many of those qualities</u> we think are typical of Americans in general were the result of this frontier life. 我们认为一般美国人特有的那些品质中,有多种品质正是这种拓边生活的产物。</p>
介词 宾语	<p>I've marked on the orders <u>the time</u> they should hand them in by. 我在命令上标明了他们送还命令的最后期限。The robber found himself in exactly <u>the same position</u> he had formerly forced me into. 那狗强盗发觉自己正好陷入了他原来迫使我陷入的处境。</p>
状语	<p><u>The first time</u> we went away he was somewhere between a kitt and a cat. 我们第一次走的时候,它还是个半大不大的小猫。That's <u>one reason</u> he likes to come. 这是他喜欢来的原因之一。I certainly do admire <u>the way</u> you managed to see both sides of the question. 我确实赞赏你能看到问题两方面的那种思想方法。</p>

介词(包括复合介词)指具体关系时多置后位,短语动词(已形成固定搭配)所含介词虽指抽象关系亦常置后位,介词所在的定语从句前关系代词 that 可略:

He protects his head with *something* (*that*) Neolithic man was probably without, namely, an old bowler hat. 他戴着新石器时代人类大概没有的一种东西,即一旧圆顶礼帽,来保护脑瓜。

The conversation had been carried on chiefly in French, *a language* (*that*) Mr. Stewart was perfectly acquainted with.

谈话主要是用法语进行的,这语言斯图阿特先生十分熟悉。

I'm not *the sort of fellow* a young girl *falls in love with*. 我不是年轻姑娘会爱上的那种人。

This is *the garden* he stood *in front of*/he used to *take care of*.
这就是他曾在那园门前边站着的那个花园/他过去一直照管的那个花园。

He had a trick of declaring that he never heard of *things* (that) everybody else was well aware of. 他会玩那种把戏:别人都一清二楚的事,他声称他从来没听说过。

而介词(特别是前加其它词语的介词)指抽象关系时不可置于后位,而要在前位使用,形成“介词+ 关系代词 *which/whom*”的模式:

Jane was a woman *with whom* age did not count. 珍恩是那样一种女人,在她们来说年龄都不算数。

There are only four people *of which* (指量) I am one. (Schibsbeye)
只有四个人,我是其中之一。

It's full of opinions not one *of which* they even understand.
(Wilder) 里边满是种种意见,他们连一条也不懂。

His bright dark eyes proclaimed him a personality compared *with whom* all the other men around the table were conventional dummies. 他那双明亮的黑眼睛显示着他是个突出人物,与他相比,饭桌周围所有的男人都不过是因袭陈规的笨蛋而已。

某些由形容词、副词、分词转来的介词一般不后置,如 *opposite, round, outside, beyond, besides, during, considering, concerning* 等。因后置可能误解它们仍用作形容词、副词、分词,弄不清句中词语关系:

He turned to the door *outside which* the two servants were hovering. (不说 * ... the door (which/that) the two servants were hovering outside.) 他转向那个有两名仆人等在外边的

房门。

由连词转作介词的 *than*(也属指抽象关系)不能后置:

You know the state of my mind *than which* nothing is more fixed on this earth. 你知道我的心情,世界上没有任何东西比我的决心更坚定的了。

2) 先行词兼从句主语(或者说所缺关系代词如果补上应为从句主语)(参见 9.7,1 后一部分):

<p>主句为存在句 There/Here is...等; 或为 That/It is...等, Who/What is...等 (口语中常不用关系代词)</p>	<p><u>There is no one</u> enjoys good food more than he does. 没有人比他更酷爱美味佳肴的了。 <u>Here's Mr. Maldon</u> begs the favour of a word. 马尔顿先生请您和他谈谈。 <u>Who was that</u> (that) called a few minutes ago? 刚才来访的那个人是谁? But <u>what's it</u> makes the poor old thing so excited? 是什么让这可怜的老头这么激动呢?</p>
<p>从句为存在句 ...(that) there is 等(在口语、书面语一般都不用关系代词)</p>	<p>Lohmann is the most naturally gifted all-round cricketer <u>there has ever been</u>. 娄曼是前所未有的、最有天赋的全能板球运动员。</p>

另外,在非正式说法中,有时见到如下把关系代词略去不用的情况(该关系代词如使用时为从句主语):

Anybody does that ought to be locked up. (比较: *Whoever* does that ought...)这不管是谁干的,都应当把他押起来。

Any man (*that*) can't fight for his country had better be dead. 任何一个男人如不能为祖国而战不如死掉。

The hinge is loose and *the first wind* (*that*) comes along will blow the whole door off. 折页活动了,只要一刮风就会把整个门扇刮下来。You are *the first* ever asked who he was. 你是第一个问他是谁的人。

He is *the bravest man* (*that/that has*) ever breathed. 他是空前的勇士。Ryder's is *the last name* (*that*) would have occurred to me. (Schibsbye) 我当时想到别的什么名字也不会想到赖德的名字的。(以上6句属9.8, 1所述,先行词指唯一的、特定的人或事物。)

最后,应该提到节奏在“省略”中的关系。为了使语音总是轻重相间、整齐动听,在两个重读音节间(如先行词与从句名词间),轻读的 *that* 就要使用,不应略去;而在重读音与轻读音节间(如先行词与从句人称代词间),轻读的 *that* 就不必要,可以略去。比较:

It's the *address that Jackson* sent the letter to. (重读五音节: -dress, Jack-, sent, let-, to) 那是杰克逊把信发往那里的地址。

It's the *address* he sent the letter to. (重读四音节) 那是他把信发往那里的地址。

使语句轻重相间的方法,也适用于决定名词从句前连词 *that* 的使用或“省略”:

It's *true* that *Rogers* lived to be almost a centenarian. 罗杰斯活到几乎是百岁老翁了,这是确实的。

It's true he didn't mention his age. 确实他没提他的年龄。

Exercise 9

I. 选用 *that, which, as* 填空:

1. She treated him like a tame cat, _____ is what he was.

2. This amount, above _____ I can't go, is my last offer.
3. He is very particular about wording, _____ I am not.
4. Spiders are not insects, _____ many people think.
5. She fought like a brave woman _____ she was.
6. You can stay and dance on your own coming age _____ you can't at your wedding.
7. He is a teacher, _____ became clear from his manner.
8. Nothing about her to betray the woman _____ he had long since known her to be.
9. He likes to say things _____ sound big.
10. Such women _____ knew Tom thought he was charming.

II. 选择最合适的选项填空：

1. It was as a physician that he represented himself, and _____ he was warmly received.
A. as such B. such as C. as that D. so that
2. The physicist has made a discovery, _____ of great importance to the progress of science and technology.
A. I think which is B that I think is
C. which I think is D. which I think it is
3. She remembered several occasions in the past _____ she experienced a similar feeling.
A. which B. before C. that D. when
4. Firms that use computers have found that the number of staff _____ is needed for quality control can be substantially reduced.
A. whose B. as C. what D. that
5. Have you ever been in a situation _____ you know the other

person is right yet you cannot agree with him?

A. by which B. that C. in where D. where

Ⅲ. 用 as 引导的从句, 翻译下列句中的括号部分:

1. _____ (玛丽天天见到的职工们都) thought she was pretty.
2. _____ (天天见到玛丽的职工们都) thought she was pretty.
3. Neither did I know any artist so nice and exact _____ (能再给我画一幅画).
4. He would perhaps after tonight never be _____ (是以前那样一个人了).
5. He will marry _____ (他能找到的美丽的姑娘).
6. Sophia was not unconscious, _____ (从她的目光可以判断这一点).

第十章 分裂句是带定语从句的特异复合句 ——从句用法关键之三

10.1 分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是 It

为了强调句中一部分——一个句子成分,可把该句分成两部分:把要强调的句子成分夹在 *It is/was ... that/who...* 中间,而该句其他部分留到后面。这种强调句型在语法上称为分裂句(cleft sentence)。例如 *The conditions made them.* 一句可以“分裂”为以下两个强调句(*It* 为关系代词的先行词):*It was not they who made the conditions; it was the conditions that made them.* (Galsworthy) (前一分句强调原宾语,后一分句强调原主语)并非他们创造了时势,而是时势造就了他们。

定语从句与先行词被隔开的现象,不仅见于分裂句,例如下列三句中定语从句的先行词是句首的 *He*:

He is very empty that is full of himself. (*He that is full of himself is very empty.*) 自以为了不起的,其实很空虚。

He jests at scars that never felt a wound. (先行词不是 *scars*) (谚语)没受过伤的人总爱嘲弄伤疤。

He must have iron nails that scratches bear. (先行词不会是 *nails*) (谚语)谁要把狗熊抓挠几下子,他的指甲得像铁耙子一般(要干危险事,装备必齐全)

下面取分裂句形式的两句谚语中,先行词显然是句首的 *It*:

It's the early bird that catches the worm. 抓到虫子的是早起的

鸟(捷足先登)。(并非“那是抓虫的早起的鸟。”)该分裂句实为 *It that catches the worm is the early bird* 那种形式正装句的倒装说法,属于“沉稳倒装”。再如:*It's not the beard that makes the philosopher*. 决定一个人是哲学家的并非胡须。有胡须不一定是哲学家。(并非“那不是造成哲学家的胡须。”)

有些谚语以特殊反衬一般,真意是排除特殊,概括一般,例如以下各句,其所含定语从句的先行词也是 *It*:

It's an ill bird that fouls its own nest. 鸟不糟踏自己的巢,人不玷污自己的家(家丑不可外扬)(字面原意:玷污自己巢的可真是恶鸟。)

It's a good horse that never stumbles. (The best horse will sometimes stumble.) 马有失蹄,人有失误。

It's a long lane that has no turning. 道路总有拐弯处(恶运或好运会有转变时)

It's a small flock that hasn't a black sheep. (There is a black sheep in every flock.) 马多总有害群之马(人多总会出个败类)

正因为分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是 *It*,该从句谓语动词应该用单数第三人称形式:

It isn't I that wants to spoil your home. (Galsworthy) 要毁坏你家的并不是我。

It's me that has to give it up. (Jespersen) 不得不把它放弃的是我。

It is myself who is writing at last. (ib) 我终于能亲自写信了。

Is it you that's going to be married or is it Edith? (ib) 将要结婚的是你、还是伊迪丝呢?

It wasn't you who was going to marry Philip. (Shaw) 要和菲利普结婚的并不是你。

只是人们常受意念的影响,让定语从句的谓语动词用了与 *It* 相

联系的其后人称代词(或名词)那种数和人称形式。本应该说 It's I(口语 me) who's *to blame*. 也常说 It's I/me who *am to blame*. (GCE) 都怪我。It is you that/who *is/are* guilty. 有罪的是你。But it is the cheers of the spectators that *has/have* often *decided* the result of the match. (此从句谓动词可受名词 cheers 的影响取复数形式)但常常是观众高喊“加油”的欢呼声决定着比赛的结果。

10.2 分裂句与一般含定语从句复合句的不同

分裂句与一般含定语从句的复合句之不同,主要在于:分裂句中所含定语从句的先行词是放在句首的 It,而一般含定语从句的复合句中先行词都是紧挨或接近从句。因而,分裂句中靠着从句的地方就不是从句直接限定的词语,而是所强调的原句名词性成分或状语,也可以是一个专有名词;而在一般含定语从句的复合句,由于专有名词指独有事物无须限定,专有名词就不会作为限制性定语从句的先行词出现在紧靠或靠近该从句的地方,专有名词只能作为非限制性定语从句的先行词,由其加以修饰(进一步说明)。比较:

It's Chelsea (*that*) he lives in. (分裂句)他住在切尔西。

Then we took the paved road to Zeugma, 120 miles away; *from which it is another 200 miles to the frontier*. (非限制性定语从句)然后我们沿马路来到 120 英里远的左格玛,从那里到边境还有 200 英里。

It was Taylor *who/that met Roberts*. (EGS) 是泰勒遇见了罗伯茨。It was Roberts (*that*)/(*whom*) Taylor met. (ib)(二句是分裂句)泰勒遇见的是罗伯茨。

His place is among the last Victorian sages, *like G. Eliot and M. Arnold*, to whom he owed and acknowledged much. (非限制性定语从句)他跻身于维多列亚女王时代最后一辈哲人——

如艾略特、阿诺尔德 —— 之列,对此二人,他说颇受其助益而深表感激。

以表示时间、处所、方式的名词为先行词的定语从句,可以用关系副词 *when, where, why* 引导;而分裂句所含定语从句的先行词总是语义笼统的名词性代词 *It*, 即使分裂句强调原句时间、处所、方式状语,一般还是用 *that* 引导从句,不用 *when, where, why* (参见 10.4):

It was 1945. Yes, that was the year when I first met James. (定语从句) 那年是 1945 年。是啊,那就是我最初见到詹姆斯的那一年。

It was in 1945 that I first met James. (分裂句) 我最初见到詹姆斯,(那)是在 1945 年。

That is the bank where (in which) they met. (或 *That's the bank they met in.*) (定语从句) 那个就是他们在那里会面的那家银行。

It was in the bank that they met. (分裂句) 他们会面是在那家银行里。

That was the reason why he had filed his protest. (定语从句) 这就是他提出抗议的原因。

It was for this reason that he had filed his protest. (分裂句) 他提出抗议就为的是这个原故。

有的语法书讲:一般定语从句中作主语的关系代词 *that/who* 不可省略,而分裂句中作所含从句的主语的 *that/who* 可以省略。实际上,一般定语从句如其主句以 *It/That is* 开头者,作从句主语的 *that/who* 同样可以省略(参见 9.8, 5; 9.10, 2):

It/That's a thing (that) might happen to anyone. (一般定语从句) 那是一种任何人都会碰到的事。

It's not a thing (that) would disturb me. (Schibsbye) (一般定语从

句) 那事不会干扰我的。(原意: 那是不会干扰我的事情。)

It was a sad thing (*that*) *befell him*. (分裂句) 发生在他身上的是一件很凄惨的事。

以上三句的前两句中, 定语从句的先行词是 a thing, 第三句分裂句所含定语从句的先行词却是 It。除了这一主要不同外, 两种句子的语调重心(特别重读词语)也不相同。前两句定语从句的先行词 a thing 不特别重读, 二句分别重读从句中的 'happen to 'anyone 与 dis'turb; 而第三句分裂句中特别重读的是所强调的 a 'sad thing, 其后定语从句却不特别重读。再比较下列各组例句中的前、后二句。前句为一般定语从句, 从句中心词语即语调核心; 而后句为分裂句, 关系代词前的主句表语才是语调核心:

{ That/It was the dog (*that*) I gave the *water* (最重读) to.
(GCE) 那是我给它水喝的那条狗。

{ It was the *dog* (最重读) (*that*) I gave the water to! (ib) 我把水给的是狗啊!

{ This is the money that is *most* (最重读) *needed* (重读). 这就是极其需要的那笔钱。

{ It's *money* (最重读) that's most needed. 现在最需要的是钱。

{ It is a dream that has *come* (重读) *true* (最重读). 这是一个居然实现了的梦想。

{ It was a *curious* (最重读) *dream* (重读) (*that*) I had last night.
我昨夜做的是个怪梦。

{ It is *high* (重读) time that I should *go* (最重读). (意为 This present moment is high time at which I should go.) 现在我该走了(是我应该走的时间了)。

{ It is *perfect* (最重读) *time* (重读) that my watch is always keeping. 我的表走得总是十分准确。

谚语讲的是普遍的道理, 所以在谚语 It is the *last* (最重读)

straw (重读) *that breaks the camel's back*. 句中, *It* 及限定它的定语从句 *that breaks the camel's back* (压断骆驼脊背的) 是泛指一类事物, 与其相联系的 *the last straw* 同样是“类指”, 即泛指该类事物 (最后又加上去的一根稻草)。全句意思是: 最后凑上的一点小事会使人再也承受不住或忍耐不了。该谚语为分裂句。

但谚语中的一般比喻可以用来指特定情况, 下面句中的 *the last straw* 就成为“特指”、即指具体情况下特定事物的了: *But when they said she told fibs, it was the last straw that broke (最重读) the camel's back (重读).*

句中 *it* 以下并非分裂句。该 *it* 指的是前述情况 *they said (that) she told fibs* 说她撒谎, 其后 *the last straw* 是所接定语从句的先行词, 从句限定了它是起了什么作用的最后一根稻草, 即表明它是使该女子再不能忍受的最后一个特定事件。

10.3 分裂句所强调的相应简单句各种成分

分裂句的句型 *It is/was ... that ...* 决定了分裂句所强调的主要是名词性成分, 即相应简单句中的主语、名词性表语、宾语、名词性宾语补语、介词宾语; 其中强调相应简单句表语的分裂句较为少见。分裂句要强调相应简单句定语时, 要把该定语连同所限定的名词一起加以强调。分裂句还常用来强调相应简单句状语, 即表示事情发生的时间、处所、方式、原因、目的、条件等非名词性词语, 这是分裂句的一种扩展用法。

分裂句不能强调相应简单句的谓语动词。

下面举例分述强调相应简单句各种成分的分裂句表示法:

1) 强调相应简单句主语: *It was Sir John Harding who struck the first blow.* (比较 *Sir John Harding Struck the first blow.*) 先动手的是约翰·哈丁先生。

It's he/him who/that's a lecturer. 当讲师的是他。

2) 强调相应简单句表语: It's a *lecturer* that he is now. (较少见) 他现在当的是讲师了。(It's *a lecturer* that he has become. 较自然)

3) 强调相应简单句宾语:

The editors of "*Fortune*" remain smugly convinced that it is **God** whom they serve (Schibsbye; whom 很少用, 多用 that) 《命运》的编者洋洋自得地认为他们在为上帝服务。

It was *a book* that he gave me. (比较 He gave me a book.) 他给我的是一本书。

It was *me* that he gave the book to. (强调相应简单句间接宾语时多加后位介词 to) 他把那本书给了我。(换一种较正式说法 It was to me that he gave the book. 强调的已不是名词性成分, 这就是分裂句用法的扩展) 句中 It 指由定语从句 that he gave the book 所指的为行为的关系方面 —— “可略的 to + me”。从句本质上仍是定语从句, 而不是其他种从句。

4) 强调带补语的宾语:

It's been he/him that they elected chairman. 他们选为主席的是他。It's *the kitchen* that we've painted dark green. 我们刷成深绿色的是厨房。

5) 强调宾语补语:

It was *chairman* that they elected him. 他们选他当的正是主席。It's *dark green* that we've painted the kitchen. 我们把厨房刷的是深绿色。

6) 强调定语, 用 It is/was ... whose ... 可强调相应简单句名词所有格定语: It's *Uncle Bill* whose address I lost. (比较 I lost Uncle Bill's address.) 我弄丢的正是比尔舅舅的地址。(定语从句先行词还是 It, 全句相当 The person/one whose address I lost is Uncle Bill.

(限制性定语从句 whose 等不可能是限定无须限定的专有名词 Uncle Bill.)

强调属性定语,要连带所限定名词、代词: It's *my/the new book*, not yours/the old(used) one, that you're taken away. 你拿走的是我的/新书,不是你的/那本旧书。It was *his acquaintance* that I made in Italy, not hers. 我在意大利结识的是那男人,不是那女人。

7) 强调简单句的状语(及介词宾语):

It was *in my early youth/in Italy/in this way* that I first made his acquaintance. 正是在我很年轻的时候/在意大利/这样一种方式,我初次结识了他。

It was *in the gray of an early morning* that my mother's terrified voice awoke us. (时间)天刚蒙蒙亮(天色刚发灰白),我母亲惊恐的喊声就吵醒了我们。

It's maybe *under a load of kelp* (that) he'd be in a fishing boat. (处所)他原来躲在一艘渔船里,可能正是藏在船中一大堆海藻底下。

It's *in the one train with the judges* (that) I came. (方式)我来是跟法官们坐的同一趟火车。

It's *not only on bachelors* that the young ladies confer their affections. (关系方面)年轻的女士们不只是把她们的温情寄托给单身汉们。[换一种说法 It is *not only bachelors* on whom young ladies confer their affections. (Tracey) 是在强调相应简单句名词性成分——介词宾语;还有一种较通俗说法 It's *not only bachelors* that young ladies confer their affections on. 也是在强调相应简单句介词宾语]

It's *with the younger firm* that I am transacting business. (关系方面)[换一种较通俗说法 It is *the younger firm* that I am transacting business with. 是在强调相应简单句介词宾语]我

同他们正有贸易往来的是那家建立较晚的公司。

Perhaps it is *because of my upbringing in English pubs* that I think bar conversation has a charm of its own. (原因)也许正是因为我是英国小酒馆里长大的,我认为酒吧谈话有它特殊的魅力。

It was *for his independence* that he fought. (目的)[换一种较通俗说法 It was *his independence* that he fought for. (Jespersen) 是在强调相应简单句介词宾语]他正是为了自己的独立而奋斗。

It was *on that condition* that I went. (Onions)(条件)正是在这种条件下我才去的。

8) 强调复合句中的名词从句、带定语从句的名词:

It is *what the youngsters actually need*, not what they willfully demand, that is to be satisfied in good time. (原复合句中的主语从句)是孩子们实际所需要的,而不是他们任性要求的,应予及时满足。

It is *what Thoreau clearly whispered* that Whitman so uproariously bawls. (原复合句中的宾语从句)被惠特曼大声疾呼地喊叫开来的,正是梭罗清晰地悄声说出的事。

It was *the hearty joyousness* that he shed around him that made him so dear to us youngsters. (原复合句中带定语从句的名词)正是洋溢在他身边的由衷的欢快气氛,使我们这些孩子们那样喜欢他。

9) 强调复合句中的状语从句:

It was *when/as soon as Roberts turned away* that Taylor went to the door. (时间)正是在罗伯茨转过身去时,泰勒走到门口。

It is *where oppression is greatest* that resistance is greatest. (处所)正是压迫最沉重的地方,反抗最强烈。

It was **not because I was tired but I did not like to go** that I stayed at home. (原因)不是因为我累了,而是因为我不想去,我才呆在家里的。

It was **on condition that he should return at the end of three years** that he was admitted to go to Europe. 正是在他三年期满立即返回的条件下,他才获准去欧洲。

不能直接把相应简单句的谓语动词放在 It is/was ... that ... 中间来加以强调,因为这种强调句型中间本是名词性成分的位置。如一定要强调某简单句谓语动词所表示的行为、运动时,可把该动词转化为动名词加以强调:

简单句 He teaches/taught for a living.

不可说 * It is/was teaches/taught that he for a living.

可以说 It is/was teaching that he does/did for a living. 他为维持生活,从事的是教学工作。

10.4 强调原状语一般不用 when/where /why 引导从句

分裂句强调相应简单句(或者说“原句”)的名词性成分时,引导从句的 that 无疑是关系代词(引导定语从句限定以前的 It),当其指人或拟人事物时,可以分别情况换作 who/whom/whose, 当其指事物时,也有人用 which 代替它(尽管这样用的人较少见):

It is only women who live alone **that /who** can understand what it is to yearn to have a man's strong arm. (第一个 who 引导普通定语从句限定 women; 第二个 who 引导分裂句中的定语从句限定 It)只有独自生活的妇女,才能理解渴望有一个男人的强壮臂膀的心情。

It was not the hen who/that cackled the most **that /who** laid the largest egg. 下了最大个鸡蛋的并不是嘎嘎叫得最热闹的那

只母鸡。

It's his brother *whose* telephone number he has forgotten. 他忘了的是他弟弟的电话号码。

And was it you *that/whom* (较少见) Roberts struck? (EGS) 罗伯茨打的是你吗?

They would not, I think, have achieved it so well alone, and it is the West, which has helped them. (Pearl S. Buck) 我想他们自己干不会有此成就,是西方各国帮助了他们。

It is not of peculiar, but of general evil, *which* I am now complaining. (Austin) (比较 It is not peculiar, but general evil, *that/which* I am complaining of.) 我现在所指责的不是某种个别的罪恶,而是在指责全部的。

It is fierce local patriotism of this kind *that* creates difficulties for the capital, straddled between the two zones, and which led to the outcry on both sides. (Schibsbye) 正是这种强烈的地方观念给跨在两地区之上的首都带来很多问题,并使双方都发出了激愤的言论。

而分裂句强调相应简单句(或者说“原句”)的状语的用法,则是强调名词性成分用法的扩展,是语言逐步丰富以表达事物层层关系的自然发展(参见 Onions, p. 18; Jespersen, MEG Part 3, p. 164)。强调原状语的分裂句中,引导从句的 *that* 仍然是关系代词性质,仍然是引导定语从句限定其先行词 *It*。只是有一点与强调名词性成分时稍有不同,那就是:分裂句强调原状语时,关系代词 *that* 即在定语从句中担任状语;这一点就像用 *that* 代替 *when/where/why* 引导从句限定 *time/place/reason* 等名词时所起的作用一样(*that* 所带介词惯于略去,而 *at/on/in/for which...* 仍以关系代词作介词宾语)。

比较下面相关的简单句和分裂句以及分裂句的不同部分:

{ 相应简单句(原句): I understood my situation on seeing the boy. 看见那孩子,我才明白我的处境了。
 分裂句: It was on seeing the boy that I understood my situation. (强调时间)…我才明白…
 分裂句主要成分: It (the first time) was on seeing the boy.
 It 带定语从句: It (the first time) that(at which) I understood my situation. . .

不过,因为分裂句强调原状语时,that 的先行词 It 所指仅是一个较笼统、较模糊的概念,还不是确指具体时间、处所、原因、目的等,并不等于 the time/place/reason/purpose 等名词,所以,关系代词一般只用 that,既不用“介词 + which”,也很少见有用关系副词 when, where 等的:

It was just after 2 *when* we sent for a doctor. (RHD) /'Tis seldom *when* the bee doth leave her comb in the dead carrion. (Shakespeare) ('Tis = It is, doth = does) 蜜蜂很少死在巢中,让伙伴把尸体拖走。It is at the schools and universities *where* our characters are moulded. (Onions)我们的性格正是在中、小学和大学里形成的。

但也曾有语法家认为,强调名词性成分的 It is/was... that... 与强调原状语的 It is /was... that... 是两种不同的句型:认为前者中 that 为关系代词,而强调原状语的后两者中 that 为连词,引导的是名词从句(说该从句与 It 是同位关系,就是说它是同位从句;或者说代表该从句的 It 是引词,那就是说它是主语从句)。有人还把强调原状语的 It is/was... that... 与 It 引导不定式后位主语及其他类型后位主语的句型归为一类 (Schibsbye, p. 190):

It will take the Labour Party some weeks *to regain full consciousness*. 要让英国工党完全清醒过来,将需要几个星期的时间。

It was somewhere about 1918 *that I first joined our village club.*

我最初参加村里俱乐部大约在 1918 年。

主语可前置: *To regain full consciousness* will take the Labour Party some weeks. 等等(同样也可以说: That I first joined our village club was somewhere about 1918. 其中为连词 *that* 引导主语从句)

对这种说法的分析见下节。

10.5 It was in 1918 that... 句型性质

应该说 *It was in/about 1918 that I joined the club.* 一句中,如特别强调(重读)1918,则句子为分裂句含定语从句: *It (the time) that I joined the club was in/about 1918.* 如无特别强调处,也可以把它看作带主语从句的复合句,可改写为 *That (That event) — I joined the club — was/happened in/about 1918.* (参见 Erades, p. 356); 简单说: *That/It was in/about 1918.* 事情发生在 1918 年(前后)。(比较 *It was 1918.* 那是 1918 年。)

只是,这种 *that* 从句前、后位可互换的情况看来很有限,仅仅见到表示事情发生的时间而且以介词短语为表语(或者说状语,修饰实意动词 *was* “发生”)的复合句,才有 *that* 从句在后或在前的两种说法。如果以时间副词为表语,情况就不同了:

可以说: *It was then/recently/very lately that I joined our village.*

未见说: * *That I joined our village club was then/recently/very lately.*

也没有相应简单句: * *That was then/recently/very lately.*

如果强调频度、处所、原因、条件、方式、目的、结果、方面等多种行为特征,就都只见 *It is/was ... that ...* 的分裂句说法,而没有见到 *That... is/was ...* 主语从句开头的说法:

It is *rarely* that only one of them is seen. 不可改作 * That only one of them is seen is rarely. (Onions)(强调频度)只看见其中一个人的情况是很少有的。

下列各分裂句也都不能改成“*That... is/was + 介词短语(原状语)*”的句子形式:

It was *by train* that we reached Istanbul. 我们是乘火车抵达伊斯坦布尔的。(不说 * That we reached Istanbul was by train.)

It was *in Limerick* (that) he was. (Lady Gregory)(强调处所)他那时是在利莫里克。

It was *on that account / on that condition* that I agreed to go. (强调原因/条件)正是为了这个原因/在这种条件下,我才同意去的。

It was *for fun* that he played the part of a clown. (强调目的)他扮演丑角是为了取乐。

It is *in vain* that you quibble. (强调结果)你这样躲闪回避,是枉费心机的。

It was *with the people* (that) you were, and not with the law (that) you were, when you were a young man. (Lady Gregory)(强调存在方式或说关系方面)(不能说 * That you were was with the people...)你年轻的时候,你是站在人民这一边的,不是站在法律那一边的。

要分清同属 *It is/was... that* 形式的分裂句与带主语从句的复合句,后者总是能改写成 *That* 开头的形式。比较:

1) “Will income tax be reduced?” — “That’s unlikely.” “所得税会减少吗?”——“这不大可能。”

2) It’s unlikely *that income tax will be reduced*. 所得税减少是不大可能的。

3) *That — income tax will be reduced — is unlikely, that it will be abolished is out of the question.* (CGE) 所得税减少是不大可能的, 所得税取消, 根本不可能。

4) *Income tax is unlikely to be reduced.* 所得税减少是不大可能的。

5) *It is a 10 percent reduction in income tax that will come into effect very soon.* (分裂句的相应简单句是 *A 10 percent reduction in income tax will come into effect very soon.*) 所得税要减少百分之十, 这很快就要实行了。

6) *It is by 10 percent / very soon that income tax will be reduced.* (分裂句的相应简单句是 *Income tax will be reduced by 10 percent very soon.*) 所得税减少是减百分之十, 它很快就要实行了。

同理, 下列两组例句中, 第一组后两句是带主语从句的复合句, 第二组后两句是强调名词性成分或原状语的分裂句:

That is rare. 这种事很少见。

That — he stays at home in such fine weather — is rare. 这么好的天气他呆在家里, 这很少见。

It is rare *that he stays at home in such fine weather.* 很少见这么好的天气他呆在家里。

He rarely/seldom stays at home in such fine weather. 他很少在这么好的天呆在家里。

It is *he/him* who/that rarely/seldom stays at home in such fine weather. (不能说 *That — rarely stays at home in such fine weather — is he/him.*) 正是他很少在那么好的天呆在家里。

It is *rarely/seldom* that he stays at home in such fine weather. (不能说 *That — he stays at home in such fine weather — is rarely/seldom.*) 这么好的天他呆在家里, 太少了。

下列句中两个 *that* 各为所引导定语从句中的状语,而二者的先行词不同。前一个 *that* 限定 *last time*,引导的是普通限制性定语从句;后一个 *that* 限定句首的 *It*,引导的是分裂句所含的后位(与 *It* 隔开的)定语从句:

It was only last time (*that/when*) they were there *that* I got acquainted with him (第二个 *that* 处一般不用 *when*,因其先行词为 *It*;分裂句强调原状语时,后边限定 *It* 的定语从句仍用 *that*,一般不用 *when*、*where* 或 *why*)(比较相应非分裂句 *I got acquainted with him only last time (that/when) they were there.* 仅仅是上次他们到那里去时,我才认识了他。

10.6 主语代词、谓语时态与主句语序的变换

*It is/was... that/who...*型分裂句在语言的灵活使用中会发生一些形式上的变换:

That (It) was a fire bomb (*that*) they let off last night. (GCE)

昨天夜里他们引爆的是一颗燃烧弹。

And it ***might be*** myself (*who*) would be creeping up trying to make my escape. (Lady Gregory) 那样就很可能^是我,现在正在往上爬,想要逃跑。

This it was (*It was this*) *that* has caused the regular beating noise. (Jespersen) 正是这个东西发出了那种有规律的敲打声。

这些变换分属主语代词、谓语语气或时态、主句语序三个方面:

1) 主语代词的变换 —— *It* 换成 *That*、*Those*:

That (It) was Cantercot (*who*) just went in, wasn't it? 是坎妥克特刚刚进去吧,是不是?(比较 *Cantercot just went in, didn't he?*) ***Those*** are(*It is*) my feet *that* you're stepping on.

你踩着的是我的脚。

但以下二句不是分裂句: That/It is a thing (that) might happen to any man. (先行词为 thing) 这是一种在任何人都会发生的事。这种事谁都会碰到。 That is all (that) is the matter with me. (先行词为 all) 这就是在我说来很难解决的全部问题。我的困难就是这些。

2) 谓语语气、时态的变换 —— is/was 换成 will be, may/might be 等。分裂句主句谓语动词一般只用 is 或 was 的单一形式, 因为所有其他语气、时态意义可以由从句谓语动词的形式变化来表示: It is John who *will* come/*has* come/*may* have come. It was John who *had* come/*used* to come/*might* have come. 但有时为了强调各种语气、时态意义, 可把相应的助动词、情态动词构成的谓语形式由从句移入主句, 或在主句, 从句中重复使用, 于是, 主句谓语动词单一形式的: is/was 就会变成种种复合形式: It has been/had been/will be/may be/might be/might have been 等。

<p>主句中: is 从句中: 一般现在时、一般将来时、一般过去时、现在完成时、现在完成进行时、虚拟现在时等</p>	<p>It is not he who <u>will</u> quarrel a second time. (A. Bennett) 再次吵架的不会是他。</p> <p>It's not often that you <u>got</u> an opportunity like this. 你得此良机, 这不是常有的事。</p> <p>It is (现在的认识) always Jay who <u>called</u>. 那个时期来访问的总是杰伊。</p> <p>It's the Arab who <u>has been following</u> her. 一直跟在她身后的是那个阿拉伯人。</p> <p>Maybe it is you (who) <u>might be</u> in trouble now. 现在陷于困境的那就可能是你了。</p>
--	---

<p>主句中: was 从句中: 一般过去时、过去完成时、过去完成进行时、虚拟过去时等; 偶见用一般现在时表示过去发生的一系列事情,使其历历在眼前</p>	<p>It was not often that you <u>got</u> an opportunity like that. 你得到那样的良机,在那个时候不是常有的事。</p> <p>It was(当时已认识到) always Jay who <u>called</u>. 来访的总是杰伊。</p> <p>It was/is more than a hundred years ago that the <u>Manifesto was issued</u>. (比较 it is more than a hundred years since the...) 共产党宣言发表至今已一百多年了。</p> <p>It was (不用 is) <u>last night</u> that John <u>wore</u> his best suit to the dance. (强调过去时间状语)正是昨晚,约翰穿了最好的西装去跳舞。</p> <p>It was the Arab who <u>had been following</u> her. 一直跟在她身后的是那个阿拉伯人。</p> <p>It was the forty-fathom slumber that <u>clears</u> the soul and eye and heart, and <u>sends</u> you to breakfast ravening. 是那极其深沉的睡梦使你的灵魂、眼睛与心神都焕然一新,让你能狼吞虎咽地吃起早饭来。</p>
<p>主句中: will be 等 从句中: 一般现在时,一般将来时</p>	<p>It will be John who <u>comes</u> in first. (Halliday) 最先来到的是约翰。</p> <p>It will be you who <u>will have to take</u> the blame for this. (Eckersley) 为这件事受埋怨的将是你。</p> <p>It's going to be his hand that <u>sets apart</u> those fine legs. (S. Bellow) 把那两只细小的腿分开的将是他的手。</p>

<p>主句中： has/had been 从句中： 完成时态，偶见用于一般过去时</p>	<p>It has always been at night-time that I <u>have been molested</u>. (B. Stoker) 我受搅扰总是在夜间。 Perhaps it had been Christine who'd <u>made</u> the mistake. (K. Amis) 弄错的也许是克里斯丁。 Sometimes it had been Brett who <u>flared</u> up. (A. Hailey) 有时候发火的是布莱特。</p>
<p>主句中加用情态动词 It may be, it must be, it may/must have been 等</p>	<p>It <u>may be</u> this sense of possible disaster in the air that makes San Francisco society go with so captivating a rush and whirl. (Kipling) 可能是这种大难就会临头的危急感使旧金山社会处于那样席卷一切的团团转与奔走繁忙之中。 It <u>must have been</u> his brother that you saw. (GCE) 你看见的一定是他的哥哥。</p>
<p>主句中用动词虚拟形式或加用情态动词虚拟形式(分裂句主句,从句可能一起作更扩展句中的从句) it were, it might be, it might have been 等。</p>	<p>Why should she slink about as if it <u>were</u> she who had disgraced herself? (E. Wharton) 她为什么走到哪里都那样羞愧,似乎是她自己造成的这种耻辱? It <u>might be</u> you (who) might be in trouble now. 现在陷于困境的那就可能是你了。 It <u>might have been</u> the manager who spoke to you. (GCE) 和你说话的可能就是经理。 If it wasn't for my wife and family, it <u>might be</u> myself now (who) would be after breaking jail and hiding in the dark. (Lady Gregory) 如果不是因为我有妻子儿女,也许现在我刚刚越狱而逃,藏在暗处。</p>

确切地说,主句中加用情态动词的句子有时并不是“把一句分成

两部分”的分裂句：

It (The boy) must have been his brother that you saw. 意义上并不相当于 You must have seen his brother.

It (The man) might have been the manager who spoke to you. 相当于 The man who spoke to you might have been the manager. 而不相当于 The manager might have spoken to you.

3) 主句语序的变换——“ It is/was + 表语”换成“(非疑问词或疑问词)表语 + it is/was”、“疑问词表语 + is/was it”或“is/was it + 表语”，变换的语序分属以下几种倒装：

· 强调表语倒装：

The man recovered of the bite, *the dog it was* that died.
(Onions)那人被咬伤后痊愈了,死了的是那只狗。

She it is (who) arrests my attention first. 首先抓住我注意力的是她。

This it was which gave him such faith and fearlessness in work.
正是这个给了他偌大的干好工作的信心与勇气。

宾语从句倒装(承接主句的疑问词置从句句首)：

I wonder *who it was* (that) defined man as a rational animal. 我不知道是谁给人下定义说人是理性的动物。

He had never guessed *what it was* in him which was beautiful to her. 他从来没想到,在他身上有着什么对她说来是美好的。

I have endeavored to discover *what quality it was* which he possesses that elevates him so immeasurably above other persons. 我曾力图了解,他具有的是什么品质,使得他那样无与伦比地高高超越了别人。

感叹句倒装(所强调疑问词组置句首): *What a glorious bonfire it was* (that) you made!

(GCE) 你们点燃了多么美妙的营火啊! *What remarkable*

intelligence it was that you displayed! 你表现了多么杰出的智慧啊?

特殊问句倒装(疑问词置句首,主语与谓语动词颠倒):

Who was it that found the key? (RHD) 是谁把钥匙找到的?

What was it (that) set one to watch the other so? 是什么东西使一个人这样监视着另一个人呢?

When was it that this meeting took place? (EGS) 这次会议是什么时候召开的呢?

Where exactly was it that they met? 他们会见的准确地点在哪里呢?

Why was it that Roberts turned away? 罗伯茨走开是为什么呢?

How was it that you did not give the alarm at once? 你没有立即发出警报是怎么回事呢?

一般问句倒装(主语与谓语动词颠倒): ***Is it here*** (that) we are going to have our party? 我们举行宴会就是在这儿吗? ***Was it for this*** that we suffered and toiled? (Jespersen) 我们受苦受累难道就为的是这个吗?

10.7 分裂句中关系代词 *that*, *who* 的“省略”

正像宾语从句等名词从句可以不用连词 *that* 引导而直接连于主句一样,也正像普通定语从句常可不用关系代词 *that* 等引导而直接连于主句一样,分裂句所含定语从句也常常是“触合从句”,不用什么来引导,在讲求简洁的口语中尤其如此。

如果把这种不用 *that*、*who* 等的情况说成是“省略”,那么分析“省略”关系代词的分裂句时,可以见到该关系代词如果用于定语从句前,可分别为从句中的主语、宾语、介词宾语或状语等成分。

1) 所缺 *that/who* 如果补上应为主语:

It is your heart (*that*) is on fire. Not your shop. (Jespersen) 是你心急如火。不是你的商店着火了。

It's practice (*that*) does it. 经常练习才能这么熟练。

It wasn't I (*who*) let him in. 不是我让他进来的。

It was me (*who*) made her think it was the best thing to do. 是我使她想到最好这样做。

It's the poor (*who/that*) has the hard life. 过苦日子的是那些穷人。

即使不是分裂句,带有普通定语从句的复合句如以 It is/was... 等开头,定语从句前也可以略去应为主语的关系代词:

It is a thing (*that*) happens once in a blue moon. (先行词为 a thing) 这是一种百年不遇的事。而下列二句为分裂句,所含定语从句的先行词皆为 It:

It's a sad thing (*that*) befell him. 发生在他身上的是一件很凄惨的事。(比较 A sad thing befell him.)

It's always the right thing (*that*) comes into his head at the crucial moment. 在关键时刻,他所想到的总是恰当的主意。(比较: The right thing always comes into his head at the crucial moment.)

2) 所缺 *that/who* 如果补上应为表语:

It was only a merchant (*that*) he could become. 他那时只能成为一个商人。

It's a living reality (*that*) our dream has become! 我们的梦想已变成活生生的现实!

3) 所缺 *that/who (m)* 如果补上应为宾语:

It was Roberts (*that/whom*) we met. 我们见到的是罗伯茨。

It's this watch (*that*) I said I would let you have, not that. 我要给你的是这块表,不是那块。

It's life (*that*) a writer seeks. 作家追求的是真实的生活。

4) 所缺 *that/who(m)* 如果补上应为介词宾语:

It's me (*that/whom*) he gave the book to. (很少说 *It's me he gave the book*. 该句所略 *that/whom* 为间接宾语)他把那本书给我了。

It was the girl (that) I was complaining about. 我正埋怨的是那个姑娘。

Who was it (*that/whom*) you voted for? 你投票选的是谁?

5) 所缺 *that* 如果补上应为状语:

It was in September (*that*) I first noticed it. (时间)我最初注意这一点是在九月份。

It was in Italy (*that*) I first made his acquaintance. (处所)我最初认识他是在意大利。

It's little (*that*) any mother knows what might happen to her child before it has gone through its life, or who will be who in the end. (度量)任何一位母亲都难以知道她的孩子走完一生道路之前会碰到什么事,最后谁会成为什么人。

It was about the girl (*that*) I was complaining. (关系方面,在此由介词短语担任)我正埋怨的是那个姑娘。

值得注意的是,分裂句中作表语的名词可带有自己的定语从句。比较起来,以该名词(或代词)为先行词的普通定语从句较多使用关系代词,而以分裂句主语 *It* 为先行词的后位定语从句多把关系代词略去不用:

It is the preacher *who* does not prepare (*who*) sends his congregation away empty. 正是那种不做准备的传道士,才会让听他讲道的教徒毫无所获,空空散去。

It's not everything *that* happens (*that*) gets into the papers. 不是所发生的每一件事都会登在报纸上的。

It's those that are down (*that*) would be up, and those that are up (*that*) would be down. (Lady Gregory) 正是那些压在底下的人们要翻身上去,而那些凌驾于他人之上的人们要滚落下来。

这三句中,作为分裂句表语的名词或代词是句子强调的事物,句子重点(重读),所紧接的定语从句更要着重(最重读),因而多加用关系代词;而限定 It 的后位定语从句不那么着重,因而多不用关系代词。

不过,也有时引导这两种定语从句的关系代词都略去不用:

Maybe it's one of the boys (*that*) you used to be singing with at that time (*that*) you will be arresting today or tomorrow, and sending into the dock. 可能你今天或者明天将要逮捕并送去受审判的,正是你那时候和他们一起唱歌的孩子们中间的一个。

另外,分裂句还可以带有限定句中某名词的定语从句以及别种从句;整个分裂句还可作为更扩展的复合句中的一个从句——要了解各种从句前的使用或所略去不用的不同性质的关联词:

It might be himself (*that*) would be keeping the law, and myself (*that*) would be breaking it, and myself (*that*) would be trying maybe to put a bullet in his head, or take up a lump of stone the way (*that*) you said he did. 那就可能是他在维护法律而我在违犯法律,可能是我也许在想方设法要给他的脑袋里打进一颗子弹去,或者就像你说的他干过的那样,我会同样地拿起一块石头把他干掉。

It's to the assizes (*that*) I came, thinking (*that*) I might make a few shillings here or there. 我是奔着巡回审判大会来的,心想在这附近一带挣几个先令。

Sergeant, I am thinking (*that*) it was in sympathy with the

people (*that*) you were, and not in favour of “the law” (*that*) you were, when you were a young man. 警官,我设想,你年轻的时候你是同情人民的,不是拥护所谓的法律的。

10.8 所谓“拟分裂句” What he's done is...

有些语法书讲,像 The monkeys interested the children most. 这样一句话,仅为强调主语,就可分裂出两种句型: It is/was the monkeys that interested the children most. (本章前几节所述分裂句) What interested the children most was the monkeys. (Wood) 使孩子们最感兴趣的是那些猴子。

那些语法书讲,这第二种强调句型也是分裂句,或称拟分裂句 (pseudo-cleft sentences)。

实际上,这是使用以 what 等引导的名词性关系从句来强调原句主语。使用以 what 等引导的名词性关系从句,不仅可以强调原句主语、表语、宾语等名词性成分,而且可以用 What he's done is... 之类的形式强调原句动词谓语 (What... is/was... 句型不能用于强调原句状语)。

原句: The lies (that) he told proved his undoing. 他说的那些谎话证明了他的败坏。

强调原主语: What proved his undoing was *the lies (that) he told*. (Wood) (比较 It was *the lies (that) he told* (that) proved his undoing.) 正是他所说的那些谎话证明了他的败坏。

强调原宾语: What the lies he told proved was *his undoing*. (比较 It was *his undoing* the lies he told proved.) 他的谎言所证明的正是他的败坏。

原问句: What did Taylor hand to Roberts? (用分裂句 What

was it that Taylor handed to Roberts? 是强调原宾语 What)
泰勒递给罗伯茨的是什么东西?

原答句: He handed to Roberts an envelope.

强调原宾语: What he handed to Roberts was *an envelope*. (比较
It was *an envelope* that he handed to Roberts.) 他递给罗伯
茨的是一个信封。

原句: He is a genius.

强调原表语: What he is is a genius. (CGE)(但不能说 It is a
genius that he is.) 他正是一个天才。

原句: I'm teaching him a *lesson*.

强调原现在进行时谓语: What I'm doing is *teaching him a*
lesson. 我正是在给他一次教训。

原句: I'm going to teach him a lesson.

强调原 be going to... 谓语: What I'm going to do is (*to*) *teach*
him a lesson. 我正是给他一次教训。

原句: He'll spoil the whole thing.

强调原一般将来时谓语: What he'll do is *spoil the whole thing*.
他正是将要把事情弄个一团糟。

原句: He has spoilt the whole thing.

强调原现在完成时谓语: What he has done is *spoilt* / (*to*) *spoil*
the whole thing. 他正是把事情弄了个一团糟。

以上后 4 个强调原谓语的句中, 谓语动词都是表示动态的动作
动词(dynamic verbs)。如果原句谓语动词是表示静态的状态动词
(state verbs) 则不能用 do 来代替, 无法构成相应的拟分裂句来强调
状态动词担任的谓语: What I am doing/will do/have done is... 等。
例如:

原句: I like music.

不能说: * What I do is (to) like music.

比较动作动词句: The birds make music all day long. What the birds do is (to) *make music all day long*. 小鸟整天没别的事, 只是唱歌。

what 是因为可以作为连接代词, 表示 the thing that/which 或 that which, 才可以用来构成这种拟分裂句的。而 who, 因其在现代英语中已不用来表示 the person who (参见 10.8, 10.9), 所以不能说, * Who met us was the ambassador, 而要说 The person who met us is the ambassador. 或者说 It was the ambassador who met us. (GCE). 会见我们的是大使。

when 与 where 可以作为连接副词, 分别表示 the time when 与 the place where, 但很少用于句子开头引导主语从句构成“拟分裂句”来强调句末词语(表语), 却常用来引导靠后的表语从句, 来强调句首词语(主语), 构成 Wh-从句在后的另一种“拟分裂句”(参见 8.10 表语从句条):

原句: In autumn the countryside is most beautiful.

强调原时间状语: (*In*) *Autumn* is when the countryside is most beautiful. (比较 Autumn is the time when the countryside is most beautiful. It is in autumn that the countryside is most beautiful, 很少说 When the countryside is most beautiful is (in) autumn. 正是在秋天, 农村最美。

原句: He first achieved fame as a writer in 1950.

强调原时间状语: (*In*) *1950* was when he first achieved fame as a writer. 他作为作家而成名是在 1950 年。

原句: I first met my wife on this very spot.

强调原处所状语: (*On*) *This very spot* was where I first met my wife. (This very spot was the place where I first met my wife. 很少说 Where I first met my wife was on this very spot.) 正是在这个地点, 我第一次见到我的妻子。

原句: The accident took place here.

强调原处所状语: *Here is/was* where the accident took place. 正是在这里发生的那次事故。

连接代词 *what*, 甚至连接代词 *who*, 也可以引导表语从句, 构成 *Wh-*从句在后的“拟分裂句”, 来强调句首词语(主语)。

The monkeys were *what* interested the children most. (比较 *What interested the children most was the monkeys.* 句中应用 *was*, 而不应用 *were*)

The police chief was *who* I meant. (比较 *I meant the police chief. It was the police chief that I meant.* 但不能说: * *Who I meant was the police chief.*)

Exercise 10

I. 把这个句子变成几个分裂句, 强调不同的划线部分:

My mother threw an egg at the Minister of Education yesterday.

1.

2.

3.

4.

II. 选择最合适的选项填空:

1. _____ Vermont, threatened with invasion, declared itself an independent commonwealth.

A. In 1777 that it was

B. It was in 1777 that

C. Because in 1777

D. that in 1777

2. It was not until she arrived at the mall _____ found out she had forgotten her purse.

A. and she

B. when she

C. she

D. that she

3. When I try to understand _____ that prevent so many

Americans from being as happy as one might expect, it seems to me that there are two causes.

- A. why it does B. what it does
C. what it is D. why it is

4. _____ she realized it was too late to go home.

- A. No sooner it grew dark than
B. Hardly did it grow dark that
C. Scarcely had it grown dark than
D. It was not until dark that

III. 翻译下面的分裂句,注意应该加强语气的地方:

1. It was on a dark evening in December that I first met James.
2. It is not because we do not trust you but because of your inexperience that we have decided not to offer you this difficult task.
3. What we doubt is not your loyalty to us but your experience.
4. How was it that you did not give us the alarm at once?
5. Was it to Robert that he handed it?
6. When was it that Taylor rushed to the door?

第十一章 while, as, that, if 等引导对应 或因果状语从句——从句 用法关键之四

11.1—11.2 表示持续、距离等时间、空间关系的 while/as 等从句

11.1 时间从句 while/as... 并不是回答 What time?

句子成分是按句中关系来区分的。句中指事物本身的成分(回答 Who/What?), 为名词性成分主语、宾语等, 由名词、名词性代词等表示; 指主语的运动或联系状态的成分(回答 What does he do/is he? 等)为谓语, 由实意动词或“系词加表语”表示; 修饰、限定名词性成分的成分(回答 What.../Which/How many/How much? 等)为定语, 由形容词、数词等表示; 而修饰、限定动词的成分为状语, 由副词等表示, 故英语语法上把状语称作 Adverbial。

但状语不只是修饰、限定动词的成分, 也包括修饰、限定形容词、副词、介词短语以至整个句子的成分, 这些都被归入状语之列。因此, 状语所用词语的性质最为繁杂, 状语从句的性质亦然。那么根据什么给状语及状语从句分类呢? 首先, 也可以根据所回答的问题进行分类, 例如状语从句可分为:

回答 When/What time? How long? How often? 的是时间状语从句;

回答 Where? Where to? How far? 的是处所状语从句;

回答 How? In what manner? 的是方式状语从句;

回答 What in comparison with? 的是比较状语从句;

回答 Why? For what reason? 的是原因状语从句;

回答 To what effect? 的是结果状语从句;

回答 To what purpose? 的是目的状语从句;

回答 On what condition? 的是条件状语从句;

回答 What granted/conceded? 的是让步状语从句。

上列类别虽已繁多,却未能包括所有状语从句,为此让我们先按所表示事物的固有关系或对外纵横关系,把各种状语从句归为三大类:

1) 表示运动或联系状态的固有时间、空间关系由 *as, as far as* 等引导的时间从句、处所从句(如处所从句 *His land extends as far as the eye can reach.*)。

2) 表示运动或联系状态的外部横向关系即“对应关系”由 *as* 等引导的方式从句、比较从句、由 *that* 等引导的关系方面从句等(如比较从句 *She is not so rich as he (is).*)。

3) 表示运动或联系状态的外部纵向关系即“因果关系”由 *as, if* 等引导的原因从句、条件从句、让步从句,由 *that* 等引导的结果从句、目的从句等(如原因从句 *Rich as he is, he needn't work hard.* 让步从句 *Rich as he is, he is unhappy.*)。

这三大类各包括多种状语从句,所回答的问题实际不限于前面提到的十几条。

例如时间从句中,除 *when...* 从句回答 *When/What time?*、*until/as (so) long as...* 从句回答 *How long?*、*each/every time...* 从句回答 *How often?* 以外,值得注意,*while...* 从句与 *as...* 从句所回答的就超出了这些有关时间问题的范围:

You may stay here as long as you like. (从句回答 *How long may*

I stay here?)你愿在这呆多久可以呆多久。

So (As) long as I am alive, you will never look for help in vain.
只要我活着(在我活在世上这么长的时间内),你要求帮助永远不会落空。

We started **every time** a fish leaped. (从句回答 How often did you start?)每次有一条鱼跳起来时,我们就开始了。

You are safe **while** I am here. (从句不是回答 When/What time is I safe? 而是回答 During what time/During how long a time am I safe?)我在此期间,你总是安全的。

He smiled as she passed. (从句也不是回答 When/What time? 而是回答 (At the same time)As what happened? 之类的问题)正在她走过的那会儿,他微微一笑。

As midnight drew near, the moon appeared above the hills. (从句也不是回答 When/What time? 而是回答 In what meantime? 之类的问题)随着时间临近午夜,月亮(渐渐)在山岗上升起。

连词 **while, as** 与连词 **when** 的不同略如下述:

1) **while** 的意思是 during the time when... 或 for as long as...

While 从句总是指某种持续的、或因反复而持续的情况;整个主从复合句表示主句(短暂或持续、反复)情况发生在从句的持续(包括反复)过程中:

He kept the cigarette between his lips **while** he was talking.
(**while** 如换为 **when**, 会失去持续全过程的意义;换为 **as**, 则仅强调同时)在他谈话的整个过程中,他一直在唇边叼着烟卷。

Many great writers were not fully appreciated **while** they were alive. (主句的反复情况发生在从句反复进行的过程中,句中 **while** 也不宜换为 **when** 或 **as**)许多伟大作家在世期间,都未

得到充分的重视。

While I was reading, I fell asleep. (主句的短暂情况发生在从句的持续过程中,句中 while 可换为 when 或 as,但意味有所不同)我正看着书,睡着了。

仅在主句指较短暂时情况时,while/as/when...三种从句差别较小:I noticed a police car in front of number 37 **as/when/while** I was walking down the street. **As/when/while** I was walking down the street, I noticed a police car in front of number 37. (Swan) 我沿着大街走着走着,注意到 37 号门前有一辆警车。

2) as 的意思是 at/in the same time when...。as...从句可指持续情况,也可指短暂情况;整个主从复合句表示主句(短暂或持续、反复)情况发生在从句持续(包括反复)或短暂情况的同时:

He told us stories **as** we went along. (主句持续情况发生在从句持续情况的同时,句中 as 如换为 while,会失去强调同时的意义,变成强调从句全过程)我们一面走着,他一面给我们讲着故事。

Her anger grew **as** she talked. (RHD)(主句持续情况与从句持续情况同时进行而且始终关联,连词 while 不能表示这种意义)她说说着,越说越生气。

As he grew richer, he grew more ambitious. (主从复合句表示相随渐变的情况,常用连词 as,该 as...从句如不是指一定时间,而是指变化的比例关系时,即为“比例从句”,见 11.6)随着他越来越富有,他的野心越来越大。

As he did so, the door was flung open. (主句短暂情况发生在从句短暂情况的同时)正在他这么干时,门猛然被打开。

He went out (just) **as** I entered. 正是我进来的时候,他出去了。

Just as he was speaking, there was a loud explosion. (as...从句前加 just,表示从句情况比较短暂)他正说着,发出了很大的

爆炸声。

He came up *as* I was speaking. (RHD)(主句短暂情况发生在从句持续情况的同时)我正在讲话的时候,他走上前来。

The sun was sinking *as* we turned home. (Greene)(主句持续情况发生在从句短暂情况的同时)我们回家时,太阳正在西下。

as...从句和 *when/while*...从句的一点不同,前者不可略去主语(与主句主语重复者)及谓语一部分: The aircraft exploded *as* it was landing. 不可略作 * The aircraft exploded *as* landing. 但可以说 The aircraft exploded *when/while* landing. 飞机着陆时爆炸了。

下列句中 *as* 为介词: *As* a boy, I looked at such things quite differently. 我小时候,对这些事情的看法和现在大不相同。比较: *When/While* a boy/young/(staying) in England, I looked at such things quite differently. 我小时候/年轻时/在英国时,对这些事情的看法和现在大不相同。

3) 连词 *when* 的基本意思是 at the time when, 但主、从句情况不一定是恰好同时,常可能是接续发生的,就有 after the time when 之意。特别是当主、从句都表示短暂情况时,主句情况常是随后发生。如果从句表示持续情况, *when* 也不像 *while* 那样强调其持续过程,而只表示主句(持续、反复或短暂)情况发生在那个时间。下列 6 组例句可概括连词 *when* 的基本用法:

主句持续情况发生在从句持续情况发生时 We learned Latin *when* we were young. (因多用句末重点传达新信息,说明听者未知的情况,故此句应是回答 *When/What* time did you learn Latin?) 我们的拉丁语是在年轻时学的。 *When* we were young, we learned Latin. (就是回答 *What* language did you learn *when* you were young? 之类问题)我们年轻时,学的是拉丁语。 He is impatient *when* (ever) he is kept waiting. (持续且反复)每次让他等待时,他总是不耐烦。

It's cold *when* it snows. (反复)下雪时,天就冷。

主句持续情况发生在从句短暂情况发生时 I was ten years old *when* my father died. (并非回答 When was you ten years old? 而是回答 What happened when you were ten years old? 或 How old were you when your father died? 比较 *When* my father died, I was ten years old.)我十岁那年,父亲死了。I was taking a walk, *when* I came across him. (*when* 前有逗号,《简明英汉词典》认为它是并列连词)我正在散步,碰见了他。*When* John arrived, I was cooking lunch. (Swan)(回答 What were you doing when John arrived?)约翰来到时,我正在做午饭。

主句短暂情况发生在从句持续情况发生时 My father died *when* I was ten years old. 我父亲死是在我十岁的那一年。I came across him *when* I was taking a walk. (《简明英汉词典》)我碰见他是在我正散步的时候。John arrived *when* I was cooking lunch. (Swan; 以上三句中后位从句皆可换到前面,而使主句在后成为句末重点)约翰是我做午饭时到的。*When* (he was) a boy, he went to sea. (从句如换到后面作为句末重点不宜有省略)他从小就当了水手。

主句短暂情况发生在从句短暂情况发生时(主句情况可能稍后) Stop writing *when* the bell rings. 铃一响就不要写了。We'll start *when* the team leader comes. (比较... as soon as he comes 或... right after he has come.)队长来了咱们就出发。He rose *when* she entered. (比较 He rose as she entered. 强调同时)她一进来,他就站起来了。

主句情况显然发生在从句情况之后 Let us set out *when/after* the sun has set. (RHD) 我们日落后出发吧! He went to his old job *when* the war ended. 战争结束后他重操旧业。*When* I come back, I shall see him. 我回来后要见到他的。

从句情况显然发生在主句情况之后 We had just fallen asleep

when the bell rang. (并非回答 *When did you fall asleep?* 而是回答 *What happened when/after you had fallen asleep?*) 我们刚睡着, 门铃就响了。He had hardly stepped in the hut *when* it began to rain. (以上二句 *when* 前无逗号, 但下句后面的三句中 *when* 前有逗号) 他刚跨进小屋, 就下起雨来。 *When/By* the time (that) I got to the station, they were already there. 我来到车站时他们已在那里。 We were about to start, *when* it began to rain. 我们正准备出发, 忽然下起雨来。 They arrive at six, *when* we all have dinner. (LDCE 解释这个 *when* 相当 *and then*, 用法像是并列连词) 他们 6 点到, 然后我们一起吃晚饭。 He stayed there till Sunday, *when* he started for Chicago. (RHD 解释这个 *when* 相当 *and then* 或 *upon/after which*, 按后一释义该 *when* 属关系副词性质) 他在那里呆到星期日, 然后去芝加哥了。

我们认为当 *when* 及 *where* 前有逗号, 而所引导从句显然修饰主句中一个时间名词或处所名词时, 该 *when* 或 *where* 即用作关系副词, 而从句为非限制性定语从句 (上一段中最后二例句里, *when...* 从句分别修饰主句中的 *six* 与 *Sunday*, 也应看作非限制性定语从句):

The Queen will visit the town in May, *when/at* which time she will open the new hospital. (ALD) 女王将于五月份访问此城, 届时将主持该新建医院的开业典礼。

I went to a shop, *where* I happened to see him. 我到一家商店去, 在那儿偶然看到了他。 He took the 9:09 train to Woodshed, *where* he caught a subway to the city. (RHD) 他乘 9 点零 9 分的火车到伍塞得, 在那里赶上一趟去市内的地铁。

11.2 It's... since/from... 与 It/I was... before... 等

表示“从某一时间”与“从某一处所”，英语分别用 *since* (介词或连词) 与 *from* (介词)：It is (now) three months *since* then/*since* he was married. 从那时/从他结婚到现在，已是三个月了。It is thirty miles *from* London. 这里离伦敦是 30 英里。

表示距离还可以把介词短语放在句首：From Boston to New York (it) is two hundred miles. 从波士顿到纽约是 200 英里。

以上各句中的 *it* 指有关的时间量或距离。应注意，表示时间量虽意指从过去持续到现在，也最常用一般现在时 *It is/seems/must be* 等，而较少用现在完成时；如果 *since* 引导从句，从句多用一般过去时，很少用现在完成时：*It is/has been* (较少用) three years *since I saw him last*. (RHD) 从我上次见他到现在，已经三年了。

比较：

This *is* the tenth day *since I wrote* to him. (不可说：This has been the tenth day *since*...) 从我上次给他写信到今天，已经十天了。

It *is* five years *since the boy became* a pioneer. 从这孩子成为少先队员以来，已经五年了。

It *is* five years *since the boy was* a pioneer. (*since* 从句的谓语表示持续状态时；从句意指“从该状态结束以来”) 从这孩子不再是少先队员以来，已经五年了。

How long *is* it *since you were* in London? 从你离开(或“上次去”)伦敦以来有多久了？

It *is* over three years *since she died*. 她死了已经三年多了。

It *seems* ages/*must be* almost ten years *since we last met*. 从我们上次见面以来，觉得已经很久/一定将近十年了。

It's a year since I've had roast mutton. (RHD)(从句很少用现在完成时)从我那次吃烤羊肉以来,已经有一年了。

It ... 主句中,只有在特别强调持续过程时,才用现在完成时:

It *has been* years since I enjoyed myself so much as last night. (LDCE) 我已经有好多好多年没有像昨天晚上这样高兴了。

It *has been* approximately a decade since it was last performed. (RHD) 从这出戏上次演出以来,已将近十年了。

但在表示到过去某一时刻为止的时间量时,主句用一般过去时(较少用过去完成时),从句用过去完成时:

It *was* seven years since he *had entered* the navy (till that time). 从他进海军到那时,已是7年光景。

It *was* ten years since they *had lived* here. (since 从句的谓语表示持续状态,从句指“该状态结束以来”)从他们搬走到那时,已经过了十年。

It *had been* so long since we *had* seen each other (till that day). 从我们在那时之前相见之日到那一天,已经是好久了。

since 从句前不可用 ago,不可说: It is ten years ago since he left. 要去掉 ago,或把 since 改为 that: It's ten years since he left. It's ten years ago that my brother left for America. (Wood)(后一句为分裂句)

当 since 从句前(或后)的主句不是 It is/was... 而是以具体的人或事物为主句主语时,这些主句的谓语动词就多用完成时态;指 till now 用现在完成时,指 till then/that time(过去)用过去完成时;而从句谓语动词则根据所表示的是否持续状态而主要分别用过去时与现在完成时:

从句表非持续的变动用一般过去时

He has been(不用 is) a notability(主句持续状态)since he wrote(不用 has written) the book. 从他写了这本书以来,他一直是惹人注目的人物。

We have made many friends (主句反复行为)since we came here. 从我们到这里以来,我们已交了好多朋友。

Has anything happened (主句表非持续的变动,疑问句)since he left home? 他离开家以后,发生什么事了吗? Nothing has happened (主句表非持续的变动,否定句)since he left home. 他离开家以后,什么事也没发生。

I met her last week. Since we left school (till then), we had often written to each other. (从句情况虽然发生在主句过去情况之前,但因从句表示的是非持续的变动,仍常用一般过去时而不常用 since we had left school 之类的过去完成时)我上星期见到她了。从我们毕业到这次见面,我们常有书信来往。

He had lived with us since he returned/
was back. (不常用 since he had returned/been back)从他回到那时为止,他一直和我们住在一起。

从句表持续的状态用现在完成时

He has always been a pet of yours ever since he has worked in the office. 他在这个办事处工作以来,他一直是你所宠爱的人。

We have made many friends since we have lived here. 从我们住在这里以来,我们已交了好多朋友。

Nothing has happened since he has been here. 从他到这里以后,什么事也没发生。(比较: Nothing has happened since he was here/he left.)从他离开这里以后,什么事也没发生。

We had often written to each other since he had been to Shanghai. (since he had been to Shanghai till that time —— 从句表示到过去某时为止的持续状态,用过去完成时,不可用一般过去时)从他去上海直到那时,我们常有书信来往。

He had lived with us since he had been home. 从他回家后到那时为止,他一直和我们住在一起。

非正式说法片面强调现在情况时, *since* 复合句的主句甚至从句中都可使用一般现在时:

I *feel* much better since I was given an injection. 给我注射一针以后, 我觉得好多了。

It's dull in our town since my playmates left. (Browning) 从跟我一起玩的伙伴们离开后, 我们城里很无聊。

I have been walking/*am walking* (主句可用现在进行时) to work since my car broke down. 从我的汽车坏了以后, 我就总是走着上班。

Ever since I can *remember*, even when I was quite a child, people have always told me that I had no perseverance, no strength of will. (Morris) (*since I can remember* 实为 *since the beginning of the time I can remember* 之意) 从我能回忆起的时候, 甚至很小的时候, 人们总是对我说我没有坚持精神, 没有毅力。

Since I'm *married*, give you my honour, I've not touched a bit of stamped paper. (Thackeray) 我以我的名誉担保, 从我结婚后, 我真的没有摸过书本。

比较下列表示时间量的 4 种句型:

自从句所指时间	到从句所指时间
自过去到现在	自现在到将来
It is/has been... since... (从句用一般过去时)	It will be... before... (从句用一般现在时指将来)
It is/has been so long since we <u>met</u> .	It will be five years before we <u>meet</u> . It won't be long before we <u>go</u> .

续表

自从句所指时间	到从句所指时间
自(从句的)过去到过去 It was/had been... since... (从句用过去完成时) It was/had been so long since we <u>had met</u> .	自过去到(从句的)过去 It was/had been... before... (从句用一般过去时) It was some time before I <u>saw</u> him. It wasn't long/hadn't been 5 minutes before I <u>noticed</u> that.

前述以 It(+ is/was 等)为主语表示时间量或距离(空间量)的句子极为常见。但英语还有时以具体的人或事物 sb./sth. (+ is/was 等)为主语,接表时间或距离词语,再接 before、from 等引导的从句或介词短语,中国学生对此多不熟悉。

表示人或事物持续状态的时间量:

It/I was a long while **before** I could rise. (岩波)(这类词中 I was... 意义相当于 I remained/stayed there...)我过了很长时间才能站起身来。

Goodyear was another four years in which things went very badly with him, **before** he made the discovery how to vulcanize rubber completely. (*Easier Scientific English Practice*, p. 3) 古德伊尔又过了情况很糟的4年之久,他才发现了能把橡胶完全硫化的方法。(比较 Goodyear remained in that state for another four years **before**...)

I suppose I had not been five minutes on Morroccan soil **before** I noticed the overloading of the donkeys and was infuriated by it. (*Advanced English*, Book 2, p. 18)(兼用 on... 介词短语状语和 before... 时间状语从句)我觉得,我在摩洛哥的土地上呆了还不到5分钟就注意到这里驴驮的东西过于沉重,为

此非常气愤。

We were six days on the boat. (LDCE, vessel 条)(six days 与 on the boat 皆为状语)我们在船上过了6天。

I was 20 days hacking and hewing at it at the bottom. I was 14 more getting the branches and the vast spreading head of it cut off. (Defoe) (20/14 days 与 hacking.../getting... 皆为状语) 20天以来,我一直在那大树底下砍啊砍啊。又是14天之久,我一直砍着,把树枝和那巨大的树的上半部砍了下来。

表示人或事物的处所与另一处所的距离:

Even today man is still a long way *from* malaria eradication. (许国璋主编《英语》, Book 4)即使在今天,人类要达到完全消灭疟疾的目标,还有很长的路要走。

Life could evolve only if the planet is the right distance *from* its sun. With a weaker sun than our own, the planet would have to be closer to it. 只是在行星离它所绕恒星距离合适的情况下,生命才会发展。如果那颗恒星比我们的太阳热量小些,该行星就必须离它较近。

11.3—11.6 表对应关系的不只方式从句与比较从句

11.3 as 引导表示“对应”等关系的多种状语从句

连词 *as* 多用于引导时间从句、方式从句和比较从句,但它不只是引导这样三种状语从句,这正像是:连词 *when*、*while* 引导时间从句,但不只引导时间从句;连词 *if*、*in case* 多引导条件从句,但远不

只引导条件从句;连词 *that* 多引导原因从句、结果从句和目的从句,但也不只引导那样三种状语从句。

when、*while* 引导时间从句以外的各种状语从句:

Liberty is useless, *when* /if it does not lead to action. (条件从句, adverbial clause of condition) 自由如果不激起行动,自由就毫无意义。

He threatened to leave *when* /although he had no intention of leaving. (让步从句, adverbial clause of concession) 虽然他无意离开这里,他却威胁说他要离开。

How can we finish *when* /since/if you won't help? (原因从句或条件从句, adverbial clause of cause/condition) 既然/要是你不肯帮忙,我们哪能弄完呢?

While /As long as there's life, there's hope. (条件从句) 只要有生命,就总是有希望。

While /Though he appreciated the honor, he could not accept the position. (让步从句) 他虽然很重视这一荣誉,却不能接受这一职位。

They had only three rakes *while* /but they needed five. (对照从句, adverbial clause of contrast, 回答 What in contrast to?) 他们只有 3 把耙子,可是他们需要 5 把。

While their country has plenty of oil, ours has none. (对照从句) 他们国家有的是石油,而我们一点也没有。

His eldest son became a barrister; the second entered the church, *while* the youngest made the army his career. (Wood) (对照从句) 他的大儿子当了律师,二儿子做了牧师,而最小的儿子选择从军为其职业。

if、*in case* 引导条件从句以外的各种状语从句:

If I am wrong, you are not right. (岩波) (对照从句) 如果说我

错了,你也并非正确。(全句可称“松散条件句”)

If/Though they are poor, they are at any rate happy. (让步从句)虽然他们穷,但不管怎么说他们很幸福。

She is thirty, *if* (she is) a day. (RHD)(语气状语从句, adverbial clause of modality, 一种特殊惯用短句, 见本节后面 *as* 引导的及其他形式的语气状语短句、短语)可以肯定,她有 30 了。

虽然 *in case* 有时相当 *if*: Fire *in case/if* you are resisted. (如果碰到抵抗,你就开枪。),却也常常不同于 *if*, 引导的不是条件从句:

We hid behind some bushes *in case/for fear that/lest* (lest 用于较陈旧正式说法) *passers-by* should see us. (虽不宜说该从句表示“反面目的”或“否定的目的”,但还可以说这是目的从句, adverbial clause of purpose, 不过所回答的不是“To what purpose?”,而是“What to prevent?”:表示要“排除某种结果”的目的)我们躲在一些树丛后边,以免过路行人会看见我们。

Take these pills *in case* you feel ill on the boat. (CGE) (What to prepare against? 表示要“防备某种结果”,不是“排除”)拿着这些药以防你在船上会晕船。

In case you don't remember my name, I've enclosed a picture. (RHD)(防备某种结果)我随信附上一张照片,以防您记不得我的名字。

Take your dancing shoes *in case* you decide to go dancing. (LDCE) (With what possibility in view? 表示要“准备可能结果”,不是“防备”不愿发生的事)带上你的舞鞋,也许到时候你想去跳舞。

that 引导原因从句、结果从句、目的从句以外的状语从句:

Your son is no longer a child *that* you should use the rod. 你儿子不是小孩了,你怎么还能拿棍子打呢?

I'm not a woman *that* I should worry about such trifles. (RHD)

我不是女人,不会为这些琐事发愁的。

We are not pigeons *that* we should eat dry peas. (Erades, p. 155) 我们不是鸽子,怎么能吃干豌豆呢?

以上三句的主句都是否定句。从句不应说是结果从句 (adverbial clause of result/effect), 它不是回答 To what effect? 而是回答 What presumption (to be ruled out)? 它表示从被否定情况得出的推论, 可以称为推论从句 adverbial clause of inference (Erades)。

Where is he *that* you (should) come without him? 他在什么地方? 你怎么没和他一起来?

What have I done *that* he should cut me? (岩波)我干了什么事伤了他? 他怎么不理我了呢?

Do you have any sense of beauty *that* you should praise such paintings? (RHD) 你有一点审美感没有? 你怎么会赞美这种画呢?

Have you nothing to do *that* you are sitting here idle? (Erades, p. 154) 你一点可干的事都没有吗? 怎么就闲坐在这儿呢?

以上四句的主句都是疑问句。从句不应说是结果从句, 它不是回答 To what effect? 而是回答 Seeing what consequence (that gives rise to the doubt)? 它表示由某可疑事项造成的情况, 据以推想其原因, 也可以归为推论从句。

另外, 用于若干形容词及分词后, 原属名词从句性质的介词宾语 *that* 从句, 由于介词的省略, 也形成了状语从句 (见 8.15)。这些状语从句表示形容词及分词所指属性、状态的关系方面或造成原因, 可分别称为方面从句 (adverbial clause of respect/restriction) (Zandvoort) 与原因从句:

Are you aware of the difficulty? Are you aware (of 现已不用) *that* there is a difficulty? (LDCE) (方面从句, 回答 What in relation/respect to? 如问 What in respect to are you aware? 即

答 I am aware (in respect) that...)你知道这种难处吗? 你知道这里面有难处吗?

Are you certain of/about that? I'm certain **that** he saw me.
(ALD) (方面从句)关于这一点,你能肯定吗? 我肯定他看见我了。

She is confident/convinced **that** he is honest. (方面从句可修饰分词)她确信他是诚实的。

I'm sorry **that** I caused you such annoyance. (原因从句)对不起,我给您添了这些麻烦。She is annoyed **that** you are going. (岩波)(原因从句可修饰分词)因为你要走,她很生气。

和以上所述能引导多种状语从句的连词 when、while、if、in case、that 比较起来,连词 as 能够引导的状语从句种类更多。连词 as 除引导大家较熟悉的时间从句、方式从句、比较从句外,还能引导方面从句、依照从句、对照从句、比例从句,这几种从句都属于表示事物横向联系的“对应关系”状语从句(方式从句、比较从句亦属“对应关系”状语从句这一大类)。而且,连词 as 还能引导原因从句与结果从句,这后二者属于表示事物纵向联系“因果关系”状语从句的另一大类。另外,连词 as 还常引导一些惯用短句,作为一种特殊的语气状语从句。

1) as 引导方式从句(adverbial clause of manner; 回答 How? In what manner?):

Do **as** you would be done by. 你要人怎样待你,你就要怎样待人。

Do in Rome **as** the Romans do. (谚语)入乡随俗。

I bought the house just **as** it stood/was. (岩波)这房子当时没有装修,原样不动,我就买了它。

All was **as** it had been. (RHD) (was 是实意动词,不是联系动词)一切都和原先一样。

That is *as* it should be. (RHD) (*is* 是实意动词, 所接是方式从句, 不是表语从句) 那就应该是这个样子。

2) *as* 引导比较从句 (adverbial clause of comparison; 回答 What in comparison with?):

He is not so old *as* she (is). (not so ... *as* ... 只表示主语属性、特征的程度较低) 他的年龄没有她那么大。

He is not as old *as* she (is), but much older. 他的年龄和她的不一样大, 而是比她的大得多。

He isn't as old *as* she (is). (*isn't* 后多用副词 *as*, 而不用 *so*) 他的年龄没有她那么大。(也可能意思是“他的年龄和她的不同”, 也许较小, 也许较大)

I am not as old *as* people would think (I am). (对上下文所肯定的同等程度比较加以否定时多用 not *as* ... *as* ...) 我不是人们往往认为的那么大年龄。

Do you think I'll believe him? I'm not as foolish *as* all that. 你以为我(那么傻)会相信他吗? 我还没能傻到那个程度。

3) *as* 引导方面从句 (adverbial clause of respect/restriction; 回答 What in relation/respect to? In what sense? With what restriction? 等)

She is really quite good *as* girls go. (RHD) 作为女孩子来说, 她就满不错了。

She is not a bad servant *as* /so far as servants go. 作为仆人来说, 她不是一个很差的女仆。

He meant no harm, *as* I understand him. 就我对他的理解来说, 他毫无恶意。

His criticism, *as* I remember, was highly esteemed. 我记得, 他的评论受到大家的高度重视。

Their position, *as* (it is) compared with what it was, has been

improved. 他们的境况和过去相比已有改善。

4) *as* 引导依照从句(adverbial clause of accordance; 回答 What in accordance with?):

She sang *as* (she had) promised. (并非回答 In what manner?)
按她答应过的那样,她唱了歌。

They said that the demonstration would go on *as* (it had been) planned. 他们说游行还要按原计划进行。

He left *as* (he had) agreed (to leave). (RHD)他按他同意过的那样离开了。

5) *as* 引导对照从句(adverbial clause of contrast; 回答 What in contrast to?):

As I would not be a slave, so I would not be a master. (Lincoln)
(并非回答 What in comparison with?) 我既不愿做奴隶,也就不愿意做奴隶主。

He was as popular *as* his father (was) not. (RHD) 他为人们喜爱,正如他父亲不招人喜欢那样。(如前一 *as* 特别重读,强调同等程度比较,则后面为比较从句)他的父亲非常不招人喜欢,他却同样不寻常地为人们喜爱。

She is as innocent *as* she is pretty. (RHD) 她既是秀美可爱,又是天真无邪。(重点在主句表语)

Two is to four *as* eight is to sixteen. 2 比 4 等于 8 比 16。

Reading is to the mind *as* food is to the body. 读书对于心灵的重要性犹如食物对于身体。

Leaves are to the plant *as* /what lungs are to the animal. *As* lungs are to the animal, so are leaves to the plant. 叶子对于植物说来,犹如肺对于动物一样。

6) *as* 引导比例从句(adverbial clause of proportion; 回答 What in proportion to?): One grows wiser *as* one grows older. The older one

grows, the wiser one becomes. (详见 11.6) 一个人的年龄越大, 懂的事就越多。

7) *as* 引导原因/理由从句 (adverbial clause of cause/reason; 回答 Why? For what reason? *as/since* 从句指听者已知的原因, 多前位; 指听者未知的原因为 *because...*, 前或后位):

As he was young/Young as he was, he was not equal to that task. (RHD) 因为他还年轻, 他不能胜任这一工作。

As he was tired/Tired as he was, he went to bed at once. 因为很累, 他马上就睡了。

As I know him well/Knowing him as I do, I know what he would do. (岩波) 因我很了解他, 我知道他要怎么办。(三句仅句首的 *as* 可换作 *since*, 用 *since* 为正式说法)

8) *as* 引导让步从句 (adverbial clause of concession; 回答 What granted/conceded?):

Young as he was/Though he was young; he knew some family secrets. 虽然他还幼小, 他也知道家里一些秘密。

Tired as/though he was, he sat up late studying last night. 虽然很累, 他昨夜还是学习到很晚才睡。

Interesting as the book does the ordinary reader/Although the book interests the ordinary reader, it yet fails to please literary critics. 这本书虽然使普通读者很感兴趣, 却未能取悦文学评论家们。

Try as she would/Though she tried hard, she could never remember a word of what he said. (RHD) 她费了很大的劲回想, 却怎么也想不起来他说的话了。

9) *as* 引导语气从句 (adverbial clause of modality) “语气”指说话人对所述客观情况附加的主观看法、主观说明 (情态动词或称语气动词只是表明所述属于可能、需要或必须的主观看法, 语气副词可表示

更多语气意义)。因状语包括修饰或限定动词、形容词、副词、介词短语以至全句的各种词语及结构,所以,表示语气的副词、短语及短句也都归为状语成分。语气状语从句多修饰整个主句;因它是说话人附加的“主观”说明,所以就原句“客观”情况提出的各种问题,都不会是针对语气状语从句(或其他形式语气状语)的;只有就说话人的看法提问,才能针对语气从句(或其他形式语气状语):

You are wrong, *as* it appears. 从句回答针对说话人看法提出的问题 Are you sure in saying so? 它不是表示主句情况与任何客观事物的关系特征,而是表示说话人对该情况不敢十分肯定,比较:

Probably/Methinks/Quite likely/I'm afraid, you are wrong. 看来,你错了。

He is my best friend, my second self, *as* it were. 他是我最好的朋友,可以说,是我的贴心人。

As it chanced, he was absent on that particular day. 真是凑巧,就是那一天他没有到。

As luck would have it, I arrived in Paris just on the day of her departure. 好像是命里安排,我来到巴黎正好是在她离开巴黎的那一天。

This man, *as you know*, is good for nothing. (*as you know* 意为“如你所知”,不同于 *you know*,后者意为“你该知道”,亦可用作语气状语)这个人,正如你所知道的那样,是个无用的废物。

除一些惯用短句外,很多惯用的短语如 *to tell the truth*, *to sum up*, *generally speaking*, *in a word*, *in fact*, *as a matter of fact/course* (介词短语)等,也用作语气状语。不同形式的语气状语,意义可很相近:

as it appears / apparently / meseems / I believe

as it were / so to speak / you may say so
frankly (speaking) / putting it frankly / to tell the truth
She is 30, *if a day / undoubtedly / sure enough / to be sure*.
He'll come, *certainly / naturally / (as a matter) of course*.

11.4 as much as we / more than we 从句可换作... as us / ... than us 的短语

连词 *before*、*after*、*since*、*as* 兼为介词、副词，连词 *than* 仅可兼做介词。作为副词，本身即为句中状语；作为介词，与名词性成分构成介词短语状语或定语等；而作为连词，则要引导状语从句。

before、**after**、**since** 用作副词：

You said, "I saw her here long ago." You told me you had seen her there long *before*. 你说：“我很久以前就在某个地方见过她。”你告诉我说很久以前你就在某个地方见过她。

I had not been home since the Thursday *before*. (Snow) 从那天以前的星期四到那时，我一直没有回家。(the Thursday before ≠ last Thursday)

You should have told me so *before*. (ALD) 你早就该告诉我。

She had never *before* had that feeling. (Galsworthy) 她以前从来也没有过这样的感情。

The day *after*, he apologized. (ALD) 次日，他来道歉。

They lived happily ever *after*. (ib) 从此他们过着幸福的生活。

We had dinner and went home *after*. (LDCE) 我们一起吃饭，后来就回家了。

She moved to London last May and has *since* got a job on a newspaper. (ALD) 她去年五月到伦敦后找到一份在报社的工作。

We parted and we haven't met *since*. (Macaulay) 我们分手了, 以后再也没有见面。

How long *since* (ago) was it? (岩波) 那是多长时间以前的事?

before、*after*、*since* 用作介词:

After you, please. (RHD) 请您先走。

We inquired *after* him. (ib) 我们向某人问候他的安康。

We have a good day's work *before* us. (Doyle) 我们面前摆着整整全天的工作要干。

Don't put the cart *before* the horse. (谚语) 不要本末倒置。

The sun has been up *since* five. (WBD) 太阳五点就出来了。

I was (had been) ages *since* my last meal, and I was very hungry. (Swan) 到那时我已好久没吃饭了, 饿极了。

before、*after*、*since* 用作连词:

He had to be called two or three times *before* he would come to his dinner. (Maugham) 必须叫他两三次, 他才来吃饭。

I hadn't waited him long *before* he came. (ALD) 我没等多长时间, 他就来了。

I found the letter long *after* he had gone away. (Pamler) 他走后很长时间我才发现这封信。

We'll arrive *after* you've left. (ALD) 我们将在你走后到达。

Since I was a child I have lived in England. (Shaw) 从孩提时代起, 我就住在英国。

We've been friends ever *since* we met at school. (LDCE) 自从上学的时候认识, 我们就一直是朋友。

as 用作副词(与 *also* 同源)有 to the same degree 等含义:

I haven't known him *as* long as you. (ALD) 我没有你认识他的时间长。(后一个 *as* 为连词)

As many as fifty candidates had applied for the post. (CGEL) 申

请这一职位的人多达 50。

Sylvis sings *as* sweetly as her sister. (Alexander) 西尔维亚唱得和她的妹妹一样好。

Your have qualities that are just *as* important. (Du Maurier) 你拥有的品质同样重要。

最常作连词的 *as* 在 12 世纪以前只是副词,与副词 *also* 源出同一古英语词(意为 *all so*);12 世纪起,可兼作连词;到 13 世纪 *as* 才出现作介词接名词、代词的用法(参见 WNNCD)。而 *than* 12 世纪以前只是连词,后因所引导比较从句常被省略得只剩一个代词,使 *than* 常被误认为介词应接用宾格代词,约 16 世纪时,接宾格的用法已较普遍,就可以承认 *than* 能兼作介词了(ib):

My employer treated my request *as* a joke. (LDCE) (连词 *as* 引导的方式从句 *as a joke is treated* 可略作 *as a joke is*,但一般都省略到 *as* 后只剩下 *a joke*,使 *as* 转而成为引导名词的介词)我的雇主把我的请求看成玩笑。

You seem to dislike him as much as we/us (they/them). (Wood) 看来你像我们/他们一样不喜欢他。(正式说法中,接宾格代词时只表示“看来你像不喜欢我们/他们一样,也不喜欢他”)

He has more time *than* I/me. (Thomson). 他比我更有时间。

He is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as intelligent as} \\ \text{more intelligent than} \end{array} \right\}$ she/her. (GCE)

He is a person *than* whom I can imagine no one more courteous. (RHD) 他比我能想到的任何一个人更客气。

You spent more money *than* was intended to be spent. (CGEL) 你花的钱比实际预计的多。

如果主句中只有一个名词或代词,作为比较从句所比的对象(或者是句子主体中只有一个名词或代词作为表示比较的介词短语所比的对象),各句意义明确而无歧义。但当主句(或句子主体)中有两个

名词或两个代词,(或者是有一名词还有代词)为所比对象时,则省略得只剩一个名词或代词的比较从句(或表比较的介词短语),就可能造成句子的歧义:

Tom likes me better than Harry. (Hornby) 这个句子可能有两种解释: Tom likes me better than (he likes) Harry. 汤姆喜欢我胜过喜欢哈里。 Tom likes me better than Harry (does). 汤姆比哈里更喜欢我。

He loves the dog more than his wife (loves the dog). (GCE) 他比他的妻子更爱这只狗。 He loves the dog more than (he loves) his wife. 他更爱这只狗,对他的妻子不怎么疼爱。(如在 than 后使用代词,则非正式说法可用同一 than her 表示以上两种不同意义,仅靠上、下文或具体情景辨明实际所指: He loves the dog more than her. (GCE), 而英语正式说法前后两种意义要分别以 than her 或 than she 表示: He loves the dog more *than* she. He loves the dog more *than her*. 后者为... than he loves her 之略。)

I know you better than him. (Chambers) 我对你比对他更了解。在非正式英语中,这句话(... than him) 的意思也可能是“我比他更了解你”。在正式英语中,这句英国话只能是 I know you better than (I do) him. (Chambers) 而要表达“我比他更了解你”,应该是: I know you better than he (does)。

歧义句固然应该避免,可补足因省略而会使人误解的词语。但更多用到的还是省略形式。两种情况必须在某些方面是同一的,才能在别的方面进行比较,而主、从句中指同一事物的词语多不再重复。比较从句全无所略的较少:

She's as good an actress *as she is a singer*. (ALD) 她当演员和她当歌手一样出色。(她同时是演员又是歌手;比较作演员和作歌手同样的优秀程度)

His voice is as thin **as he is fat**. (RHD) 他本人非常肥胖, 他的声音却同样不同寻常地纤细。

The house is much taller **than it is wide**. (CGEL) 这个房子的高度比它的宽度大得多。

He speaks more quickly **than his secretary can take dictation**. (CGEL) 他说得太快, 他的秘书赶不上作记录。(speaks 和 can take dictation 相通)

比较从句与主句的谓语多是相通的, 这时从句谓语要多略去些, 或只留不同的助动词、情态动词、联系动词(主从句主语指同一人或事物时, 从句主句用代词):

You have as much right to vote **as you ever had**. (CGEL) 你现在享有充分的权利参加选举和你以前一样。(不说... as you ever had right)

She thinks her children more obedient **than (they were) last year**. (ib) 她觉得孩子们比去年更乖。(省略了 they were 一般也不会引起歧义)

I get up early **than I ought to**. (GCE) 我比规定的起得要早。

当主、从句谓语或表语相同而主语不同时, 比较从句多省略得只剩主语, 或仅带一个助动词、情态动词、联系动词:

He doesn't play half as well **as his sister**. (ALD) 他的演奏水平不及他姐姐的一半。

You've working much harder **than I (have)**. (CGEL) 你干工作一直比我努力。

She's applied for more jobs **than Joyce (has applied for)**. (ib) 她申报愿意从事的工作种类比乔伊斯多。

下面的句中都用了惯用的比拟的表现方法, 比较从句都是只由 as 引导一个主语, 可注意前后句相同开头辅音与相同元音的词:

I'm sorry, I can't read it. I'm **as blind as a bat** without my

glass. (DCIE)很抱歉,这资料我没法读。离开了眼镜,我就什么也看不清了。

There she stood, denying everything *as bold as brass*, in spite of all the evidence against her. (ib) 她就站在那儿,毫不羞耻地否认一切,尽管有很多的证据证明她有罪。

My wife never has time to get bored. She is *as busy as a bee* from morning to night. (ib) 我的妻子从来也没有时间感到厌倦,像蜜蜂一样从早到晚忙个不停。

I thought there would have been protestations and tears when I told her I wanted to move out of the flat, but no, she stayed *as cool as cucumber*. (ib) 当我告诉她我要搬出公寓时,我以为她会又哭又闹,可是,不,她很平静。

Of course I'll find my way about town all right! I am not *as green as grass*, just because I come from the country. (ib) 当然我会在城里找到各处走动的路,我来自乡村,但并不因此而那么幼稚无知。

We'd better have supper a little earlier tonight. The boys will be *as hungry as hunters* after their bike ride. (ib) 最好今天早点吃晚饭,骑车出去转了半天,孩子们一定饿得像狼一样了。

He was standing nearby, *large as life*. (NODE) 他明明就站在那里。

I think you are *as mad as a March hare*, and I don't want to see you any more, so please don't ring up, or write and thank me for this. (DCIE) 我觉得你轻狂得像三月的野兔,我不想看到你了,所以请不要打电话,或者写信来感谢我。

When I finally secured a small part in a television play my mother was *as proud as a peacock* and told all the neighbours about it. (ib) 当我最后在电视剧中有一个角色时,我的妈妈很自豪,告

诉了所有的邻居。

Warmth, to be “*as snug as a bug in a rug*” is the first important thing. (ib) 温暖, 暖和得像一只躲在毛毯里的臭虫, 那是最重要的。

You are *as thick as thieves*, you two. (ib) 你们两个人太亲密了。

To the layman's eye the 3 vases were *as like as peas in a pod*. (ib) 在外行人看来, 这三个花瓶像一个豆荚里的豌豆, 完全一样。

Attending a cooking class once a week, and running your own house, my girls, are *as different as chalk and cheese*. (ib) 每周在烹饪班上一堂课与自己操持家务之间, 孩子们呀, 区别甚远。

11.5 比较从句中可以或惯于省略的种种情况

比较从句略去主语者较少, 但惯略主语的用法颇应注意。现按所略为主语、谓语、表语、宾语等分述如下(注意有些可略可不略, 但有些是惯于略去, 不再“补足”的):

1) 从句只略掉主语

从句惯于略去可理解的主语 *it*、*what* 等:

There were not so many tickets available *as was expected*.
(Wood; ... as it was expected (that) there would be. 略去 *it* 与所引导从句中的主语从句 *that...*) 没弄到原想能弄到的那么多票。

There were more casualties *than was reported*. (... than it was reported that there were.) 伤亡人数比报告的伤亡数字要多。

I decided that I would stay no longer *than was absolutely*

necessary. (... no longer than what (the time that) was necessary. 参见 Jespersen, MEG, III, p. 179; 因 what 引导的是名词从句, 这里 than 实属介词性质, what 从句或带定语从句的名词 the time 为介词宾语) 我决定, 绝对必须停留几天就只停留几天, 决不久留。

Don't eat more *than (what) is good for you*. 吃东西适可而止, 不要过量。

I have done more *than (what) is required*. 我所完成的已超出了要求我完成的任务。

比较: Nothing could give me greater pleasure than what you have just told me. (Wood, CEU; Wood 解释说, 该 what 名词从句所带的 does 省略了, 不略时应为: ... than what you have just told me does 或 ... than that does which you have just told me. 实际上 what 从句后“所略”动词等皆不再用, 所以说 than 已转属介词, 见本书 11.4 更多类似用例) 你刚才告诉我的使我太高兴了, 别的什么也不能使我更高兴的。

从句略去与主句主语重复的主语:

There were not so many tickets available *as were asked for*.

(Wood; ... as tickets were asked for. 惯略从句主语 tickets) 没有弄到人们所要的那么多票。

There were more people present *than were/was expected*. (... than there were people expected. 或 ... than it was expected that there would be (many people) 皆惯略) 出席的人比预料的多。

Both houses were as clean *as (they) could be clean*. (they 可略; clean 惯略) 两所房子都极其干净。

The flower was as sweet *as (sweet) could be*. (岩波) 那花的芳香真是到了极点。

Progress has not been as fast *as (it) had been hoped (to be)*. (可略)没有取得原来希望的那么快的进展。

The town offers better cultural advantages *than (it) has been generally supposed (to offer)*. 这个城市提供的文化生活要比一般设想的更为优越。

2) 从句略去与主句谓语等重复的成分

从句可略去与主句谓语重复的谓语:

Fred doesn't calculate so accurately *as Arthur (does)*. 弗列德计算得不如亚瑟精确。

He drives faster and more dangerously *than you (do)*. 他比你开车开得快,也比较危险。

She plays with him *as a cat (plays) with a mouse*. (方式从句,非比较从句)她玩弄他就像猫玩弄耗子。

从句可略去重复的主语、谓语(留宾语、状语):

Tom hates him as much *as (he hates) me*. 汤姆像恨我一样恨着他。

The photographs disappointed my parents more *than (they did) me*. 这些照片使我父母比我更失望。

She works as carefully *as (she does) quickly*. (LDCE) 她的工作干得很快,也同样很细心。

I have always lived more in the future *than (I have lived) in the present*. (RHD) 我总是生活在对未来的想象中,而不大考虑自己生活在今天的现实中。

从句惯于略去重复的主语、助动词或情态动词:

I would just as soon stay at home *as go*. (岩波;... as I would go.) 如不去/与其去,我倒愿留在家里。

(Things are) Easier said *than (they are) done*. 好说不好办。说起来容易,做起来难。

I would rather/sooner die *than yield*. (... than I would yield.)
我宁愿死,也决不屈服。

His delight can be more easily conceived *than (it can be) described*. 他的欢乐心情不难想象,却难以形容。

3) 从句略去与主句表语等重复的成分

从句惯于略去与主句表语重复的表语:

They were as anxious *as he was (anxious)*. 他们像他一样焦急。
You will find these dates taste better *than (what) they look (to be)*. (Onions) 你将发现这些枣虽然看样子不大好,吃着却比较好吃。

He is a better man *than (what) you'll ever be!* (RHD) 你是永远也不会成为他这样的好人的!

从句略去重复的联系动词、表语:

To go ahead resolutely and fail is not so bad *as not to try at all (is)*. (句末表语惯略) 坚决前进即使失败也比无所作为要好。

He is better qualified to teach me *than I (am qualified to teach) him*. 要说我有资格教他,不如说他有资格教我。

从句惯于略去可理解的主语、联系动词:

I'll come as early *as (it is) possible (for me to come)*. 我将尽可能早来。

You arrived earlier *than (it was) usual/necessary (for you to arrive)*. (CGE) 你到得比平常早/比你必须来到的时间早些。

从句略去重复的主语、联系动词、表语(只留状语):

He is as diligent *as ever*. (可以说... as he ever was before. 但一般不再重复表语:... as he ever was diligent before.) 他现在还像以前一样勤奋。

She trembled lest he might be as cold to her *as (he had been) formerly*. (表语惯略) 她颤抖着, 害怕他会像以前那样, 对她那么冷冰冰的。

He is fonder of work than (she is fond) *of play*. 他喜欢工作胜过她喜欢玩。

She is better than (she was) *when I wrote you last*. (主语、系语可略, 表语惯略; 比较从句连词后只留状语从句) 她现在比我上次给你写信时好些了。

4) 从句略去与主句宾语等重复的成分

从句可略去与主语宾语等重复的宾语:

I haven't done as much *as I should have liked (to do)*. (不再重复代词 much: ... as I should have liked to do much.) 我本想多干些工作, 却没有干那么多。

They are as firm *as one could expect (them to be)*. (them to be firm 中的 firm 一般不再重复; 从句复合宾语和主语、谓语重复) 人们期望他们十分坚决, 他们真是十分坚决。

She may be as lucky *as she hopes (that she will be)*. (比较从句所含宾语从句和主句主语、联系动词、表语重复) 她希望自己幸运, 她真可能那么幸运。

More (people) know Tom Fool *than Tom Fool knows (so many people)*. (从句宾语和主句主语重复) 认识傻瓜汤姆的人比傻瓜汤姆认识的人要多。

I felt more excited *than I can say (that I felt)*. (比较从句所含宾语从句和主句主语、联系动词、表语重复) 我感到说也说不出来的那么异常激动。

He gets more orders *than we ever manage to (get)*. (GCE; 略去从句宾语 to get 中的 get) 他接到的订货数总多于我们一向所能接到的订货数。 She enjoyed it much more *than I*

expected (her to). (ib) 我没想到她喜欢这个,她却是非常喜欢。

从句可略去重复的谓语、宾语(只留主语):

You hate him as much *as I (hate him)*. 你像我一样恨他。

I love her more *than you (love her)*. 我比你更爱她。

从句略去重复的主语、谓语、宾语(只留状语):

They have produced twice as much sugar *as (they had) in the previous season*. 他们这一季的糖产量是上一季的二倍。

He described the scene as vividly *as (he would have done) if he had been there*. (Eckersley)(比较从句连词后只留状语从句)他把那情景描述得活灵活现,好像他曾在场一般。

I would rather choose a wife for myself *than (I would) for your son*. (RHD) 我更愿意给我自己找个媳妇,而不是给你儿子找媳妇。

He deceived us worse *than (he would have) if he had told us an outright lie*. (比较从句连词后只留状语从句)他这样欺骗我们,比直接撒谎还要恶劣。

关于 *as* 一词用作介词的详细用法,接形容词、分词、不定式、介词短语的用法,以及 *as* 引导宾语补语、主语补语的用法,见 12.2, 12.3。

11.6 比例从句 *as she talked* 可相当于 *the more she talked*

英语 *connectives* 译作关联词包括所有能引导从句或连接并列分句、并列词语的虚词与实词。

如 *that*、*as* 用作关系代词时为实词,就在定语从句中担任名词性成分(*that*、*as* 还可用作副词,担任句中状语,见 12.1, 12.2; 11.4); *that*、*as* 用作连词时就转化为虚词而不是担任从句中的任何成分。

状语从句一般是由各种连词引导的,但是比例从句虽可用 *as* 引导,却也可以不用连词引导,而由最常用连接副词 *the* 引导。所接主句中也用一个 *the* 与从句的 *the* 相呼应,不过这主句的 *the* 属于指示副词的性质:

The more she thought about it, *the more depressed* she became.

(ALD) (前面从句的 *the* 相当于 *how much ...* 之类,起连接作用;后面主句的 *the* 相当于 *so much ...* 之类,起指示的作用: *How much more* she thought about it, *so much more depressed* she became.) 她越想越觉得别扭。

比较连接副词 *However* 的连接作用: *However hard* he tries, he never seems able to do the work satisfactorily. (Eckersley) 尽管他工作很努力,但是看来他的工作从来都不让人满意。

但是更应该着重讨论的是:比例复合句不只“*The* + 形容词/副词比较级..., *the* + 形容词/副词比较级”这样一种形式。比例从句也可以用连词 *as* 引导(最初就是用 *as* 引导的),还可以用 *Wh*-连接代词/连接副词词组(如 *By how much*、*to what extent* 等)引导。*as* 引导的比例从句与其主句中的前后位置与句中结构也不是一成不变的。即使用 *the* 引导比例从句时,主句也不一定总是以 *the ...* 开头:主句的 *the ...* 可能在句末,也可能主句中比较级并不加 *the*; 而且,并不总是从句在前,也可能是主句在前。

这里,首先按引导比例从句所用的三种不同的关联词,分述如下:

1) 用连词 *as* 引导比例从句

主、从句都没有比较级形式的:

This thought grew as the days passed. (Dreiser) (从句并非要说明“与某事同时”,而是要说明“随该变动而...”) 随着日子一天一天的过去,这种想法越来越强烈。

As he grew dishearted, his work deteriorated. (CGEL) 他越是失

望,工作就做得越差。

As the strength of the defenders failed, so the courage of the attackers grew. (ib) 随着守卫人们的力量减弱,攻击者们的勇气在增长。

Her anger grew *as* she talked. (RHD) (意味 The more she talked, the more angry she became.) 她越说越生气。

从句中没有比较级形式的:

As he grew up, he became more cautious. (Zandvoort) 随着他渐渐地长大,他也越来越谨慎。(比较 As he grew older, he became more cautious. (ib))

As time goes on, we become wiser and wiser. 随着时光的流逝,我们变得越来越明智。

We can earn more or less (in proportion) *as* we work (better or not so well). 按我们工作的好坏,我们能挣得多些或少些。

主句、从句都有比较级形式的:

We get wiser *as* we get older. (Dreiser) (并非要说明两种情况发生在同时,而是要说明两种变动的程度相当) 随着年龄的增长,我们变得更加明智。

As it grew darker it became colder. (Thomson) 天越黑,就变得越来越冷。

As the champion grew weaker, his opponent's attacks became more and more violent. (Swan) 那位冠军越来越疲惫,他的对手的攻击就越来越强。

As the lane got narrower, the overhanging branches made it more difficult for us to keep sight of our quarry. (CGEL) 小径越来越窄,头顶的树枝就越发地使我们难以盯住要捕的猎物。

2) 用 Wh-形式词组等引导比例从句:

To what extent you work harder, *to that extent* you earn more.

(The harder you work, the more you earn.) 你工作越努力, 挣的钱就越多。

By how much the harder you practice, by so much the more skilled you become. (现通常简化为 The harder you practice, the more skillful you become.) 你越是勤学苦练, 你就越发技艺纯熟。

It is doubtful whether research proposals by Freud himself would have been approved by reviewers, **inasmuch as he was not affiliated to any academic institution**. (CGEL) 弗洛德越是不能加入学术机构, 越是值得怀疑他提出的研究报告能否被评论家通过。(比较 **inasmuch as** 与 **by so much as** 引导的比例复合从句: We were the more free **inasmuch as** we made it clearer that he was rather a weak man than a wicked. 我们渐渐地弄清他并不是很凶恶的, 而确实是个很衰弱的人, 我们就越发随便了。But **by precisely so much as** his power is diminished, the hired workman's power is increased. (Jespersen) 正是随着他的权力一点点减少, 那雇工的权力一点点增长。)

3) 用连接副词 **the** 引导比例从句:

主句在前(主句无指示副词 **the**, 或该 **the** ... 在主句末尾):

They became (the 可有可无) hungrier **the** harder they worked. (CGEL) 他们干得越使劲, 肚子就越饿。

His face darkened more and more **the** more he and my aunt observed each other. (Jespersen) 他和我的姑姑越是相对望着, 他的脸色就越是阴沉。

One wants the more, **the** more one has. (= The more one has, the more one wants. 岩波) 越有钱, 越贪钱。

从句在前(主句无指示副词 **the**, 或该 **the** ... 在主句开头):

The more you read of them, you will like them still better.
(Jespersen) 你越是更多地读到关于他们的叙述,你就越是喜欢他们。

The more one learns the more one wants to know. (谚语) (the more 主句的主语提前,部分倒装)人的知识越多,他的求知欲越强。

The more he eats the fatter he gets. (LDCE) (the fatter 主句表语提前,部分倒装)他吃得越多,就会越胖。

The more he thought about it, the angrier he grew. (Priestley)
(the angrier 主句的表语提前,部分倒装)他越想越生气。

The more I think about it the less I like it. (Cronin) (the less 主句的状语提前,亦属于部分倒装)我越想越觉得不喜欢它。

随着主句 the... 后位成分的提前,主句主语、谓语(或主语、联系动词)也常常倒装,或部分倒装即只是助动词、情态动词提到主语前边:

The more learned a man is, the more modest **he is / is he**. (谚语)
一个人越是有学问,他就越是谦虚。

The more I listened, the more **I laughed / did I laugh**. (主句原无助动词者主语前加 do 的适当形式)我越往下听,越是大笑不已。

当主句主语是名词时,特别是较长的名词或名词词组,更常用主谓倒装、部分倒装语序:

The more confidence you build up in yourself, the greater **are your chances of success**. (Collins)你越是有信心,成功的可能性就越大。

The later you arrive, the better the food is/**is the food**. (GCE)
来得越晚,吃得越好。

The more money some people earn, the less pleasure **they get out**

of it. (EGS) 有些人,钱赚得越多,从中获得的乐趣就越少。

在常用的 The..., the ... 型比例复合句中,从句、主句的联系动词 be(限定形式)多可略去;有时只是从句或只是主句原有该联系动词而被省略:

The higher the mountain, the purer the air. (RHD) 山越高,空气越纯净。

The harder a task (is), the *more interesting* I find it. (EGS) 任务越艰巨,我越觉得有趣。

甚至有时主句或从句中可理解的主语与联系动词或其他动词一起略去:

I want you out of here, and the sooner, the better. (ALD) 你给我走开,越快越好。

(The) More haste, (the) less speed. (RHD) (the 可略)欲速则不达。

The more noble, the more humble. (ib) 越是高尚,越是谦虚。

The less said the better. (CGEL) 说得越少越好。

11.7—11.10 表原因关系的包括条件、让步、程度、目的等类从句

11.7 特种原因:条件或让步;特种条件:程度或目的

11.3—11.6 所述表示事物与外界的对应(横向)关系的各类状语从句是性质相仿的:

She cooked a turkey exactly *as* my mother did. (GCE) (方式从句) 她完全按照我妈妈的方法做了一只火鸡。

This dress is twice *as* expensive as that. (ALD) (比较从句) 这件连衣裙比那件贵一倍。

As it grew darker it became colder. (Thomson) (比例从句) 天越黑,就越冷。

The reconstructed Roman village was not much as tourist attraction go. (DCIE) (方面从句:表示“从哪种意义上说”) 那重建的古罗马村庄,作为名胜来讲,没有多大意义。

As one grows older, one becomes more silent. (RHD) (比例从句) 随着年龄的增长,人就变得越来越沉默。

而下述表示事物与外界的因果(纵向)关系的各种状语从句则是性质相通的。

例如,与原因从句性质相通的有理由从句(adverbial clause of reason;主观推理中的原因)、条件从句(客观或主观上限定的原因)、让步从句(客观或主观上排除的原因):

Because/As/Since they've lit a fire, you can see the smoke rising. (原因从句)

As/Since they've lit a fire, the smoke must be seen rising across the river. (理由从句;顺推理,一般不用 *because* 表示理由。)

Though they have lit a fire, you cannot see smoke rising as it is burning with little fume. (让步从句)

以上是因果顺述或是从原因到结论的顺推理;以下则是从理据到设想原因的逆推理(原因从句 *as/because*...亦可后置,形成从果到因的“逆推”,而结果从句只能后置,见下文):

As/Since you can see the smoke rising, they must have lit a fire. (理由从句;逆推理)

If you can see smoke rising, they must have lit a fire. (条件从句;逆推理)

Though you cannot see smoke rising now, they may as well have

lit a fire that is burning with little fume. (让步从句; 逆推理)

带原因从句的主从复合句, 如果以主句为从句、以从句为主句更换一下, 复合句就会成为带结果从句的主从复合句。而与结果从句性质相通的有推论从句(主观推理中的结果, 见 11.3, 11.8)、目的从句(主观意愿中的结果)、程度从句(主句所述某属性或特征的程度所致的结果):

My pencil fell under my desk, *so that I couldn't see it*. (DAI)

(结果从句)我的铅笔掉到了桌子底下, 结果我看不见它了。

My pencil must have fallen under my desk *that I couldn't see it*.

(推论从句) 铅笔一定是掉到了桌子底下, 我看不见它。

Ask her to hurry up with these letters *so that I can sign them*.

(Priestley) (目的从句)让她快点写信, 以便我可以签字。

My mother lives so far away *that we hardly ever see her*.

(Chambers) (程度从句)妈妈住得离我们很远, 很难见她一面。

“因”与“果”是纵向关系的两端。that 状语从句主要是表示后果这一端的情况, 只是当 that 语句相应意义的其他词语连用时, 所构成复合词, 才能表示起因那一端的情况, 用于引导原因、理由、条件、让步各种状语从句(参见 11.8)。

now that、seeing that 引导原因从句、理由从句:

Seeing that he's ill, he's unlikely to come. (ALD) (原因)因为他病了, 他大概不会来了。

Now that you mentioned it, I do remember the incident. (ib) 经你一提, 我想起那件事了。

assuming/supposing that 引导条件从句或让步从句, but that 与 providing/provided that 引导条件从句, granting/granted that 引导让步从句:

Assuming/supposing that your wife died, wouldn't you be tortured by remorse? (RHD)(条件)如果你的妻子死了,你难道不会很懊恼吗?

Assuming/supposing that he was in his right mind, that was no excuse for his conduct. (让步)即使他的想法正常而无恶意,那也决不能为他的行为作丝毫辩解。

Granted/Granting that he has enough money to buy the house, it doesn't mean he is going to do that. (ib)(让步)即使他有足够的钱买房子,也不一定意味着他要买。

I'll lend you the money **providing/provided** you pay it back before Easter. (Swan)(条件)只要你在复活节前还清,我就借给你这笔钱。

至于单独的 **that** 引导原因从句、让步从句的一种句型,那实为一种定语从句的结构(参见 9.7) 那种结构既可以表示评论、感叹又可以表示原因、让步。比较:

Oh, **that** I were with her now. (= I wish I was with her now.)
(Chambers) 我真的希望现在自己和她在一起。

Oh **that** that rain would stop! (感叹) 雨竟然停了!

Michael, **fool as/that** he was, completely ruined the dinner.
(GCE; 原因或评论) 迈克尔本是个傻瓜,他把这次宴会完全糟蹋了。

Naked that/as I was, I braved the storm. (ib; 让步) 我虽然没有穿衣服,却冒着暴风雨冲向前去。

Different that the task was, they managed to accomplish it in time. (让步) 虽然任务很重,但他们还是设法如期完成了。

另外,还有两种以 **that** 引导的状语从句比较特殊,即修饰若干“动宾”型短语动词的、修饰某些形容词与分词的 **that** 从句。用于这两种情况的 **that** 从句虽显然起状语作用而属于状语从句,但他

们前面原来是带有介词的,它们本是属于名词从句性质的介词宾语从句。现在,所带介词已惯于略去不用,而该 *that* 从句仍可像介词短语那样表示关系方面(一种横向联系特征)或表示原因(一种纵向联系特征),就成了 *that* 引导的方面从句与原因从句(参见 8.14)。

1) 修饰“动宾”型短语动词的方面从句:

Have you made up your mind about what you'll do? (从句前有 about) I have made up my mind ***that something should be done***. (NDEC) 你下定决心怎么办了吗? 我已下定决心要处理此事。

Take care of it. Take care ***that you don't break it***. (Palmer) 小心别弄坏它。

Oddly enough I had no doubt in my mind ***that they would be glad to see me***. (Wells) 奇怪的是,原来我毫不怀疑,确信他们见到我准会很高兴的。(比较: I had no doubt ***about it***.)

2) 修饰形容词、分词的方面从句:

I am convinced ***that he is innocent***. (CGEL) 我相信了他的无辜。(比较: I am convinced of his innocence.)

I am sure ***that he is here now***. (GCE) 我相信他会在这儿。(比较: I am sure ***of*** his coming on time.)

They were anxious for your return. They were anxious ***that you should return***. (Hornby) 他们着急,盼你回来。

I am certain ***that he saw me***. (ALD) 我确信他看见了我。(比较: I am certain ***of*** the fact.)

I am determined ***that there should be no delay***. (Close) 我决定对此不能有任何的拖延。(比较: I've determined ***on*** going alone.)

I am confident ***that he will succeed***. 对于他成功,我很有把握。

(比较: I am confident *of* his success.)

3) 修饰形容词、分词的原因从句:

I am surprised *that you didn't call the doctor before*. (CGEL; 原因) 我很吃惊, 因为在此之前, 你竟然没有叫医生。(比较: I was surprised at his leaving without saying goodbye to me.)

I was surprised (*that*) *he had gone*. (Chambers; 原因) 他走了, 对此我感到很吃惊。

He was glad *that she had controlled herself*. (Bennet) 他很高兴, 她控制了自己的感情。(比较: He was so glad *of* it.)

He was disappointed *that the other guests were not coming*. (Forster) 他很失望, 其他的客人没有来。(比较: He was disappointed *in* what he found out.)

I am sorry *that you should feel offensive/offended*. (Close) 很抱歉, 你竟然感到受到了伤害。(比较: I'm sorry *for* making you feel offended.)

以上三组因略去介词由介词宾语从句转为状语从句的 *that* 从句, 可与下面一句比较, 下面句中 rejoice 原为不及物动词(接 *at/over* something), 所接 *that* 介词宾语从句前的介词略去后, 从句转为宾语从句, rejoice 转为及物动词:

I rejoiced *that you have recovered so quickly*. (ALD) 我很高兴你(身体)很快就恢复了。比较原不及物动词的用法: Mother rejoiced *at our success*. (Thorndike) 妈妈为我们的成功感到高兴。They rejoiced *over the news of the victory*. (Chambers) 他们为胜利的消息而欢欣鼓舞。

11.8 单独引导多种状语从句的 *that* 多半不可省略

在单独的 *that* 引导的各种状语从句中, 仅仅在原属介词宾语从

句而略去介词形成的表原因、表方面状语从句有时可以省略 *that* (或者说根本不用)。而且,单独的 *that* 用来引导结果/目的/推论/让步从句等多种状语从句时也不能省略。

1) 可略单用的 *that* 的(原介词宾语从句型)表原因、表方面状语从句。

非正式语修饰最常用形容词、分词的原因从句:

I'm sorry (*that*) I can't help you. 对不起,我不能帮你的忙。
(比较跟介词的 sorry for that/being unable to help)

We're so delighted/pleased/satisfied/surprised/astonished (*that*) you can come after all. (EGS; 主句中的 *so* 可换作 *very*, 并未构成复合连词 *so... that*) (比较 *delighted at your coming...*) 你到底还是来了,这使我们很欢喜/很高兴/很惊讶/大吃一惊。

非正式语修饰最常用形容词、分词的方面从句:

I'm sure/certain/positive/afraid (*that*) you will fail. (*sure of your failure...*) 我肯定/恐怕你要失败。

I'm anxious (*that*) he shouldn't find out. (Swan) (*anxious for him not to find out*) 我很担心别让他发现问题。

She's convinced (*that*) he's honest. (*convinced of his honesty*) 她确信他是诚实的。

2) 不略单用的 *that* 的(原介词宾语从句型)表原因、表方面状语从句。

正式语修饰不太常用形容词、分词的原因从句:

I am/feel ashamed *that* you should see me in this state. (*ashamed of being seen...*) 让您看见我处于这种境况,我觉得很羞愧。

I am grieved *that* he should be exposed to danger on my account. (*grieved about/over the danger*) 竟然因为我而使他人面临危险,我很难过。

正式语修饰形容词、分词的方面从句：

She was not aware *that* her husband earned 50 pounds a week.

(not aware of the fact) 她并不了解他的丈夫每星期收入 50 英磅。

They were determined *that* we should stay in the rear. (were determined on leaving us staying...) 他们已下定决心, 让我们留在后方。

修饰“动词 + 宾语”结构的(原介词宾语从句型)原因从句, 方面从句:

Do not lose heart *that* you are not successful at first. (Do not lose heart at the want of instant success. — NDEC) 不要因为起初不成功就灰心丧气。

Getliffe convinced me *that* Howard was innocent. (convinced me of his innocence) 盖特利菲劝说我, 使我相信霍华德是无辜的。

I have no doubt *that* we shall be able to do something for you.

(have no doubt about it) 我确信我们一定能给你帮些忙的。

[但有个别例外情况: Take care (*that*) you don't break it.

(Palmer) (口语惯用语后可略) 小心别把它碰坏了。]

修饰不及物动词的(原介词宾语从句型)原因从句、方面从句:

There was no doubt *that* he was a fine scholar. (There was no doubt about it.) 毫无疑问, 他是个优秀学者。

I grieved *that* you should be so angry. (Onions) 你那样生气, 使我很难过。

The manager objected *that* it was impossible. (Swan) (objected for some reason/for its impracticability) 经理反对这种想法, 因为这是办不到的。

(比较 I insisted *that* he should come with us. 中 insist 可看作已

转为及物动词,而 I insisted on his coming with us . 中 insist 原为不及物动词 — ALD)

that 名词从句前现只能保留 except、in、save 三介词(见 8. 12, 8. 14)。

3) 不可省略单用的 that 的结果从句:

Can you touch pitch *that* you do not defile yourself? 你能摸沥青而不弄脏你的手吗?

Everything seemed to him to be shaping satisfactorily *that* his spirits were at their highest. 他觉得一切都发展得很顺心,于是他极其得意。

(比较... shaping satisfactorily, so that... 逗号后有 so 可略 that,而从句转为并列分句性质,见 7. 2。而... shaping so satisfactorily that... 后为程度从句,因其由复合连词 so... that 引导,that 也可以省略,见本节后面。)

4) 可省略单用的 that 的目的从句:

Bring it closer *that* I may see it better. (较正式说法用 that 引导 I may..., LDCE 提到一般非正式说法 Bring it closer so that I can see it better.) 拿近一点,好让我看得更清楚。

Man does not live *that* he may eat, but eats *that* he may live. 人活着不是为了吃饭,而是吃饭为了活着。

They hurried *that* they might not miss the train. (Curme; ... in order that... 更正式说法, ... so that... 较随便说法) 他们急忙赶路,以免错过这趟火车。

比较 He hurried so as not to be late. (岩波) 他急忙赶去,以免迟到。但 so as to... 并非总是表示目的;也可以表示结果: Don't let your radio blare so as to disturb your neighbors. 还可以表示程度: He is not so stupid as to do that. We were so fortunate as/were fortunate enough to be in Paris on Bastille Day (法国国庆日). (Horny) 可以看

出 so ... that/as to... 都表示程度。

5) 不可省略单用的 *that* 的推论从句:

There must be something wrong *that* he hasn't arrived yet. (比较 Could there be something wrong that...?) 一定是出错了, 他还没到。

He must have hurt your feelings *that* you were so angry with him. (比较 Had he hurt your feelings that...?) 他准是刺伤了你的感情了, 你对他那么生气。

I'm not a cow *that* you should offer me grass. Am I a cow that you should offer me grass? (Hornby) 我不是牛。你怎么拿草给我吃呢?

Where were your eyes *that* you did not see the post? 你瞎了眼啦, 怎么就看不见那个杆子?

6) 非“原介词宾语从句型”的原因从句不可省 *that* (主句中有“*the* + 形容词/副词比较级”或从句为“表语/状语 + *that/as* + 主语...”形式):

A bad book is *the worse that* it cannot repent. 坏书(不比坏人) 由于它不会悔过自责而为害更甚。

The act was *the bolder that* he stood utterly alone. 因为他完全是单枪匹马, 这一行动就显得更为果敢。

I will assist you *the more willingly that/as* I owe you a debt of gratitude. 由于我记着你对我的恩情, 我更加乐于给你协助。

Teacher *that/as* he is, he is capable of helping you to get prepared for the exam. (*that* 实为引导定语从句的关系代词, 见 9.7; 11.7 中间。Teacher *that* he is 在一起可看作原因从句) 因为他是教员, 他能帮你准备考试。

Cold *that/as* it is, the children are staying indoors. 由于天冷, 孩子们呆在屋里。

另外, not that ... but that... 型原因从句中的 that 也不能省略:

He always traveled third-class, not that he was so miserly, but that he wanted to go side by side with ordinary people. (常说 It was not that... but that... 其中 It 指原因) 他总是乘三等客车旅行, 不是因为他那么吝啬, 而是因为他要和普通人民在一起坐车。

7) 让步从句不可略去 that (从句为“表语/状语 + that/as 主语...”形式):

Teacher *that*/as he is, he is not capable of teaching all subjects.

(that... 实引导定语从句; Teacher that he is 在一起配合主句语义, 可看作让步从句) 虽然他是教员, 他也不是所有的科目都能教。

Cold *that*/as it is, the children are playing outdoors. 天虽很冷, 孩子们还是在外边玩。Different ways *that*/as they are going, they will reach the same destination in about the same time. 他们虽然走的是不同的路, 也会用大约相同的时间到达同一个目的地。(而 Different ways that/as they are going, they will not get there in the same time. 中所含为原因从句):

8) 非“原介词宾语从句型”的方面从句不可省略 that (主句为否定句或简略的否定句):

“Any calls for me?” — “Not *that* I know of.” (There has not been any that I know of. 之略, 其中 that 实为引导定语从句的关系代词; 因其表 so far as “就... 而言”之意, 可看作在此引导方面从句, 说明所限方面或涉及方面) “有我的电话?” “据我所知, 没有你的电话。”

“Where is she staying now?” — “Not *that* I care.” (That is not a matter that I care. 之略, 其中 that 原关系代词) “她现在住在哪儿?” “我不管那事。”

There is no such person *that* I know of. 我是不知道有这么个人的。

He has never been abroad *that* I remember. 我是不记得他到国外去过的。

比较“介词+介词宾语从句”表示方面(in that...)以及“原介词宾语从句”前略去介词形成的方面从句与原因从句:

Our protest was successful, *in that*/in so far as the Minister agreed to reconsider the matter. (Close) (方面) 部长同意重新考虑此事,就这一点说来,我们的抗议是成功的。

Take good care of yourself. Be careful (*that*) you don't catch cold. (介词宾语从句略介词而成方面从句) 保重身体。小心不要着凉。

Aren't you thankful for that? Aren't you thankful (*that*) your wife has been spared? (Hornby; 原介词宾语从句略去介词而成原因从句) 为了此事,你不是很感激吗? 你的妻子得免于难,你不是很感激吗?

11.9 复合连词“...that”引导十余种状语从句及其中 that 的省略

that 前加其他词语构成复合连词引导种种状语从句时,该 *that* 或者可在口语、非正式说法中省略,或者在各种语体都已惯于略去不用;复合连词“...that”中的 *that* 不可略掉的情况是极个别的(如正式说法所用 in order that)。下面按时间关系,对应关系、因果关系三大类的顺序,列举 11 种状语从句前复合连词“...that”可以省略或惯于略去的情况。

1) 时间从句用 by the time (*that*), once (*that*), each/every/the first/the next/the last time (*that*), directly/immediately/the instant/

the minute/the moment (that)等引导(一般惯略 that):

The truck will have arrived *by the time* you have all the things packed up. 等你把东西都包装好,卡车也就到了。

Once you show any fear, he will attack you. (LDCE) 只要你一露出一点害怕的样子,他马上就要向你进攻。

The last time I heard of him he was in the army. 上次我收到他的来信时,他还在军队里。

Directly he discovered her, he turned away. 他刚一发现她,立刻转身走了。

2) 方式从句用 the way (that) 引导(惯略):

Mary doesn't worry about trifles *the way* her sister does. (未略时 应是...in the way that/in which her sister does.) 玛丽不像她姐姐那样为些琐事而烦恼。

3) 方面从句用 considering (that 可略), in respect that(属正式用语,不略)等引导:

He sees fairly well, *considering* (that) he is sixty years of age. (应是说明 In what sense/What in respect to does he see fairly well? 意即 He sees fairly well in respect that he is 60 already. 并非说明 For what reason? 从句表示片面的关系包括片面的观点,为方面从句;表示直接原因或正面理由的才是原因从句或理由从句)就他现年 60 岁这一点而论,他的视力还不错。

It is out of the question *in respect that* it stultifies the premeditated plan. 就其与原定计划冲突这一点说来,那种想法就是办不到的。

4) 原因从句用 now (that), seeing (that) 等引导(可略 that):

Now (that) I was in the same class as George, I used to be with him all day long. (Close) 由于当时我已和乔治同班,我总是

整天和他在一起。

Seeing (that) it's raining hard, we'll have to stay here for the night. 因为雨下得很大,我们得在这住一夜。

5) 理由从句用 **now (that)**, **seeing (that)**, **considering (that)** 等引导(可略 **that**):

Now (that)/Seeing (that) the hall is full already, I think the meeting should begin right away. (在此不是表示客观因果关系,而是表示主观理由与结论关系)礼堂已经坐满了,我想会议应该马上开始。

6) 条件从句用 **so (that)**, **on condition (that)**, **assuming**, **presuming**, **supposing**, **providing/provided (that)**, **but (that)** 等引导(可略 **that**):

So (that) it is done/So long as it is done, it does not matter how. (Zandvoort) 只要事情能办到,怎么办都没关系。

You may go where you please, **so (that)** you are back by dinner time. (Curme) 只要你到吃饭的时候回来,你愿意到哪儿去都可以。

I will let you drive, **on condition/providing/provided (that)** you have a valid license. (Close) 你必须有个正式驾驶执照,我才能让你开车。

He would have said no, **but (that)** he was afraid. (LDCE, but 与 **but that** 二条) 如果不是因为害怕,他本来是要说“不行(不对)”的。但从句在前时及正式说法中不可略去 **that**:
But that/Were it not that he has a family, he would have left England long ago. 他要不是有家小之累,早就离开英国了。
Life would be short, **but that** hope prolongs it/if hope did not prolong it. 如果不是希望延长生命的话,生命会是很短促的。

but (that) 因惯于连用并取得多种固定语义,应看作复合连词,

而 *except/save/in that...* (接从句) 则是介词加介词宾语从句(介词宾语从句前原先可用的其他介词都已惯于略去, 只此三介词仍可保留其前, 见 8.12, 8.14)。比较:

I know nothing about the accident *except* what I read in the paper. 除在报上看到的消息外, 我对此事故一无所知。

We know nothing about him *except/save* (后者旧说法) *that* he was in the army during the war. (作为介词 *except/save* 不可无 *that* 而接从句) 除知道他战时在军队里以外, 对于他, 我们一无所知。

Men differ from brutes *in that* they can reason. 人与野兽之不同, 就在于人有理性。

7) 让步从句用 *for all (that)*, *granted/granting/admitting/notwithstanding (that)* 等引导(可略 *that*):

For all (that) he had worked hard, he failed. 他虽然曾经非常努力, 却是失败了。

I would go *notwithstanding (that)* he advised me not to. 虽然他劝我不要去做, 我还是想去。

Granted/Granting/Admitting (that) he has the ability and interest, it does not mean he has the time to do the job. 即使他有能力、兴趣, 但这并不意味着他有时间从事这一工作。

8) 结果从句用 *but (that)*, *so/such... (that)* 等引导(可略 *that*):

He never played with them *but (that)* a quarrel followed. 他每次和他们一起玩, 总是引起一场吵闹。

Such was his condition/His condition was *such*, (that) he could not be moved. (结果从句也可有 *can/could/may/might/shall/should/will/would*, 见后) 他情况严重, 不能挪动他。

The world is *so* made (that) it probably never happens that a

person lives who has never had anyone to love him. (so 修饰谓语 is made, 后为结果从句; 如 so 修饰形容词、副词等, 后为程度从句, 见后) 世界上从来就是这样, 大概从来没有一个人活在世上而没有领受过任何人的恩爱的。

9) 目的从句用 in case (that) 引导, that 惯于略去; 用 for fear (that) 引导, that 可以略去; 用 in order that 引导, 属正式用语, 不可省略 that; 用 so (that), so /such... (that) 引导, 可略 that:

Be quiet *in case* you (should) wake the baby. (排除该结果的目的, 相当于 Be quiet so that you may not wake the baby. 参见 11.3) 悄悄地, 别惊醒孩子。

He left his most valuable books with me *for fear (that) /in case* they should get lost. 他把他的最珍贵的书放在我这里了, 以免丢失。

in case 还能引导其他意义的目的从句及条件从句(11.3): In case he comes, let me know. 如果他来, 你告诉我一声。

目的从句中多用表示可能或需要的情态动词, 但不是非用不可, 也常见并无情态动词的目的从句:

They will start early *in order that* they may(正式说法)/can(不大正式)/shall(“定要”或“应该”)/should(应会) arrive before dark. 他们将早早启程, 以便能够/一定在天黑前赶到。

They started early *in order that* they might/could/should arrive before dark. 他们早早就起程了, 以便能在天黑前赶到。

We ought to write to him *in order that* he doesn't/won't feel we're hiding things from him. (Swan, 561) (也可以说 We wrote to him in order that he wouldn't feel...) 我们应该给他写信, 使他不会认为我们有事瞒着他。

We have so arranged matters (*that*) one of us shall always be on duty. 我们已经做出适当安排, 以便我们一定总有一个人

值班。

但 **So that** one of us shall always be on duty, necessary arrangements have been made. 中 **that** 不略。

10) 程度从句用形容词、分词、副词等 + **enough that** 引导, **that** 不可省略; 用 **so/such** (+ 形容词、分词、副词...)(**that**) 引导, 可略 **that**:

She is not old enough **that** we can send her with the message.

(RHD) 她年龄太小, 我们不能让她送这个信儿。(原说法: 她还不够我们能让她送信儿的年龄。)

He made **such** a remarkable speech/so remarkable a speech (**that**) he was elected unanimously. 他的演讲非常出色, 以至于大家一致选举了他。

I'm so positive minded about the house (**that**) I would not let anyone else have it. (**so** 修饰分词) 我要这所房子的主意如此坚定, 我不会让别人得到它的。

I've got **so** many things to do (**that**) I don't know where to start. (**so** 修饰指量代词 **many**) 我有这么多事要做, 都不知从哪儿着手了。

在表示因果关系“果”这一端关系的四种状语从句中, 除推论从句只能用单独的 **that** 引导(属旧用法)外, 其他三种结果、目的、程度从句都能用 **so/such that** 或 **so/such... that** 引导。其中紧连在一起的 **so that** 为复合连词, 已一起虚词化, 不担任句中成分; 但 **such** 以及 **so... that** 中并非紧接 **that** 的 **so** 并没有虚化, 仍然分别作为确定代词与程度副词, 担任句中成分, 所以严格说来, 二者并不是与 **that** 构成复合连词。不过, 为了便于讨论、便于运用, 我们不妨把 **so/such that** 与 **so/such... that** 都放在这里, 研究其中 **that** 都可以省略的共同性, 无论其用于引导结果从句, 目的从句或程度从句。

另一方面, 我们看到, **so/such that** 或 **so/such... that** 在分别引

导这三种从句时,在意义上与形式上都有所不同,这正是因为三种从句性质上的不同。结果从句表明 To what effect 之类意义;目的从句表明 To what purpose 之类意义;而程度从句表明 To what extent 之类意义。也正因为三者性质各异,才会有 but that、in order that、for fear that、(... enough) that 等连词或复合连词,各自只能引导三者中的一种从句。

11.10 so/such (...) that 怎样分别引导程度/目的/结果从句

想要区别以相同或相似的 so/such that 或 so/such... that 引导的三种不同从句,有两点应当首先明确。其一是:主句中有没有与 so/such 相关联的形容词、分词、副词等有程度关系的词语,这是区别从句是否为程度从句的标志。其二是:从句中有没有情态动词,但这并不是区别从句是否为目的从句的标志。

以下四句的从句虽都有情态动词,却不是目的从句,而是程度从句,因为四句话主句中都有与 so/such 相关联的形容词或副词,各从句就是在说明那形容词或副词所表属性或特征的程度:

It's **such a good chance** (that) we mustn't/shouldn't miss it. 如此良机,我们一定不能/不应该错过。

He speaks **so rapidly** that we cannot clearly understand him. (... spoke so rapidly that we could no...) 他说得那么快,我们听不大懂。

He is **so badly** injured that he may/might die. (Curme; 也可用无情态意义的助动词 will, 可带语气副词: that he will probably die.) 他伤势那么重,可能活不成了。

He is **so badly** injured that he may/will/shall (或 must, “一定要”)/should (应该) be taken to the hospital. (... was so

badly injured that he might/could/would/should be/have been taken to the hospital.) 他伤势那么重,可能要/将要/一定要/应该送进医院。(“他的伤势当时那么重,他可以/可能/将会/应该被送进医院。”或“…可能/应该已被送进医院。”)

以上四句中,只有第二句可以稍加改动,使它成为带目的从句的复合句,因为只有这一句的主句表示的是人有意识、有目的的行为:

He speaks rapidly *so that* we may/might/shall/should not clearly understand him. 他说得很快,想让我们听不大懂。

如果说 He speaks rapidly *so that* /He so mumbles that we cannot clearly understand him. 可能是表目的“想让…”,也可能是表结果“使得我们…”;如 *So that* 或 *that* 前有停顿(书面有逗号)应是表结果:他说得很快/他嘟嘟哝哝地,我们听不大懂。

而 *Such* is his mumble that we cannot make clear a single word of his. 后边只能是结果从句。他那一套嘟哝,我们一个字也听不出来。*Such* 虽常暗指较高、较强的程度,但也可仅指一定属性,无程度含义:

There was *such* a draught (such a violent draught), (that) it is no wonder he caught cold. (*such* 修饰不带形容词等的名词,后为结果从句) 风太大了,不怪他着了凉。

The pain is *such* (so acute) (that) he cannot sleep. 疼得(那么厉害,使)他睡不着觉。

Her life was *such* (that) she had to keep too much in herself. (T. Olsen) (无程度含义) 她的生活就是这样的,使她不得不把太多的隐情藏在心底。

同样,*so* 虽常暗指较高、较强程度,但也可能仅指一定方式特征,无程度含义:

The fear *so* overcame me (overcame me to such an extent)

(*that*) I could never sleep. (so 修饰动词谓语, 后为结果从句) 我非常害怕(到那种程度), 睡觉都睡不着了。

In six months I *so* readjusted (readjusted in such a way) my sleeping *that* six perfect hours of slumber out of twenty-four was quite sufficient. 6个月期间我就很好地调节了我的睡眠, 结果每24个小时里有6个小时的熟睡就满够了。

She was *so* fashioned *that* none could see her without joy. 她长的那般模样, 没有一个人看见她不喜欢的。

不仅程度从句中, 而且结果从句中也可以使用情态动词; 不仅可以用 can/could, 而且可以用目的从句中最长使用的 may/might/shall/should 以及 will/would:

Such is/was his act	}	{	that everyone (might)/can(could) follow him without effort.
He exercises (exercised) such tact,			that everyone shall (is sure to, “一定要”)/ should/will(“愿意”)(过去用 would) follow his lecture with earnest interest.

他是如此巧妙灵活, | 谁都能毫不费劲地听懂。

他运用巧妙地讲话, | 谁都会/愿意热切倾听他讲课。

如果说 He exercises (exercised) such tact that everyone may (might)/can(could)/should/will (would) ... 在 that 前没有逗号, 则从句可为目的从句: 他运用巧妙的讲法, 以便谁都能/会/愿意…。再比较:

1) 用 may/might 的目的从句与结果从句

I've made it clear that everyone must be punctual *so that he may/might* come on time. 我已明确提出人人要准时以使他按时来到。

It has cleared up beautifully *so that he may/might* come after all. 天已十分晴朗, 他还是可以来的。(结果)

2) 用 can/could 的目的从句与结果从句

He gives one pencil to each passenger *so that he can* write out his own order. (K. Harris) 他给每位旅客一支铅笔,以便旅客们写下他们所要的饭菜。

There are often some coxcombs kicking up a row, *so that* you can't hear the singing. 常常有些花花公子大吵大闹,使你听不见所唱的歌。(结果)

The Turks tied the Arabs' feet together with strong leather bands *so that* they couldn't run away. (目的从句或结果从句,如 so...that 前有逗号则从句只能是结果从句)土耳其人把那些阿拉伯人的双脚用结实的皮条捆在一起,(好让)他们跑不了。

3) 用 shall/should 的目的从句与结果从句

My mother will call the baby Alfred *so that* we shall never forget you. (Laurence) 母亲给孩子起的名字将也是阿尔弗来德,以便我们永远不会把你忘记。

His behavior is *such that* everybody shall (must)/should/will/would(会要) be on guard against him. 他品行不端,人人都必须/应该/要/可能想着要提防他。(结果)

4) 用 will/would 的目的从句与结果从句

They are hurrying(They hurried) *so that* they may(might) not/won't(wouldn't)(美国说法) miss the train. 他们赶紧走,以免赶不上火车。

He's going to the lecture early *so that* he may/he'll(美国说法) get a good seat. (Curme) 他早早就前去听讲课,以便坐个好座位。(目的)

He's going to the lecture early, *so that* he'll get a good seat. 他早早就前去听讲课,会坐个好座位的。(结果)

5) 不用任何情态动词的目的从句(不用情态动词的结果从句很

普通,不必再引用例)

The naval base should be completely wrecked *so that* the docks and workshops are rendered utterly useless for at least 18 months. (Churchill) 该海军基地将予以彻底摧毁,以使各码头、各工厂至少 18 个月完全不能使用。

Exercise 11

I. 选用 *before*, *after*, *since* 填空:

1. I was never so treated, either _____ or _____.
2. Her husband died ten years ago but she has _____ rem-
arried.
3. He went abroad and has stayed there ever _____.
4. _____ long he met a fisherman.
5. _____ his departure I've heard him twice.
6. He arrived _____ 4 hours.
7. That was (long) _____ I came.
8. 4 hours _____ he arrived, he began to work.
9. How long is it _____ he left London?

II. 根据括号中所提示的信息,用 *when*, *while* 或 *as* 填空(用 *while*/ *as* 合适时不用 *when*):

1. _____ the meat was cooked I took it out of the oven (as
soon as).
2. _____ the sun rose the fog dispersed (the more sun, the less
fog).
3. _____ we reached the town (after arriving) we sent Tom to
find out about the hotels.

4. _____ we approach the town (came gradually nearer to it)
we wondered whether there'd be room in the hotel.
5. Don't exhaust yourself. Sit down _____ you are tired. (as
soon as you are tired.)
6. Whenever we have a puncture, she just sit in the car _____
I changed the wheel. (during the time when)
7. He sang _____ he worked. (as long as he worked/at the
same time when he worked)
8. He happened to look at the window _____ he walked past.
(in the act of walking past.)

**III. 用 as/than 结构或 as...as 结构或者 the more...the more 结构
翻译下列句子:**

1. 马丁特别固执,他也是同样突出地不耐心。
2. 教师讲得太快,学生赶不上记笔记。
3. 珍妮如果干这个活,会比我干得快得多。
4. 即使他庄严地许下诺言,他也可能不守信用。
5. 你工作得一直比我们更努力。
6. 玛丽的聪明比珍妮的漂亮更出众。
7. 虽然知道你任务繁重,他们还是盼着你早回来。
8. 一个人越是有学问,越是谦虚。
9. 麦克尔本是个傻瓜,他把这次宴会完全糟蹋了。
10. 我对世界了解得越多,就越发深信这一点。

IV. 选择最合适的选项填空:

1. You are not supposed to withdraw more than _____
deposited.
A. were B. being C. to be D. has been

2. The swimming pool seems to be a great deal more luxurious than _____.
- A. is necessary B. being necessary
C. to be necessary D. it is necessary
3. There ought to be less anxiety over the perceived risk of mountain climbing than _____ in people's mind at present.
- A. exists B. exist C. existing D. to exist
4. The experiment requires more money than _____.
- A. have been put in B. being put in
C. has been put in D. to be put in
5. His witty joke was _____ make everyone in the room burst out laughing.
- A. so as to B. such as to
C. so that D. such that

V. 说明下面一段文字中标有序号的关联词性质与功能,即作为疑问代词、疑问副词、连接词、关系代词、实词虚化而来的连词,或者本来就是连词;引导什么从句或其他结构;如果引导的是状语从句,说明其为哪一类(方面、原因、结果等状语从句):

Fourscore and seven years ago, our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition (拟议,所提原则) that(1) all men are created equal.

Now we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether(2) that nation, or any nation so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. ...来检验这个国家、或者任何这样孕育于自由思想并奉行平等原则的国家,是否能够长久生存。

We are met on a great battlefield of that war.

We are met to dedicate a portion of it as the final resting place of

those who(3) here gave their lives that(4) that nation might live.

It is altogether fitting and proper that(5) we should do this.

But(6) in a larger sense we cannot dedicate — we cannot consecrate — we cannot hallow this ground. 但从更高的意义上说,我们不能奉献、不能神化、不能圣化这一土地。

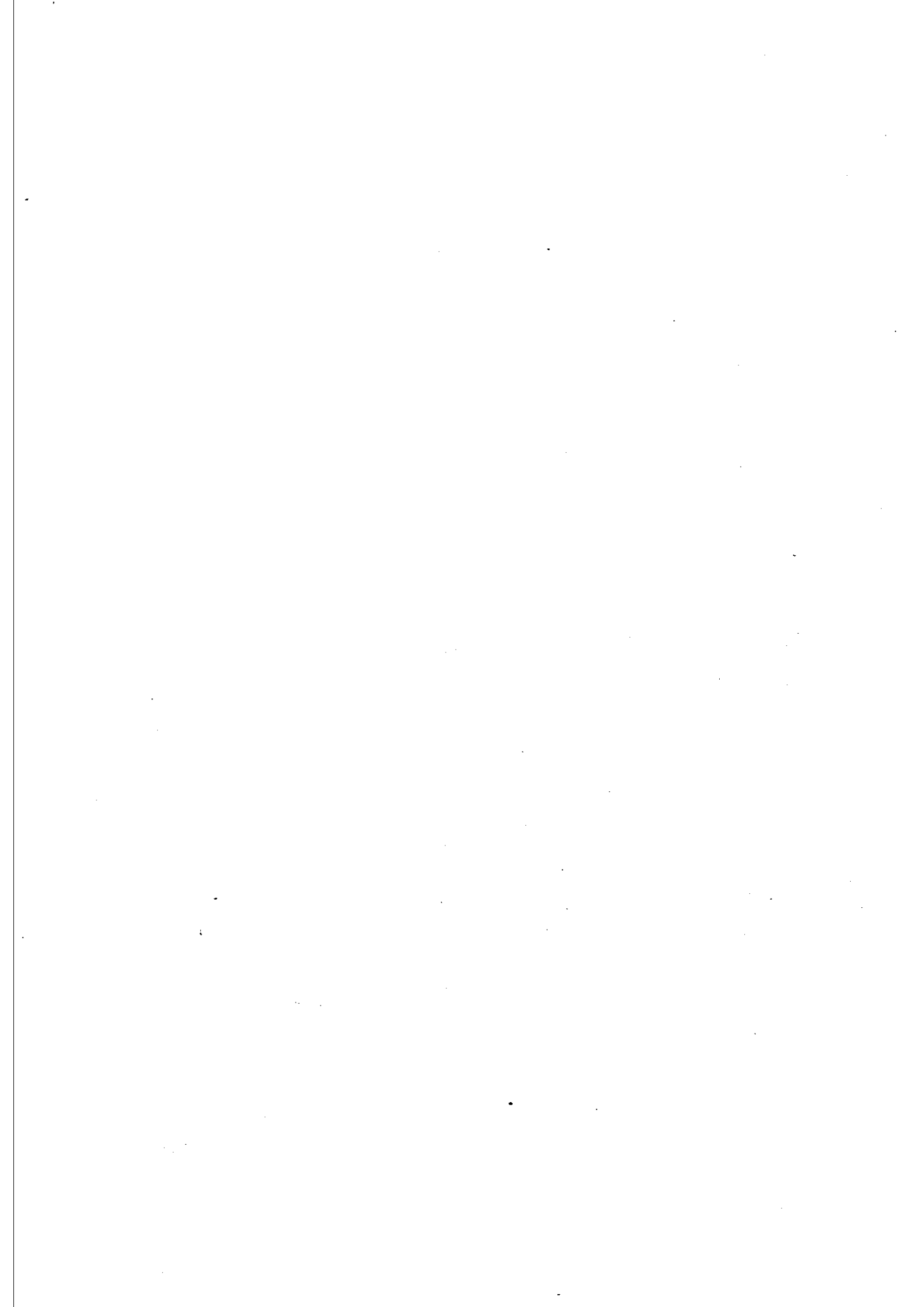
The brave men, living and dead, who(7) struggled here, have consecrated it far above our poor power to add or detract. 那些战斗在这里的仍然活着和已经牺牲的勇士们,已经把它奉为圣地,这远远不是我们微薄的力量所能着意增减的。

The world will little note, nor long remember, what(8) we say here, but(9) it can never forget what(10) they did here.

It is for us, the living, rather to be dedicated here to the unfinished work that(11) they have thus far so nobly advanced. 对于我们这些活着的人来说,倒是应该把自己奉献给他们一直那样崇高地推进着,然而尚未完成的工作。

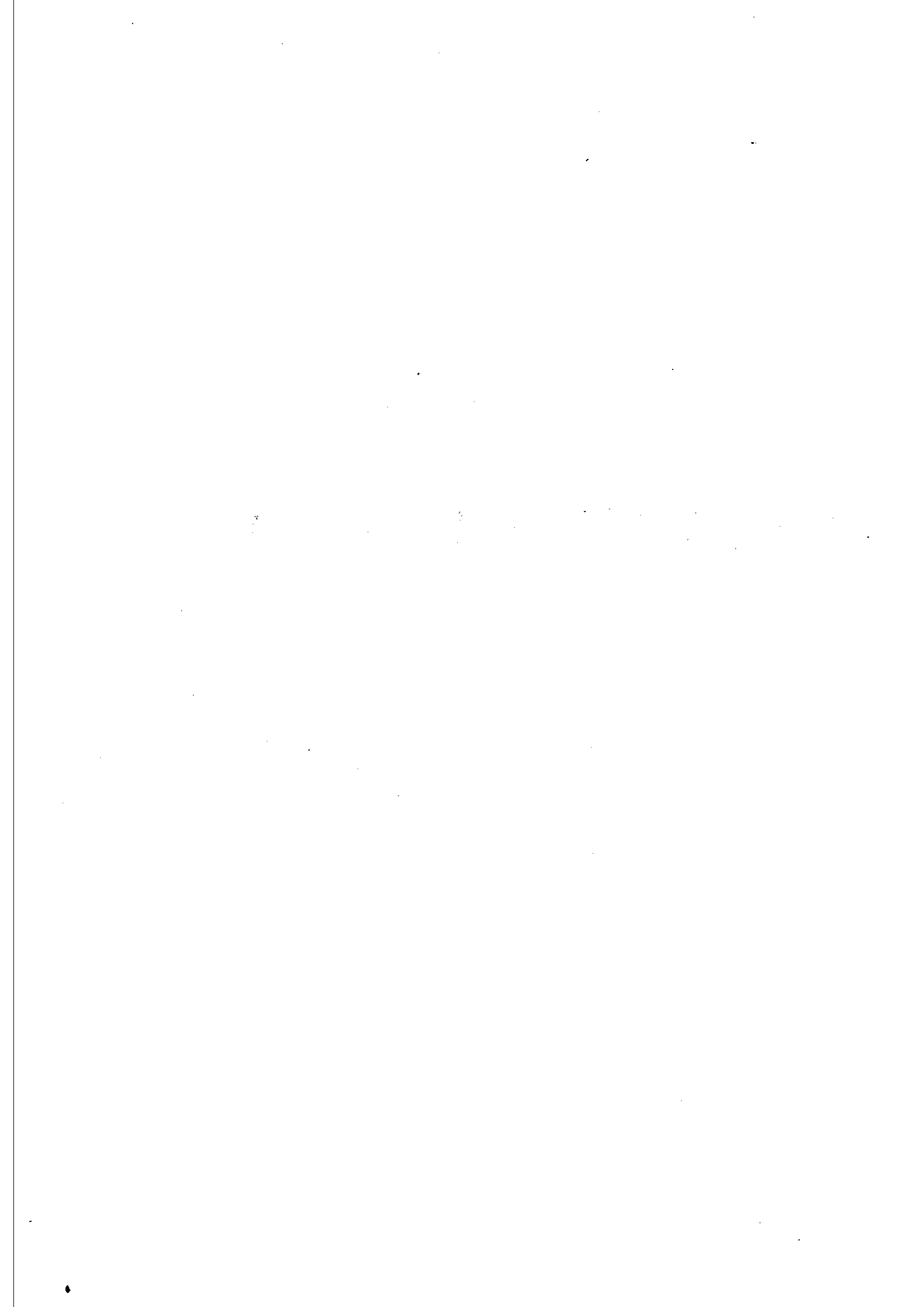
It is rather for us to be dedicated to the great task remaining before us, that(12) from the honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which(13) they here gave the last full measure of devotion; that(14) we here highly resolve(下定决心) that(15) these dead shall not have died in vain; that(16) this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom; and that(17) government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth. 倒是应该把我们自己奉献给摆在面前的伟大任务,来从可敬的死者身上吸取更大的献身精神,以致致力于他们为之献出了至高忠诚的事业;来在这里庄严地下定决心,让烈士们不致白白送掉生命;来使得这个国家,在上帝的佑护下,得到自由的新生;来保证那种民有、民治、民享的政体一定不会在地球上消亡。(注意四个“来”所引导的原英语并列目的从句)

(A. Lincoln, *The Gettysburg Address*)



第三编

语句之间的多种关联



第十二章 多功能 that, it, as, while, when, where

12.1 that 与 it 从实词到虚词

除 that 可用作副词外(You shouldn't go that/so far. 你不应该那么过分), that 与 it 在以下各方面相似而又相异:

<p>that 为远指指示代词, 指抽象事物或用于前指: They will probably win the match. <u>That</u> will please him. 他们多半要在比赛中取胜。这将使他很高兴。(比较 this 为近指指示代词, 也可用于前指; 而后指几乎专用 this: <u>This</u> I can tell you — they'll probably win the match. 有一点我可以告诉你他们多半要在比赛中取胜。)</p> <p>that 为关系代词, 引导定语从句, 任从句中成分: That/It was the dog (<u>that</u>) I gave the water(重读)to. (先行词为 dog)那是我给了它水喝的那只狗。</p> <p>that 虚化为连词, 引导各种名词从句与几种状语从句:</p>	<p>it 为中性人称代词, 可用于前指, 亦可用于后指: “You are late.” “<u>It/That</u> is not my fault.” (that 语气较重)“你迟到了。”“这不怪我。” He is thirty years old, and looks <u>it</u>. 他 30 岁, 看着也就是这么大年龄。 <u>It</u> was unbelievable — they actually welcomed me. (Schibsbye) (比较... that they... 主语从句)这真难以置信他们真是对我表示欢迎。</p> <p>it 任分裂句主语(that 定语从句的先行词): <u>It</u> was the dog(重读)(that) I gave the water to. (The animal I gave the water to was the dog.) 我给水是给了狗了。(没给猫等)</p> <p>it 虚化为引词(形式主语、宾语等), 使较长主语、宾语等(不定式/动名词短语、</p>
--	---

<p><u>That</u> they're going to win will please him. (更常说 It will please him <u>that</u> they're going to win.)(主语从句)看来他们要取胜,这将使他很高兴。</p> <p>They have trained hard <u>that</u> they may win the match. (目的从句)He'll be pleased <u>that</u> they are going to win. (原因从句)他们训练很下功夫以求取胜。他们将要取胜,他会感到很高兴的。</p>	<p>名词从句)居句子后部: It wouldn't do <u>your going alone</u>. (RHD)你自己去不行吧。 I take <u>it</u> that you will start at once. 我想你马上就要走了。 虚化的 <u>it</u> 可作某些动词(特别是不及动词及由名词转用者)的形式宾语: We would sleep out on fine nights; and hotel <u>it</u> and inn <u>it</u> and pub <u>it</u> when it was wet. 晴天的夜晚我们将露宿,下雨天就在旅店、在客栈、在酒馆过夜。</p>
---	--

因为 *that* 引导名词从句、定语从句(包括分裂句中的定语从句)、状语从句的用法已在有关章节论述,比较容易联系对比,这里着重归纳一下零散提及或尚未提及的 *it* 的功能。下列 10 种功能中,前 5 种为其实词用法,后 5 种为其虚词用法:

1) 指人、婴儿、动物、其他事物包括抽象事物:

Go and see who *it* is. (未知的人)去看看是谁。

It's I/me. (后者为非正式说法)(对听者原属未知)是我。

As I came up to her little baby, *it* stretched *its* little arms to me.

我走到她那小孩前时,孩子向我伸出两只小手。

Come on, *it* says to go. (RHD) 走啊,信号灯放行了。

Where does *it* hurt? (你身上)哪儿疼?

Tom is a total loss when *it* comes to mechanic. 当话题谈到机械技术时,汤姆就如堕五里雾中了。

How goes *it* with you? 你那里情况如何?

It's my turn. 轮到我了。

It's all over with him. (对于)他是万事休矣。

There *it* is, do what you like. 事情就这样吧,你愿意怎么办就怎么办。

That's not *it*. "Her gown she wore was stained with gore."

That's it — you missed that. 你唱得不对。“她的衣衫沾着血迹。”这才对呢 —— 这句你没唱。

It's those that are down (who) would be up and those that are up (who) would be down, if it wasn't for us. (分裂句所含 who 定语从句的先行词为句首的 *It*; who 可改为 *that*) 要不仗着我们,压在底下的就会翻身上来,坐在上头的就会滚到底下。

When *it* comes to graciousness, she is really *it*. 要是讲仪态,那么她真是仪态万方。

Zero hour is here. This is *it*. 到紧急关头了。此其时矣。

2) 指时间、距离、天气、环境:

It will soon be Christmas. (特定时间)快圣诞节了。

It won't be long before we know. (时间量)用不了多久我们会知道的。

From Boston to New York (*it*) is 200 miles. (GCE)(空间量)从波士顿到纽约是二百英里。

It looks like snow. 天好像要下雪。

It came on darker and darker. 天色越来越黑暗。

It's rather stuffy/damp in here. 这儿太闷/太潮了。

It's very lonely here with nothing but the moon. 除了月光一无所有,这儿太冷清了。

3) 句中前指(指前边词语. 主句或并列分句所表事物):

He was dying and he knows *it*. 他快死了,这他知道。

She's a nurse, and she looks *it*. 她是护士,看样子也就是当护士的。

The child is nine years old, though you'd hardly think *it*.

(Zandvoort) 这孩子9岁了,尽管你不会以为他有那么大。

You are much stronger now, though you may not look *it*. 现在你身体结实多了,即使你看样子还不那么结实。

He took the bottle from the cupboard: I saw *it* myself. 他把瓶子从柜子里拿出来;我亲眼看见他拿的。

4) 句中后指(指后边词语或从句所表事物):

It's a nuisance, this delay. 这么耽搁着太讨厌了。

It's quite true, all that you say. 你所说的都很对。

It's very curious, that story. 这个故事很怪。

It's known to none of us, his name and nationality. 他的名字和国籍,我们都不知道。

How do you like *it* if I boxed your ears? 你想让我打你两个耳光吗?

Why don't you appreciate *it* when people are nice to you? 大家对你好,你怎么不领情呢?

5) 作分裂句主语(that/who 定语从句的先行词)。

It's I that/who need help. (应用 needs, 惯用 need; 比较 The person that/who needs help is I.) 需要帮助的是我。

It's help that I need. (What/The thing that I need is help.) 我需要的是帮助。

It's him that you must apply to. *It's* to him that you must apply. 你要申请,必须找他。

When was *it* that they were in prison? (When was the time in which they were in prison?) 他们坐牢那是什么时候?

It was with a sigh that he consented. (The manner/way in which he consented was like that.) 他虽然同意了,却是唉声叹气勉强同意的。

Although the work progresses, *it* is but slowly. (... it is but slowly that it progresses. 之略) 工作尽管有所进展, 但进展很慢。

6) 从后指用法虚化为引词, 后接动名词/不定式:

It has been just splendid *meeting you here*. 在这儿见到你, 真是太好了。(It, 形式主语; meeting..., 主语)

It was the merest chance *my taking these pills*. 这种药我吃的時候太少了。

It's absurd *talking/to talk* like that. 这种说法太荒谬了。It's no use *John's saying anything/for John to say anything*. (Curme) 约翰说什么也没用。

It was careless of *you to say such a thing*. 你这么说太不加小心了。

It rests with *you to decide*. 怎么决定全在你呢。

You must find *it* exciting *working here*. 你一定觉得在这儿工作是紧张热烈的。(It, 形式宾语; working here, 宾语; exciting, 宾语补语)

I made *it* my business to settle the matter. 我把解决这个问题作为我的任务。I found *it* quite impossible to *read these contributions*. 我发现这些来稿根本看不清。

7) 虚化为引词, 作形式主语, 后接主语从句:

It's no business of yours *what I think*. 我的想法不关你的事。

It doesn't matter in the slightest degree *where* you begin. 你从哪儿开始都毫无关系。It's uncertain *whether* she will go or not. 她去不去不能肯定。

It is said/goes without saying *that* dead men tell no tales. 据说/不用说, 死人嘴里什么也透露不出来。

It seems *that/as if* there is something the matter with her.

(There seems to be something the matter with her. 复合主语句)看来,她是/好像是有些为难之事。

8) 虚化为引词,作形式宾语,后接带补语的宾语从句:

I made *it* a rule *that* I should side with the weaker party. (比较不定式宾语: I made it a rule to side with the weaker party.) 我坚定不移地总是站在弱者一边。

I owe *it* to you *that* the jury acquitted me. 陪审团宣告我无罪,我要感谢您。(把此事归功于您)

He took *it* for granted *that* I would come. 他认为我要来是理所当然的。

Something put *it* into his head *that* she was a spy. 某些迹象已把“她是个间谍”的想法印在他头脑里。

9) 虚化为引词,在动词后包括(带介词)短语动词后引导宾语从句,或在介词后引导介词宾语从句:

I take *it that* we are to come early. (ALD) 我认为我们应该早来。

Rumour has *it that* the government will be defeated in Parliament tomorrow. (LDCE) 谣传明天的国会会议上现内阁将被反对党击败。

He resents *it terribly that* he's ill and I'm well. 他身体不好而我身体很好,他为此非常气愤。

I took his word for *it that* he would make another effort. 我听他这么说,认为他真是将要再做一次努力。

I will answer for *it that* she is honest. 我愿担保她是诚实的。

You may depend/rely (up) on *it that* things will come right. 你可以放心,最后一切都会安顿好的。

There is no doubt (about *it*) *that* John will come on time. 毫无疑问,约翰一定按时来到。that 引导的是介词宾语从句,并非

doubt 的同位语从句。比较 There is some doubt (as to/about) whether John will come on time. 中如略介词, 后面可看作同位语从句。

I saw/can swear (*to it*) *that* he never left my sight. (Close)(介词与 *it* 可略去, 使动词紧接宾语从句)我特别注意让他/我敢断定他一直没离开我的视线。

We'll see (*to it*) *that* that she gets home early. (Horny) 我们要保证让她早早回到家里。

I must insist (upon *it*) *that* everyone leaves/leave/should leave the room. (Close) 我必须坚持让所有的人都离开这间屋。但 The teacher insisted (on *it*) *that* his students arrived early. 一句, 只是在接有... and they had to 之类下文或相应上文的情况下, 才是“老师坚持让...”之意, 否则就是“老师肯定地说他的学生们早早就来到了。”

10) 虚化为某些动词(包括不及物动词及由名词转作动词者)无意义的形式宾语, 构成惯用语:

You'll catch *it*. 你要挨骂(打)了。

I'll give *it* him hot. 我要好好教训他一顿。

Go *it* while you're young. 趁年轻, 快努力。

You can hardly come *it* too strong when warning children of traffic dangers. 警告儿童防止被车辆撞上, 怎么说也不会过分。

I must have *it* out with/of him. 我一定跟他辩个明白/找他算这笔帐(报仇)。

We footed *it* all the way. 我们一路走着来的。

They lorded *it* over us. 他们仗势欺压我们。

12.2 as 从副词到连词、关系代词,从连词到介词

as 与 also 同源,最初为副词,如在 I don't run as/so fast. (LDCE)句中。

as 虚化为连词引导多种状语从句的用法已见于第 11.3—11.6 节;由连词转作关系代词的用法 She's a fine singer as her mother used to be. (Swan) 她像她的母亲一样,也是一名好歌手。见 9.3。

这里着重讨论 as 由连词转作介词的多种用法。从下列四句可以看出 as 是怎样由连词转为介词的:

She's not as experienced *as I/me* (as I 为 as I am 之略)她不如我这样有经验。

The boy does his job *as a skilled worker* (does it). 这孩子干活像个熟练工人。

His mother still treats him *as* (she treats) *a child*. 他的母亲还像对待小孩一样对待他。

A loaf goes into the oven *as* (it is yet) *dough* and comes *out as* (it has become) *bread*. 一块面包进烤炉时还是面团,出来时就成了烤熟的面包了。

as 构成的介词短语可担任几种状语,还可担任定语、同位语、表语。注意,因其原为连词(所连接从句被省略到只剩一个成分),故“介词”as 有时以形容词、分词、介词短语为其“介词宾语”。

1) 介词短语作时间状语:

As a girl, she was rather delicate. 她小时候身体很单薄。

As a boy he had been too idle, *as a man* he soon became too busy. 小时候他太懒散了,长大后很快又变得太忙了。

比较: She showed me a portrait of her mother *as a young woman*. (她把她母亲年轻时的一张照片拿给我看。)句中 as

a young woman 为定语。

2) 介词短语作方式状语:

She spoke of me *as her dearest friend*. 她谈起我就像谈起她最好的朋友那样。

He behaved *as one drunk*. 他的举动像醉汉。

The audience rose *as one man*. 观众一致起立。

The ship first appeared *as a mere speck* on the horizon. 那船开始出现在海空交界线上像个小小的斑点。

In Greece, *as in Italy*, they use a lot of olive oil in cooking. (Swan) (*as in Italy* 应是 in the same way as people do in Italy 之类之略, 为方式状语) 在希腊, 像在意大利那样, 做菜时多用橄榄油。

3) 介词短语作原因状语:

The criminal was ordered to be deported *as (being) an undesirable alien*. (Wood) 那罪犯作为一个不受欢迎的外国人被遣送出境。

He is the dean, and *as such* has to sign the paper. 他是系主任, 因此他要在那份文件上签字。

He wished to join the army, but was rejected *as (being) medically unfit*. 他想参军, 但因身体不合格未被接纳。

Our remaining horse was utterly useless *as wanting an eye*. 我们剩下的那匹马因瞎了一只眼根本用不上。

4) 介词短语作依照状语(参见 11.3; 11.4):

As scheduled, they met on January 20. 他们按预定计划在 1 月 20 日见了面。

He repeats that he is telling the story *as seen by himself at the time*. 他反复说他讲的情况是当时亲眼所见。

As variously estimated, the Indians numbered from 14 million to

40 million in Columbus' time. 据不同的估计数字, 哥伦布时代, 印第安人有一千四百万到四千万。

5) 介词短语作职能状语 (Adverbial of capacity), (参见 Wood, EPI), 回答 In what capacity/role? 的问题, 说明事物(句中名词性成分)在运动或联系中一时或一个方面的职能特征[比较下面 6) 中 as 介词短语作定语说明事物本身的固有属性]:

He only said it *as a joke*. 他是当作玩笑这么说的。

It serves *as a reading-room*. 这间屋用作阅览室。

As a work of art it is very poor. 作为一件艺术作品, 这东西太差了。

Would you mind if I took one of these books *as a keepsake*? 我想把其中一本带去作为纪念, 你没意见吧?

He tries *as an experiment* a short story. 作为试验, 他写了一个短篇小说。

I had no success *as a novelist*. 作为小说家, 我毫无成就。

She was given to another family *as a child bride*. 她被送给另外一家去当童养媳。

I don't think much of him *as a musician*. 他作为一个音乐家, 我对他评价不高。

6) 介词短语作定语:

I got a job *as a carpenter* with a ship builder. 我找到了工作, 在一个造船商那里当木工。比较 I was given a job of ship's carpenter. (Hill)

His career *as a lawyer* (His lawyer career) was short but brilliant. 他当律师的经历虽短却是很有作为的。

You are to be responsible for the work *as a whole*. 你要对整个这项工作负责。

A country so large/so large a country *as the US* (A very large

country like the US) usually has quite different climates in its different parts. 象美国这样大的国家,一般是不同地区有大不相同的气候。

men *as different from animals* 不同于动物的人

the church *as separate from the state* 与政权分开的教会

7) 介词短语作同位语:

In some words in English the initial "h" is not sounded, as honour, honest, hour, etc. (some words 就是 honour、honest、hour 等;而上面 6 所列第四句中的 so large a country 并非就是 the US)某些英语词中,开头的字母 h 不发音,如 honour、honest、hour 等词。

Such dictionaries/Dictionaries *such as those* are very valuable. 那些词典很有价值。

8) 介词短语作表语:

The world is *as a stage*. 世界像座大舞台。

He was as a *man* in a trance. 他像个失去神智之人。

Knowledge is *as nothing* compared with doing. 同实践比较起来,知识算不了什么。

12.3 as 引导宾语补语和主语补语

宾语补语和主语补语分别是复合宾语和复合主语中不可缺少的组成部分。

He openly criticized her/the plan. (他公开批评了她/这项计划)是个完整句。因而 He openly criticized the plan as unworkable(行不通的)中的 as unworkable 就不是宾语补语而是方面状语;与此相似, He criticized her as showing no interest in her work. 中的 as showing no interest... 也不是宾语补语,而是原因状语(或方面

状语)。

但如只说 I count him, 就不是完整句了。可以说: I count him (as) my friend. (GCE) 我把他看作我的朋友。句中 him 与 (as) my friend 构成复合宾语, 而 (as) my friend 为宾语补语。

下列动词所接宾语补语或主语补语要由 as 引导: accept, acknowledge, assume, look upon, recognize, regard, see, take, treat (部分“认识”、“态度”动词), define, describe (“表述”动词)。

有些动词所接宾语补语或主语补语前可以加 as, 也可不加 as: choose, elect, name, appoint (部分“使任”动词), consider, count, imagine (部分“认识”动词)等。

本节最前边那组例句中的 as unworkable (行不通) 与 as showing no interest 以及前一节提到作状语、表语等的“介词”短语 as (being) medically unfit、as different from animals、as seen by himself、as in Italy 等, 都表明 as 可以接用形容词、分词或另一介词短语。这一节讨论 as 引导宾语补语和主语补语, 将更多见到 as 接用的这几种非名词性词语。

1) 引导名词/代词宾语补语/主语补语:

I consider *him* (to be/as) *a swindler*. (I consider him as nothing more than a swindler.) 我认为他(不过)是个骗子。(指简单关系不用 as: I consider it a good thing. 我认为这是好事。)

I appointed/named him *as Secretary of State*. (简单命名不加 As: I named him Henry.) 我任命/提名他为国务卿。

How can one define visual beauty *as something* which arouse pleasant sensations? 我们怎能给视觉美下定义只说它是引起快感的东 西呢?

The children accepted him *as one of the group* and played with him. 孩子们承认他们是他们的一员, 也和他一起玩。

Here ambition is presented *as a vice to be avoided*. (as a vice 为主语补语; ambition 与 as a vice 构成复合主语) 这里,有雄心被说成是不该有的坏事。

He wasn't recognized *as (being) a great writer* until after his death. 直到死后,他才被人们承认为伟大作家。

He strikes me *as an honest man*. (主动句复合主语 He 与 as an honest man) 我觉得他是个老实人。

2) 引导形容词宾语补语/主语补语:

I consider it (*as*) *preferable/necessary*. 我认为这样更好/必要。

I see it *as (being) quite possible*. 我看这很可能。

I hesitate to describe him *as really clever*. (ALD)我不敢说他真是聪明。

He took/accepted it *as true*. 他以为/相信了那是真的。

The rules strike me *as comical*. (RHD; 主语补语) 我觉得这些规矩很可笑。

She was assumed/counted *as dead*. 人们认为她死了。

3) 引导现在分词宾语补语/主语补语:

I imagined him (*as being*)/(to be) *older*. 我原以为他的年龄比这要大些。

I took it *as meaning* yes. 我以为这是同意的意思。

We see all matter *as changing*. 我们认为一切物质都在变化。

He described the room *as resembling* an attic. 他把那房间说得像是个小阁楼。

They supposed they must look upon Mr. Bosinney *as belonging* to the family. 他们认为他们必须把伯辛尼先生看作这个家庭的成员。

This remark should not be taken *as implying* agreement with any of his conclusions. (主语补语)这个说法不应该被看成是对他

的任何一项结论表示赞同。

4) 引导过去分词宾语补语/主语补语:

I regard it *as lost /settled*. 我认为这东西丢了/这事已经解决了。

She had taken it *as established* that he and she would spend the evening together. 她原以为他要和她一起度过这个晚上,这是确定下来的。

The division of domestic duties between males and females is accepted *as wholly given*. (主语补语)男女之间家务的分工被认为完全是既定的。

5) 引导不定式宾语补语/主语补语:

I regard myself *as very much to blame*. (Snow) (比较: I am regarded as very much to blame.) 我认为自己有很大责任。

6) 引导介词短语宾语补语/主语补语:

I regard him *as among my friends*. 我认为他是我的朋友之一。

She regards him as (being) without principles. (LDCE) 他认为他没有原则。

Her account of the accident was regarded *as of little value*. (主语补语)她对于这事故的陈述被认为没什么价值。

另外,有一种和复合主语中的主语补语相似的成分,却因并不构成复合主语而只应看作表语。I came into this city (*as*) *a hero*. (Curme)(我进入这座城市时是个英雄。) He died six years later (*as*) *a poor, aged, lonely man*. (6年后他死去时,贫困、衰老而孤独。)二句谓语可称为“动词、表语复合谓语”,而(*as*) *a hero/a poor... man* 即为复合谓语中的表语。复合谓语中也常不用 *as*:

They went *enemies* and returned *friends*. (井上)

12.4 while, when, where 各有十余种句法功能

while 最常用作主从连词,有引导时间从句、条件从句、让步从句、对照从句等几种功能(参见 11.3):

While I breathe, I hope. (时间或条件)只要我一息尚存,我总抱着希望。

While I understand what you say, I can't agree with you. (LDCE)(让步)我虽理解你的话,却不能赞同你。

The quotas were constantly increased, **while** wages were lowered. (对照)任务定额不断增加,工人工资却被减少。

While the book will be welcomed by scholars, it will make an immediate appeal to the general reader. (WNCD)此书一方面将为学者所欢迎,同时将立即引起普通读者的兴趣。

对照的意义可能减弱,使 while 成为并列连词:

Sandy comes from Chicago, **while**/and Bill from New York. 山迪是芝加哥人,而比尔是纽约人。

One sang, another danced, **while**/and a third played the piano. 一个唱歌,另一个跳舞,还有一个在弹钢琴。

但 while 在作连词(12 世纪)前在古英语中原是名词,现仍常用作名词;在近代它还被转作动词:

She makes a mistake only once **in a great while**. 她出错的时候很少。

No reading is worth your **while**/worth while unless you enjoy it. 如果书读得没兴趣,就不值得费这个工夫。

We **whiled** away a couple of hours looking at the pictures. 我们看画,消磨了几个小时。

疑问副词 when 与 where 能引导名词性问题从句;失去疑问意

义作为连接代词,能引导名词性关系从句(8.3):

None **but** the wearer knows where the shoe pinches. (谚语)只有穿那只鞋的人知道鞋什么地方挤脚。不当其事,不知其苦。

That's **where** it is/we differ. 关键/我们的分歧就在于此。

That's **when** silence may be the most considerate form of communication. 就是这种时候,沉默可能是传达心声的最亲切的方式。

It makes you think of **when** you were a boy. 这使你想起你小的时候。

上句中的 When 如改为 the days when, when 就转为关系代词,引导定语从句了。比较:I hope the day is not far distant **when** I shall realize the desire of my heart. 我希望,我心底宿愿能得实现的日子为期不远了。

转作主从连词的 when 和 where 能分别引导多种从句。when 引导时间从句、条件从句;让步从句、原因从句;where 引导处所从句、条件从句、方面从句、对照从句:

He looked in **when** (he was) passing. 他经过时往里望了望。

How can he succeed **when** he won't work? (条件或原因)如果/既然他不肯干,他怎能成功呢?

He keeps on talking **when** he knows it annoys us. (让步)他虽然知道那么谈话会烦扰我们,却继续谈个不停。

I'll go **where/wherever** you go. 你到哪儿去我就到哪儿去。

Where there is a will, there is a way. (条件)有志者事竟成。

The prospects were hopeless, **where** England was concerned. (方面)就英国说来,前景是毫无希望了。

They want a house, **where/whereas/while/and** we would rather live in a flat. (对照)他们想住单独的一所房子,而我们愿意住楼房里的一套房间。

如把 I (suddenly) came across him *when* I was taking a walk. 的主句、从句颠倒过来说 I was taking a walk, (多有逗号) *when* (suddenly) I came across him. 句中 *when* 就不宜说还是主从连词引导时间从句了。这个 *when* 原是关系副词引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰整个主句; 但按其与主句关系的松散程度说来, 有人称这里 *when* 所引导的为并列分句, 说这个 *when* 是并列连词, 意思是 *and/but then*“而这时”。再比较:

The thunder was roaring and the wind blowing a gale, *when* we all listened and couldn't go to sleep. (接整个前一分句) 雷在轰鸣, 风在狂吼, 而我们都听着, 睡不着觉。(不宜译成当我们听着都睡不着的时候, 雷在轰鸣, 风在狂吼。)

It was his custom to sit by the fire till twelve, *when* he would go soberly to bed. (修饰一先行词 twelve (o'clock)) 他惯于在炉边坐到十二点, 那时才平静地就寝。

下面句中 *when* 后面与其说是从句, 不如说是“主句”, 是全句最主要部分; 而 *when* 前面倒是从属部分, 说明主要事件发生的时间:

I was about to turn away *when* suddenly he rushed up and fell upon me/and dealt me a blow. (but just then) 我正要走开, 但他突然冲上来动手就打/给了我一下子。

Hardly had I opened the door *when* he struck me. (LDCE; *when* 前部分相当一从句: The moment(that)/As soon as I opened the door...) 我刚一开门, 他就向我打来。

when 与 *where* 作介词宾语时是用作代词, 二者偶见加定冠词则是其名词化用法:

We came a week ago, since *when* (that time) the weather has been bad. 我们是一周前来到的, 从那时起天气一直不好。

Where are you going (to)? 你到哪儿去? (可为介词宾语)

I know *the when and where* of his arrest. 我知道他是在何时何

地被捕的。

while、when、where 的功能可归纳,对比如下:

句法功能	while 原名词	when 原疑问副词	where 原疑问副词
名词/代词	a/my while 一会儿/我的工夫:	Till when will you wait? 你要等到何时?	Where do you come from? 你是哪儿的人?
动词	while away the tedium of a journey 消磨旅途的烦闷		
疑问副词		when = what time? 可引导问题从句	where = what place? 可引导问题从句
连接副词:引导名词性关系从句		when = the time when	where = the place where
关系副词:引导定语从句		when = at which time	where = at which place
主从连词:引导状语从句	while 引导时间/条件/让步/对照从句	when 引导时间/条件/让步/原因从句	where 引导处所/条件/方式/对照从句
并列连词:引导并列从句	while = whereas	when = and/but then	where = whereas

Exercise 12

I. 指出下列句子中的 *as* 的用法, 引导什么成分, 或构成介词短语担任什么成分:

1. She looked on him as a great scholar. (Shaw)
2. As a scientist, he was dedicated to the truth. (Sinclair)
3. He strikes me as an honest man.
4. He strikes me as being somewhat lacking humor. (Barrie)
5. It usually happens as described above.
6. He behaved as a drunk.
7. That was her final judgment on the story as a whole.
(London)

II. 选择最合适的选项填空:

1. After several rounds of talks, both sides regards the territory dispute _____.
A. being settled B. to be settled
C. had settled D. as settled
2. Although he knew little about the large amount of work done in the field, he succeeded _____ other more well-informed experimenters failed.
A. which B. that
C. what D. where
3. After _____ seemed an endless wait, it was her turn to enter the personnel manager's office.
A. that B. there
C. what D. it

4. She did her work _____ her manager had instructed.

A. as

B. until

C. when

D. though

III. 使用虚化的 it 翻译下列句子:

1. 我以为他会来的。(took it that)

2. 我愿意担保他有能力做这件事。(answer for it that)

3. 你放心,一切会好起来的。(depend upon it that)

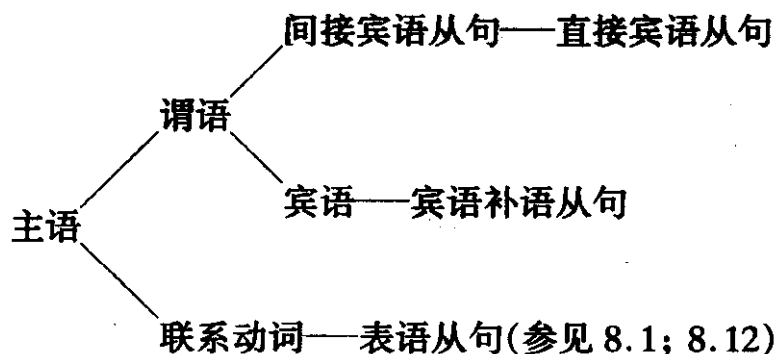
4. 我从哪里来,不关你的事。(It's no business of)

5. 这样说一点也不是吹嘘。(It's no-boasting)

第十三章 主、从句语序、从句时态的 简化、词语的省略

13.1 从句位置与主、从句中的倒装

从句位置一般相当相应成分的句中位置：



He will convince *whoever comes to him* (间接宾语从句) *that another united effort will certainly bear fruit*. (直接宾语从句) 他将说服所有到他那里去的人, 让他们相信, 再一次一致努力一定会取得成果。

We'll make him *whatever he is fit for*. (宾语补语从句) 他能成为什么材料, 我们就把他培养成什么材料。

定语从句像各种短语定语那样, 位于所修饰的名词性成分后面:

It is a game *at which two can play*. 那一套你会, 我也会。

状语从句大都像各种短语状语那样, 位于句子后部即所修饰的动词、形容词等词语后面, 或位于句子前部, 或者插于句子中间; 但结果状语从句只能位于句子后部:

He managed to devise some effective means, *so that he accomplished his purpose at length*. (结果从句) 他想出了一

种很有效的办法,终于达到了目的。

So that he accomplishes his purpose, he is indifferent to the means. 或 He is indifferent to the means *so that he accomplishes his purpose*. (目的从句或条件从句)为了/只要能达到目的,他不在乎采用什么手段。

He doesn't think it anything the matter, *so that he accomplishes his purpose*, whatever means to employ, as the saying goes, by hook or by crook. 只要能达到目的,他不在乎采用什么手段,正像俗话说的,怎么方便怎么干。

但主语从句多不在谓语前;带宾语补语的宾语从句多不在其补语前:这和一般主语或带补语的宾语不同。这是因为较长成分多置句末。该成分原位置使用引词 *it* 作为形式主语或形式宾语。比较:

It was generally believed *that he had gone abroad*. (很少说 *That he had gone abroad was generally believed*.) 一般人都相信他出国了。

I heard it said that *he had gone abroad*. 我听说他出国了。

They don't think it of any importance *what you urged again and again*. (很少说 *They don't think what you urged again and again of any importance*.) 他们认为你一再叮嘱的那些话无关紧要。

从句中的关联词作为实词的,如连接代词/副词、关系代词/副词等,担任从句各种成分。但因其固定位于从句开头,常不合相应成分的一般位置,不过这种位置异常可以不看作是倒装:

He was a Catholic, *as* (定语从句表语) most of his friends were.
他的朋友多是天主教徒,他也是天主教徒。

She traveled a great deal, *as* (定语从句宾语) most of her relatives did. 她的亲属大多数都到过很多地方,她也到很多地方去过。

然而应当注意,某些从句中因关联词居于前位,可使从句主语和谓语倒装:

He was a Catholic, *as* were most of his friends.

She traveled a great deal, *as* did most of her relatives. (Swan)

(这也是为了把较长成分置于句末)

the ... the...形式的比例复合句中,因后边主句的“the + 比较级...”不是主语,可使其后主句的主语和谓语倒装(参见11.6, 3):

The smaller the assembly (is), the more adaptable *is its manufacture* to automated techniques. 装配件越小,其制造过程就越易于适应自动化技术。

The higher the speed of the space vehicle (is), the greater *will be its power consumption*. 宇宙飞行器的速度越高,其能量消耗就会越大。

以上两句是主句倒装,因为主句在后,其主语较长,其谓语动词 is/will be 较短,这样做可使较长成分位于全句句末(其中第一句主句状语 to automated techniques 最长,故在最后)。

定语从句中,也常见把较长主语和较短谓语动词的位置颠倒过来,使较长成分位于句末:

He is a man on whom/on whose shoulders *falls a heavy responsibility*. (Close) 他是个身负重任/肩负重任之人

较长成分居后形成的倒装称为沉稳倒装,为此修饰主语的定语从句常置简短谓语之后:

It is *dogged that does it*. (谚语)世上无难事,只怕有心人。(分裂句属沉稳倒装,见 10.1)

He dances well *to whom fortune pipes*. (谚语)走运之人,事事顺心。

only、not、no、hardly、so、such 等,可为了加强语气,将其所构成的成分或其本身置于简单句或并列复合句句首,其后是主、谓语

倒装或部分倒装(Only then and not till then should you be there. 直到那时你才应来到那里。)主从复合句中也有相应的倒装用法:

1) 从句用 only when...、not until... 等引导,所接主句的主、谓倒装或部分倒装:

Only when all members are present, **are** they capable of making a feasible decision. 只有当全体出席时,他们才能作出实际可行的决定。

Only after he entered the room **did** he realize how chilled he was. (It was only after he entered the room that he realized how chilled he was.) 只是在他进了房间以后,他才觉出他已冻得浑身冰冷。

Not indeed until it was too late **did** Wilder himself actually realized the importance of being earnest. 直到为时太晚了,怀尔德才认识到应当认真抓紧,那很重要。

比较并列复合句:Not only did we lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives. 我们不仅失去了所有的钱,连性命也差点丢掉。

2) 主句用 no sooner、hardly、so、such 等开头,主句本身主、谓倒装或部分倒装:

No sooner had he uttered it/He had no sooner uttered it than he fell dead. 这话刚一出口,他就倒地身亡了。(前面“主句”实属时间从句性质,后面“从句”是全句重点)

Hardly/Scarcely had/was he gone when/before they spoke ill of him. 他刚一走,他们就说起他的坏话来了。

比较简单句:Scarcely had he time to finish his dinner. 他急急忙忙地勉强吃完了饭。

So numerous and so base were his risque stories that everybody began to be disgusted. 他的有伤风化的行径太多、太卑鄙了,

大家都开始讨厌他。

主句在后,亦可倒装:If he is going, so am I. 如果他去,我也去。

To such lengths **did he go** with his risqué stories that everybody began to be disgusted. (主语前加 did 属部分倒装)他的有伤风化的行径闹得太严重了,大家都开始讨厌他。

Such noble and manly deeds **did he** achieve that he was held in high regard by all the villagers. 他做出了非常高尚英勇的业绩,全体村民都很尊敬他。

3) 主句用表语开头,主句本身主、谓倒装或部分倒装;或从句用“表语 + as...”开头,从句本身主、谓倒装或部分倒装:

Great **was our surprise** when we found the room empty. (主句倒装)我们发现屋里空无一人,大吃一惊。

Terrible **as was the storm**/Terrible as the storm was, we continued our way. (从句倒装)尽管暴风雨那么凶狂,我们还是继续赶路。

以上三大类主句或从句倒装结构中,有的是起承接作用的,如 If he's going, so am I. 中 so 即承接前句, I 为句末重点;如说 Now you've told them I am good for nothing, so I am. (既然你对他们说我是废物,我就算是废物吧。),句中 so 仍承前,而 am 成为句末重点。但上列大多数引起主、谓倒装的前置用法还是为了加强语气,为此还可把整个后位从句(宾语从句等)置于主句之前:

Little black figures darted among the smoke but **whether one of them wore a red coat** I could not see. 浓烟中许多小黑人影在奔跑,但其中是否有个穿红上衣的,我却看不出来。

用来加强语气的“强调倒装”、用来承接前句的“承接倒装”,及使用句末稳重的沉稳倒装简单句(或并列复合句)中的倒装语序就是这样三种,主从复合句中的三种倒装的作用与简单句中相同。

13.2 间接引语中动词“错向过去”与否的含义差别,情态动词“错向过去”与否

正如 M. Swan (534, 5) 所说,间接引语所用词语和直接引语的不同是自然的,因时因地制宜,不必讲那么多复杂“规则”,做那么多直接“变”间接的练习。汉语间接引语和直接引语的自然区别,也完全适用于英语。掌握了英语各种时态用法,熟悉其陈述、疑问、祈使各句型,自然就会运用间接引语。

例如,处所不变则已,如有变动,原来的“这”自然成为“那”。时间所指不变则已(如原指长远情况的“一般现在”到今仍是现在,或原指的将来至今还是将来),如有变动,原“将来”自然成为“过去的将来”,原“明天”成为“第二天”,原“现在”成为“过去”,原“现已完成”成为“过去完成”,原“过去”成为“过去的过去(用过去完成形式)”,原“昨天”成为“前一天”等等。这就是说,时间如有推移,间接引语中的动词和原话中的动词相比,要“错向过去”(back-shift):

She told me this morning *that she's only twenty*. (今年谈今年情况,间接引语动词不“错向过去”)她今天上午对我说,她刚 20 岁。

She told me last year that she *was* twenty. 她去年对我说,她那时是 20 岁。

“I'm blameless.” — Socrates said that he *was* blameless. 苏格拉底说,他没有过错。

“I've seen him.” — She said she *had seen* him (already). 她说她已见到他。

“I saw him yesterday.” — She said she *had seen* him the day before. 她说她前一天曾见到他。

一般情况下,如当时原话中的“现在”指长远情况,则间接引语中

的动词照原话动词现在形式不变；如当时原话中的“现在”仅指一时情况，则间接引语中的动词要“错向过去”，表示至今已是一事过境迁：

I realized that life *is* a gamble. 我认识到，人生就是一场赌博。

I realized that life *was* a gamble. (当时那样想，现在知道那种想法不对)

These arguments showed that the world *is* round. (也可说 *was* round 强调转述原话) 这些论据表明地球是圆的。

These arguments showed that the world *was* flat. 这些论点把世界说成是平的。(现在那种说法已被否定)

Jack was telling me that your favorite composer *is* Mozart. 杰克说你最喜欢的作曲家是莫扎特。

Jack was telling me that your favorite composer *was* Mozart. (当时是，现在呢？原话这么说，是真的吗？现在真实性可疑)

但是，英语有种汉语所无的特殊表现法：过去原话所指“现在”虽较长远而且延伸至今仍是“现在”，间接引语中还可对原话中的现在形式改用过去形式来传达，以强调这是转述原话。

“How old are you?” — “Pardon?” — “I asked you how old you *were*.” (Swan) “你多大年龄？”“您再说一遍好吗？”“我刚才问你你多大年龄”

如说 I'm asking you how old you *are*. (我在问你，你现在多大年龄) 是指现在的意念。

转述一个人所说自己当年的年龄，为强调仅传原话就会说 She told me this morning that she *was* only twenty. (她自称年仅20，信不信由你。)

再比较 He said he *is* looking forward to the year 2008. (他说他盼望着2008年的到来，我相信) 和 He said he *was* looking forward to the year 2008. (他自称盼望，我不加评论) 而 He said he *was* looking forward to the year 1950. 中只能用 *was*，因原“现在正在”已成“过去

正在”。

Socrates said that virtue *is* knowledge. 苏格拉底说善就是真知
(我同意)。

Socrates said that virtue *was* knowledge. (苏格拉底原论点,人们
未必当作真理)

转述所说将来(至今仍是将来)情况,也有“错向过去”与否的两种间接引语:

John said he's *coming*. (约翰说他就要来了,真的)

John said he *was coming*. (他说就要来,真情未测)

He announced that he is *getting married* next June. (他宣布六月份将结婚,理当属实。) He announced that he *was getting married* next June. (他扬言如此,能照办吗?)

He said he *will visit us* when the weather is *finer*. (Palmer)(我相信天气会好转,他也真是要来)

He said he *would visit us* when the weather is *finer*. (ib)(天气自然会好转,但他嘴说要来,等着看他来不来吧!) He said he *would visit us* when the weather *was finer*. (ib)(天气会不会好转,他会不会来,都未可知)

但当说话人只是要强调转述的是过去原话时,即使原指情况至今仍然合适,也只能用“错向过去”形式:

I always said he *was* a liar. (Leech)(我原来就总说,他是个骗子,现在你看,我过去说对了。)

与间接引语性质相似,有些引述过去感受、认识、思想的宾语从句,其中所感与否、所知与否、所想与否的情况即使至今仍继续存在,该宾语从句动词也多要使用“错向过去”形式:

I forgot you *were listening*. (Leech) 我(刚才)忘了,你一直在听着。

I didn't know he *was a teetotaller*. (ib) 我原来不知道他是根本

不喝酒的。

Little did I think that you *liked it*. 我根本没想到你是喜欢它的。

I knew you *weren't coming*. (Palmer) 我当时就知道你是不会来的。

有些动词形式,因无法或无需在间接引语中“错向过去”,就保持与原话中相同的形式,这些形式包括:

- * 动词过去完成时形式;
- * 动词虚拟语气“错向过去”形式;
- * 已取过去形式的情态动词、助动词(属直陈或虚拟语气的 *could*、*might*、*would*、*should*);
- * 没有过去形式的情态动词(*must*、*ought to*)。

1) 原话中的过去完成形式无法再“错向过去”:

“I'd already seen him by then.” — He said he'd already *seen* that man by then. 他说当时他已见过那人。

如原话中的过去形式意在指明事实而不着重其先已发生,转述中也无须将其再“错向过去”:

He told us he *was* in his first year at the university when the war broke out. 他告诉我们,战争爆发时他在上大学一年级。
(不同于 He told us he had left school. “中学已毕业”)

2) 原话中的虚拟语气 *were* 型(过去形式)多无需再“错向过去”,仅在强调该情况纯属违反过去实际的假想时,才将其“错向过去”成为 *had been* 型(过去完成形式):

“I wish I *were* in your place.” — He *said* he wished he *were* in my place. 他说他希望处在我的地位。

“I'd rather you *left* right now.” — He said he'd rather I *left* right away. 他说他希望我马上就走开。

“It's time we *had* a holiday.” — He said it was time we *had* a

holiday. 他说我们该休假了。

“If you called on me tomorrow, I could see you for half an hour.” — He said that if I *called on* him the next day he could see me for half an hour. (Swan) (原虚拟 *called* 情况或已发生,或未发生)他说,如果我第二天来找他,他可以和我会见,谈半个小时。

“If I had any money, I'd buy you a drink.” — He said if he'd *had* any money he'd have bought me a drink. (ib)(强调其纯属违实假想)他说,假如当时他有点钱,他就要给我买一杯饮料。

原话中的虚拟语气 *had been* 型(过去完成形式)无法再“错向过去”。

3) 原话中已取过去形式的情态动词、助动词:

“Peter might phone. If he does, could/would you ask him to ring later?” — He said Peter *might* phone. He asked me if I *could/would* ask Peter to ring later if he phoned. (原表示虚拟语气指将来的过去形式在间接引语中不变仍表虚拟,不过,已转指“过去的将来”)他说彼得可能来电话。他问我,如果彼得来电话,我是否可以让他晚些时候再打电话来。

“He would go there every day.” — She said he *would* go there every day. (原直陈语气过去将来时助动词“将”,或指过去情态动词“愿”)她说他将/愿天天到那里去。(比较:“He will go.” — He said he would go.)

“I ought to/should go.” — He said he ought to/*should* go. (*should* 为 *shall* 错向过去的虚拟语气形式, *ought* 在历史上原亦属虚拟语气形式) 他说他应该去。

“I ought to have gone/should have gone.” — He said he ought to have gone/*should have gone*. 他说他当初本应到那里去的。

(实际没去)

“If you/she should(情态动词“竟然”)be absent, we should(第一人称助动词“将会”)/they would(第二、三人称助动词“将会”) be sorry.” — He said if you/she *should* be absent, they *would* be sorry. 他说如你/她竟会不到,他们将深感遗憾。

4) 没有过去形式的情态动词 *must* — 如在原话中表示主观必然或必要(推断、坚持、命令),间接引语中照用不变;如在原话中表示客观必要(“不得不”),间接引语中或照用不变,或改作 *had to*(指过去)/*would have to*(指过去将来):

“You must be hungry.” — He said that they *must* be hungry. (推断)他说他们准是饿了。

“I must stay.” — She said she *must* stay. (坚持)她说她一定要留下。

“John must go.” — She said John *must* go. (命令)她说约翰必须走。

“You *mustn't* go.” — She said I *mustn't* go. (禁止,亦属命令)她说我绝对不能走。

“I must/have to walk to work.” — He said he *must/had to* walk to work. (客观必要)他说他不得不走着上班。

另外,转述疑问句,一般用以问题从句(8.4—8.6)为宾语从句的复合句;但转述实际只表请求、建议的疑问句,可像转述祈使句一样,在简单句中使用不定式或动名词短语:

“Sit down,” I snapped. — I snapped at him *to sit down*. /I told him with a sneer *to sit down*. (GCE) 我厌烦地让他坐下。

“Would you spare me a few minutes?” — He asked me *to spare him a few minutes*. 他请求我花几分钟时间跟他谈谈。

“Shall I run you home?” — He suggested *running us home* in his car/offered to *run us home*. 他提出用车送我们回家。

“Shall I paint it green?” — He suggested *painting it green* /that it (should) be painted green. 他建议把它漆成绿的。

13.3 从句指将来动词常用较简便现在/现在进行/现在完成形式

在主句动词的将来形式“已表明全句指将来”的情况下,或在主句动词词义“已表明从句指将来”的情况下,从句指将来的动词在语法规则上惯用现在/现在进行/现在完成形式,不可用较复杂(而且属于错误的)将来及将来进行/将来完成形式:

I'll be happy when I'm *sitting* at home again drinking a pint of beer and watching TV. (状语从句指将来可用现在进行形式) 当我再能坐在家,端来一品脱啤酒喝着,看着电视,我就会感到很幸福了。

I'll come/I'm coming after I've *seen* him. (状语从句指将来已完成行为用现在完成形式) 我见他以后就来。

I bet (that) she's *married* before the end of the year. (Swan)(主句动词词义表明宾语从句指将来,宾语从句指将来已完成行为用现在完成形式)我敢断定,今年年底以前她一定已经结婚了。

从句指将来动词用简便现在一类形式的用法,适用于大多数各种状语从句、各种名词从句,以及定语从句。现依次分述如下:

1) 时间从句、处所从句中:

When/After/The moment he *arrives*, the band will play the National Anthem. 他来到时/来到后/一来到,乐队即将演奏国歌。

I'll be home before you *are*. 你到家前,我就到家了。

I'll tell you as soon as I *know*. 我知道了,就告诉你。

I shan't be forty till I **am** nearly twice as old as I am now. 直到我的年龄比现在大到将近一倍时我才 40。

By the time you **get** it I shall have succeeded. 等你得到这个机会的时候,我已经大功告成了。

I'll go where you **go**. (Swan) 你去哪儿我就去哪儿。

比较: It will require a lot of persuasion before she will go. 句中后一个 will 是情态动词“愿意”,不是将来时助动词(要费很多唇舌劝她,她才会愿意去的)。

2) 条件从句、让步从句中:

I'll come to your house if you **don't come to** the office tomorrow. 如果你明天不到办公室来,我将去你家。

Supposing it **snows**, what shall we do? 如果下雪,咱们怎么办?

Even if tomorrow's match **is cancelled**, Lancaster will still be top of the league. 即使明天的球赛不再举行,兰卡斯特队也将是联合会联赛的冠军。

I'll have a good time whether I **win or lose**. 不管我是胜是负,我都会玩得很高兴的。

比较: There will be no trains tomorrow unless they will call off the strike 句中后一个 will 是情态动词“愿意”(除非他们肯停止罢工,明天将没有火车)。如不用情态动词,可以说: Unless the strike **has been called off** (从句用现在完成形式), there will be no trains tomorrow. (GCE)

条件/让步从句表示事物间的纵向关系特征,从句情况发生的时间可能与主句情况发生的时间不同;如主句不指将来,从句动词指将来,则从句动词还必须单独使用将来时形式:

If he won't arrive before 9, there's no point in ordering dinner for him. (GCE)(主句指现在 there is no point)(从句指将来 If he will not arrive...)如果他 9 点前不会来到,现在给他预订晚饭就没意

义了。

3) 方式从句、比较从句中:

Next time I'll do as he *says*. 下一次我将照他说的那样行事。

You can drink as much as you *like* tomorrow, but not tonight.

明天你愿意喝多少就喝多少,可是今夜不行。

方式/比较从句表示事物间的横向关系特征,主句、从句情况发生的时间多在同时,但也可能时间不同。主句指将来,从句不一定也指将来:

As you *sow*, you shall mow. (谚语) 种瓜得瓜,种豆得豆。(该 *shall* 为情态动词“必须(照那样收割)”全句可指:现在种,将来收;将来种,将来收;经常种,经常收。

It will be as you *wish*. (RHD) 事情将会让你随心所欲。(可指现在希望那样,或将来希望那样)

They hunted/are hunting/will hunt him as a tiger, *stalks* his prey. 他们追捕他/正在追捕他/将追捕他,像老虎追踪猎物一样。(指老虎平常追踪猎物那样)

因而,在方式/比较从句中,为了明确时间性,也可以使用动词将来形式(尽管主句已有动词将来形式。)

They'll be on the same plane as I *am* /as I *will*. (Swan) 他们将与乘同一架飞机。

We'll probably drive faster than you *do* /than you *will*. (ib) 我们的车开得很可能比你们的车要快。

但如从上、下文中可以清楚理解从句也指将来(主句已用动词将来形式),则方式/比较从句,动词还是多用现在形式:

She'll be on the same plane as I *am* tomorrow. (ib) 她明天将与乘同一架飞机。

We'll probably drive faster than you *do*, so we'll get there first and buy the tickets. 我们的车开得很可能比你们快,这样我

们就会先到那里买票。

4) 目的从句中:

He will come in case *he's wanted*. 他是要来的,以准备人们可能需要他。(这是英国英语该句含义;在美国英语,句中 in case 相当 if, 全句意义是:如果有人需要他,他就来。)

表示因果关系(直接纵向关系)的原因从句、结果从句及目的从句(主观上要达到某结果)所述情况,与主句情况多不是同时发生,因而主、从句动词一般都各取独立的时态形式,其中目的从句中多用 can/could/may/might/should 等情态动词(很少用 shall):

Yesterday I sent/I've already sent/I'm now sending him our proposal so that he *can/could/may/might/should have* time to consider it before the meeting. 昨天我给他寄去了/我已给他寄去了/我正在给他寄我们的提议草案,以便开会前他有时间加以考虑。

I won't mind the heat in Greece because I *won't have* to move about much. (Swan) 希腊天热,我不在意,因为(到那时我用不着常常各处走动)。

It was such a terrible experience that I *will never forget* it. 这经历太可怕了,我永远不会忘记。

仅在 in case 引导的目的从句(想达到防止、防备或准备某种情况的目的),指将来的从句动词常用现在形式:

Take your coat in case it *rains*/it should rain. (LDCE)(主句指现在或将来,从句指将来)拿着你的雨伞,以防下雨。

I've got my tennis things in case we *have* time for a game. (主句指现在,从句指将来)我把我那些打网球用的东西带上了,准备或许我们有时间玩一场网球。

5) 名词性问题从句中:

I'll always know where you *are*. 我要总能知道你去到什么地方

了。(比较: I'd like to know when John *will be* back. 主句动词不属将来时,从句指将来要用独立的动词将来形式:“我想知道约翰何时回来。”)

I shall ask him what he *wants* tomorrow. (GCE) 明天我将问他,他要什么。(比较: The question *is* what he *will want tomorrow*. (ib) 主句动词不属将来时,从句动词用将来形式:“问题是明天他将要什么。”)

If you don't come to the office tomorrow, I'll come to your house and find out why you're *not at work*. 如果明天你不到办事处来,我将去你家了解你为什么不上班。

有时主句动词虽不属将来时,但该动词词义能显示从句指将来,特别是在一定上下文中,则从句动词还是只用简便的现在形式:

Let me know *how* you are from time to time. (from time to time 帮助显示从句指将来) 随时把你的情况告诉我。

I don't care what we *have* for dinner today if I don't have to cook it. 只要不用我做饭,今天晚上吃什么,我都无所谓。

It doesn't matter where we *go* on holiday this summer. 今年夏天咱们去哪儿度假都是一样。

It matters little/a great deal whether I *succeed* or not. 我是否能成功没什么关系/关系重大。

6) 名词性关系从句中:

I'll always do what I *think is* best for everybody. 我将永远为大家做好事,我认为最有利于大家的事。

They will be thankful for what(ever) help you *offer* them. 不论你能给他们什么帮助,他们都会很感激的。

She will give whoever *needs* help a warm support. 任何人需要帮助,她都会给以热情的支持。

7) 名词性 *that* 从句中:

If the police stop me, I'll pretend (that) I **don't understand**. 如果警察们拦住我,我将假装不懂他们的意思。(比较:I know I won't understand. 主句动词不属将来时,从句动词用将来形式:“我知道我将不会听懂的。”)

有时主句动词虽不属将来时,但该动词词义能显示 that 名词从句指将来 (that 有时可略去):

I hope you **sleep** well. 我希望你睡得好。

I bet you **don't get up** before ten tomorrow. (Swan) 我敢断言明天 10 点以前你起不了床。

Suppose he **loses** his way. 也许他会迷路的。

Let's assume our opponents **win** the election. 咱们设想一下咱们的对手在选举中获胜。

但另一方面,即使主句已属将来时,如从句指将来更晚些,从句动词还要取将来形式:

If she rings, I'll tell her (that) I'll **ring** back later. 如果她来电话,我将告诉她,我将过后再给她打电话。

8) 定语从句中:

I'll give a pound to anybody who **washes** my car. 谁清洗我的汽车,我将给他一个英镑。

There will be a special price for anybody who **orders** a suit in the next two weeks. 任何人在此后两周内订做套服,都将享受特别优惠的价钱。

The first person who **opens** that door will get a shock. 第一个打开那扇门的人将大吃一惊。

The man who **marries** my daughter will need to be tough, fast-moving and quick-thinking. 和我的女儿结婚的男子必须是吃苦耐劳、行动迅速、思想敏捷的。

与上述各种在从句中使用简便现在形式的情况不同,下列句中,

主句虽实指现在或将来,但因采用了“错向过去”的虚拟形式,所接从句中指现在或过去的动词也要“错向过去”使其亦属虚拟语气:

Would you follow me wherever I *went*? (处所从句中)无论我去哪里,你都愿跟我去吗?

If we both *got* the same job, you would earn more than I *did* because of your degree. (比较从句中)如果我们二人谋得同样的职业,你因有学位将比我挣得多。

In a perfect world you could say exactly what you *thought*. (名词从句中)在最理想的社会中,你想什么就可以说什么。

If I were rich, I'd give money to anybody who *asked* for it. (定语从句中)我如能致富,谁向我要钱,我都供给。

I would never do anything that *went* against my conscience. (定语从句中)任何违背良心的事,我永远也不会做。

13.4 从句略去与主句词语重复或可以理解的词语

先让我们观察一下下列主从复合句各从句中省略了哪些成分:

I shall not fail to help you *when* (it is) *necessary*. (可理解的主语 it 与联系动词 is)必要时我一定帮助你。

When (we are) *speaking* about English people in general, we can say either “the English” or “Englishmen”. (与主句重复的主语 we 与进行体助动词 are) 我们笼统地谈到英国人时,可以说 the English 或者 Englishmen。

A fortress is most vulnerable *when* (it is) *attacked* from within. (指代主句主语 fortress 的从句主语 it 与被动语态助动词 is) 堡垒最容易从内部攻破。

Any government, *however* (it is) *constituted*, must respect the people's wishes. (省略成分同前)一个政府,不论是如何组成

的,必须尊重人民的意愿。

If (you are) *in doubt*, don't hesitate to ask me. (与主句暗含主语重复的主语 you 与联系动词 are)如果有不明白的地方,别顾虑,快问我。

There are few, *if* (there are) *any*, mistakes. (与主句主语重复的形式主语 there 与实意动词 are)错即使有,也很少。

I shall go there by four, *if* (I do) *not* (go) *sooner*. (与主句重复的主语 I 与否定助动词 do 及与主句重复的实意动词 go)如果我不是去得更早的话,4 点前我准去。

可以看出,最常略去的是与主句重复的主语和动词 be(实意动词、联系动词或助动词),有时是其他助动词及与主句重复的动词。但应该注意,从句主语和 be 等动词必须一起略掉,不能只略其一,如不能说 * *If you in doubt,...* (参见 13.5)

与从句时态的简化相似,从句词语的简化也最常见于某些状语从句。as 作为连词所引导状语从句(表示时间、方式、原因、依照等)常简略到只剩一个成分而使 as 成为介词(见 12.2),as 与 than 引导的比较状语从句尤其多属省略句,常使从句形成 as/than 短语(见 11.5)。这里再把多种状语从句及其他类别从句中的省略情况归纳一下,可注意所略的都是与主句重复的或可以理解的词语。

1) 时间、处所从句:

He was fond of swimming *when* yet a child. (比较 As a child, he was fond... /)他还是个孩子的时候就喜欢游泳。

Experience, *when* dearly bought, is seldom thrown away. 付出很大代价取得的经验教训是很少会忘记的。

They're making a feint to the east *while* attacking in the west. 他们这是声东击西。

I got acquainted with him *while* on a visit to Beijing. 我访问北京时认识了他。

Once published, the book caused a remarkable stir. 这本书一出版就引起很大震动。

I didn't notice it *till* too late. 我注意时已经晚了。

Please write to me at the above-mentioned address *until* otherwise advised. 在另行通知以前,请按上述地址给我来信。

The river is most smooth *where* deepest. 河水最深的地方,水面最平静。

Build mainly small projects, supplemented by medium and large ones *where* necessary and feasible. 主要修建小型工程,仅在必要而可行的地方修些中型与大型工程加以补充。

2) 条件、让步从句:

You can do it *if*/when at leisure. 如果你有空闲/当你有空闲的时候,可以办这件事。

We must go now, *if* ever. (if we are ever to go) 如果我们要去,必须现在就去。

We shall fight *if* necessary, alone; *if* necessary, forever. 如有必要,我们将单独作战;如有必要,我们将永远打下去。

Conferences are necessary and good, but only good *if* followed by action. 开会是有必要而且有好处的,但只是跟着采取行动时才有好处。

In this article this word is used in its original sense *unless* otherwise stated. 除非另有说明,本文中此语仅指其本义。

Frost is possible, *though* not probable. 霜冻的可能性虽然不大,但还是有可能的。

I must get it done, *whatever* the cost(may be). 无论付出多大的代价,我也必须完成此事。

No sowing, no reaping, *however* warm the sun, gentle the rain, congenial the soil. 无论太阳多么温暖,雨水多么调和,土地多

么相宜,不播种就没有收获。

Stable, high yield fields have been ensured, *no matter what* the weather conditions. 不论碰上什么气候条件,都保证了这些土地是稳产高产田。

3) 方式、比较从句:

Flowers danced in the gentle breeze *as if* giving us encouragement. 鲜花在微风中舞动,好象在激励我们。

He shaded his eyes *as though* dazzled by the light. 他用手遮住眼睛,好像是被这光线把眼照花了。

He was walking up and down *as if* in search of something. 他来回地走,像是在找什么。

She opened her lips *as if* (she was going) to say something. 她张嘴像是要说什么。

The price is the same *as* (as it was before the war) before the war. 价钱和战前一样。

4) 原因从句:

He is a more dangerous, *since* unknown, foe. 由于他是隐蔽的敌人,所以更加危险。

The position, *as* such, does not appeal to him, but the salary is a lure. 这一职位因为这种情况,并不是他很喜欢,但那薪金颇有吸引力。

5) 名词性问题从句、名词性 *that* 从句:

Please hand me one of those books, I don't care *which* (which you hand me). 把其中一本书递给我。哪本都行。

He'll come back, but he doesn't know *when*. 他是要回来的,但他不知道什么时候回来。

I've read that in some book, but I don't remember *where*. 我在某一本书上曾读过这些话,但不记得在哪儿了。

Will it rain tomorrow? I hope *not*. (I hope it will not rain. 或 I hope *that* it won't rain.) 会下雨吗? 我希望不要下。

6) 定语从句:

He gave the same answer *as* before. (He gave the same answer *as/that* he had given before. 句中 *as/that* 为关系代词, 定语从句主语) 他的回答和以前一样。

She was as fine a ship *as* ever walked the waters. (*as* 为定语从句主语) 它是曾在水上航行过的一艘最漂亮的船。(如说 She was as fine a ship as any that had ever walked the waters. 则所含从句为比较状语从句)

13.5 并列分句或从句中“主语 + be”不可只略其一

并列复合句或主从复合句中, 与前、后相同的“主语 + be”一般或同时略去、或一起保留, 不可略一留一:

John is poor, but (*he is*) happy. (GCE) (不说 *... but is happy... 或 ...but he happy...) 约翰很穷, 但是他很快活。(可以说 rich but not happy 或 ... is rich, but isn't happy.)

He was tired but (*he was*) happy after the long walk. (ALD) (不说 *... but was happy... 或 ... but he happy...) 他走了一段很长的路, 虽然很累, 但是很愉快。

Shakespeare was not only a writer, but (*also*) an actor. (LDCE) (不说 *... but was also an actor.) 莎士比亚不仅是个作家, 而且是个演员。

She can not only sing, but (*also*) dance. (岩波) 她不仅能唱歌, 还能跳舞。

以上是三个并列复合句, 特别注意在主从复合句中, 当从句主语和主句相同时, 从句的“主语 + be(实意动词、联系动词或助动

词)”常一同略掉,不能保留其一。该省略从句所接主句的谓语动词可以是 be,也可以不是 be。(参见 13.4)

This thing, if (*it is*) continued, is going to do him irreparable damage. (Dresier) (条件从句主语所指事物和主句的主语一致)这种情况,如果继续下去,将会给他带来不可挽回的损失。

While (*she was*) at Oxford, she was active in the dramatic society. (时间从句主语所指事物同于后面主句的 she) 在牛津上学时,她积极参加戏剧协会的活动。

下列各种从句中主语同前或同后而省略,但随主语略去的 be 却并非同于主句的谓语动词。所略二者仍是不可只留其一:

He had an accident while (*he was*) on his way here. (Palmer) (时间从句的主语和主句的主语一致;同前)来这儿的路上,他出了事故。

If (*it is*) necessary (*for you to ring me*), ring me at home — you know my number. (Ball) 如果有必要,请打电话到家里,你知道我的电话号码。

1) 时间从句、处所从句

He fell asleep while (*he was*) doing his homework. (ALD) (was 为进行体助动词)他做着做着功课就睡着了。

He gave good practical advice when (*he was*) asked. (Sinclair) (was 为被动语态助动词)如果有人问他,他会给出恰当可行的建议。

Fill in the blanks with articles where (*it is*) necessary (*for you to fill in them with...*) (有时所略主语并非同于主句的主语)在必要的地方用冠词填空。

2) 方式从句

I've loved you as if (*you were*) my son. (Maugham) (were 属虚

拟语气;所略从句主语 you 同于主句宾语)我爱你就像爱自己的亲生儿子一样。

From time to time Jason turned round as though (*he was*) searching for someone. (Cronin) (*was* 为助动词)贾森不时地回过头,好像在找人。

3) 条件从句

He will come if (*he is*) asked. (Eckersley) (条件从句主语所指的人和主句的主语一致)如果有人邀请他,他会来的。

Send the goods now, if (*they are*) ready. (LDCE) (所略从句主语同于主句宾语)如果(货物)准备好了,现在就去送货。

Are you busy this afternoon? If (*you are*) not, I wish you would stay with me for a while this afternoon. (Voynich) 你今天下午忙吗? 如果不忙,你能陪我一会儿吗?

He will come later, if (*he comes*) at all. (CGEL) (从句谓语动词可以不是 be, 而是同于主句谓语动词)如果他真的还来的话,将会来得晚些。

4) 让步从句

Though (*she is*) no swimmer, Mary splashed about happily in the sea. (Eckersley) 尽管不会游泳,玛丽还是欢快地在海里拍打着水花。

Whether (*he is*) right or wrong, he usually wins the argument. 不管是对还是错,在争论中获胜的经常是他。

省略“主语 + be”也适用于某些惯用的简单句:

(*It is a*) Pity he won't help. (CGEL) 很遗憾,他不愿意帮忙。

(*I'm*) Sorry, I couldn't be better. (ib) 很抱歉,我再也不能做得更好了。

(*It's*) Too bad that I missed the film. 真糟糕,我错过了那部电影。

(*I am*) Afraid not. 恐怕不是。

但比较对话中某些简单句可保留“主语 + be”的主语，而只略去 be 的相应形式：

“Maybe you're afraid of your landlady.” — “I afraid (of her)?”

(略去 am)“可能你怕房东太太。”“我哪会(怕她)呢”

“I am too old to learn new tricks.” — “You old? Not a bit of it.”

(You are old? 中略 are)“我老了，学不了新把戏了”“你老了，一点也不。”

Exercise 13

I. 把下列句子改成倒装句，用 **hardly**, **not**, **often**, **only**, **so** 等副词或用谓语的一部分开头：

1. His manner was so absurd that everyone stared at him.
2. I did not lay a finger on him.
3. I had often intended to speak to him.
4. Champion William Anderson, who, when he's not winning trophies, is a hard-working shepherd in the Highlands of Scotland, is throwing the hammer.
5. It is possible to explain his failure to act decisively only by this means.
6. I had hardly left when/before the quarrel started.

II. 研究下列句子，填出省略的部分：

1. We got acquainted while on a visit to the Crimea.
2. He visited the places where he had played when a child.
3. She hurriedly left the room as if angry.
4. Send the goods now, if ready.

5. He will come later, if at all.
6. He is extremely well read though very young.
7. I show everything on my face whether angry or pleased.

Ⅲ. 选择最合适的选项填空:

1. The British are not interested in different cultures and other ways of doing things, _____ is often the case with many in other countries.
A. as B. so
C. what D. that
2. I hope all the precautions against air pollution, _____ suggested by the visiting experts, will be seriously considered here.
A. as B. while
C. after D. since
3. Not until the game had begun _____ at the sports ground.
A. should he have arrived B. had he arrived
C. did he arrive D. would he have arrived
4. _____ receiving financial support from the community or the government is allowed, it is never admired.
A. As B. Once
C. Although D. Lest
5. This is an illness that can result in total blindness _____ left untreated.
A. after B. if
C. since D. unless

第十四章 选用从句与选用相应结构的比较

14.1 简单句、并列复合句与主从复合句的语体差别

在口语和书面语两大语体中,口语句多较简短,内容多是单一的,故多用简单句;口语中、需要说明几个情况间的关系时,常只是用少数并列连词之一把简单句连成并列复合句,表示的只是联合、对立、选择、因果等几种基本关系。而书面语句子多较长,多用较繁杂的结构把互相关连的多种情况综合起来;为了区分主要与次要,确指特定联系的方面、性质、特征等,常用种类繁多的主从连词,把各分句联接成主从复合句。比较:

<p>(口语,简单句;接上)</p> <p>Go straight ahead for a mile. Turn to the right. Then you'll find the house. 一直走一英里,往右拐,你就找到那所房子了。</p> <p>In Paris he met Aime Bonpland. Bonpland was 25. He was well educated, well-built, good-looking, in every way comparable to Humboldt. Bonpland's interest was in botany. 在巴黎,他碰见埃麦·邦波朗。邦波朗25岁,他教养有素,身</p>	<p>(书面语,主从复合句;接上)</p> <p>If you go straight ahead for a mile, turning to the right, you will find the house. 如果你一直往前走,走一英里,你往右一拐,就会找到那所房子。</p> <p>In Paris he met Aime Bonpland, a young man of 25, <u>who</u> was like Humboldt, well educated, well built and good-looking, <u>whose</u> interest was also in scientific expedition, particularly in botanical discoveries.</p>
--	---

(口语,简单句;接上)

体强壮,相貌英俊,各方面都比得上汉勃尔特。邦波朗喜爱植物学。

Speak the truth and you need have no fear. (联合) 说实话,就不用怕。

Murder has no tongue, but it will some day speak. (对立) 谋杀案本身不会说话,但总有一天它要把一切说明。

Hands up or I'll fire. (选择) 举起手来,不然我要开枪了。[Drop that, or I'll kill you. ≠ Drop that, and I'll kill you. (Close)]

Keep in bed for a couple of days, or the cold is hard to shake off. 卧床养几天吧,不然这感冒很难摆脱。

The law protected him, or he would have come to a miserable end. 法律保护了他,不然他会落个很悲惨的下场。

He fell sound asleep, for he was very tired. (因果) 他睡着了,睡得很香,他太累了。

He was very tired, (and) so he fell asleep. (因果) 他太累了,就睡着了。

(书面语,主从复合句;接上)

在巴黎,他碰见埃麦·邦波朗,一个 25 岁的青年,像汉勃尔特一样,也是教养有素,身体强壮,相貌英俊,而且也喜爱从事科学考察,特别想在植物学方面做些新发现。

If you speak the truth, you need have no fear. 如果你说实话,你就用不着害怕。

Murder, though it has no tongue, will some day speak. 虽然谋杀案本身不会说话,但总有一天它要把一切说明。

I will bring the scandal to light unless you hand him over to the police. 除非你把他交给警察,否则我要揭发这一丑事。

Unless you keep in bed for a couple of days, the cold is hard to shake off. 除非你卧床静养几天,不然这感冒很难摆脱。

Had not the law protected him, he would have come to a miserable end. 若不是法律保护了他,他会落个很悲惨的下场。

As/Since/Because he was very tired, he fell sound asleep. 由于/因为太累了,他沉沉睡去。

He was so tired that he fell asleep. 他太累了,以致/结果就睡着了。

14.2 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语体因素

动词非限定形式短语常可相当从句, 而从句简洁。无论是口语或书面语中, 都常选用一些不定式短语、分词短语或“介词 + 动名词”构成的短语(有时还会选用这些非限定形式带逻辑主语的复合结构), 而较少用相应的从句:

Drinking at the spring, the hunter saw a huge lion. (While he was drinking at the spring, the hunter saw a huge lion.) 在泉边喝水的时候, 猎人看见一只大狮子。

The hunter saw a huge lion *drinking* at the spring. (The hunter saw that a huge lion was drinking at the spring.) 猎人看见一只大狮子在泉边喝水。

Painted white, the house looks bigger. (Now that the house has been painted white, it looks bigger.) 这所房子漆成白色的, 看着大了些。

You lock this door by *turning* the key twice to the left. (You can lock this door as/if you turn the key twice to the left.) 你把钥匙向左转两圈, 就把门锁上了。

He never borrowed money *without repaying* it. (He never borrowed money that he did not afterwards repay.) 他没有借钱不还的时候。

He was not a man *to tell a lie*. (He was not such a man as would tell a lie.) 他不是说谎的人。

His mother will be much consoled *to hear of* the escape of her son from so many dangers. (His mother will be much consoled when she hears that her son has escaped so many dangers.) 他母亲听说儿子逃脱了这么多危险, 将感到非常欣慰。

There is nothing *to do* about it. (Schibsbbye)(不定式主动形式可表“需要”,比较 There is nothing that we should do now.)目前没有什么要做的事。

There is nothing *to be done* for the time being. (不定式被动形式可表“可能”,比较 There is nothing that we can do about it.)对此,我们是无能为力了。

It's bad *of you to smoke* before the old ladies. (of 引导带逻辑主语的不定式复合结构)你在那些年长的夫人面前吸烟,这样做太恶劣了。

It's bad *for you to smoke*. (小西)(for 引导带逻辑主语的不定式复合结构)你吸烟可不好。(你如果常吸烟或已开始吸烟,对自己或对别人不利)

Everything taken into consideration, her proposal seems more practicable. (带逻辑主语的分词独立结构;不必说 If everything is taken into consideration, her proposal seems more practicable.)全面考虑一下,她的建议看来是比较可行的。

但因动词非限定形式缺乏语气、时态形式,某些从句的语气或时态意义用非限定形式短语来表达,可能表达不清,或者不能表达(现在分词不等于从句现在时,不定式不等于从句虚拟语气等):

Uneasy lies the head that *wears* a crown. (不宜说成 Uneasy lies the head wearing a crown.)戴王冠的头躺下休息也不得安宁。

The dog that *fetches* carries. (谚语)(Who chatters to you will chatter of you.)(不能说 The dog fetching/The fetching dog...)当你议论别人的人也会把你的事当着别人议论。(“拿来/带走的狗”指对你说三道四又对别人议论你的人)

比较:A *drowning* man will clutch at a straw. 相当于 A man who

is drowning... (从句用现在进行时) 就要淹死的人抓住一根稻草也不放。而 Barking dogs seldom bite. (谚语) 相当于 Dogs that bark at every stranger... (从句用一般现在时) 总是汪汪叫的狗很少真咬人。

比较: A *scalded* cat fears cold water. (谚语) 相当于 A cat that *has once been scalded*... (从句用现在完成时) 热水烫过的猫见了凉水也害怕。然而 The castle, *burnt down* in 1485, was never rebuilt. 相当于 The castle, which *was burnt down* in 1485, ... (从句用一般过去时) 这座城堡, 1485 年被烧毁, 一直没有重建。

I wish I *had been* there. (指过去, 不能说 * I wish to have been there.) 我希望我原来在那里/到那里去过。(但可把从句虚拟语气移到前边动词上, 后边从句改用不定式: I'd like to *have been* there. (Hornby))

比较指将来的希望: I wish John to have finished before she comes. (小西) 我希望在她来到以前, 约翰就已经做完了。

口语倾向简单明了, 但不是只追求简短。并不很长而比较明确的从句, 在口语中也常使用, 而相应的动词非限定形式倒不一定常用。如非限定形式的完成形式与被动形式短语、介词加动名词等构成的短语, 就不常见于口语, 而常属书面语。特别是非限定形式带逻辑主语所构成的复合结构或独立结构, 一般多出现于书面语中。比较:

<p>口语体: 用较短、较明确从句</p> <p><u>When</u> the trick was found out, the master ordered <u>that</u> the man should be dismissed at once. 诡计被识破后, 主人下令马上把那人撵走。</p> <p><u>As</u> I was suddenly pressed to give an answer, I found myself at a loss. 突然催促我回答, 我不知说什么好了。</p>	<p>书面语体: 用非限定形式短语/结构</p> <p><u>On finding out</u> the trick, the master ordered the man <u>to be expelled</u> from the house at once. 诡计被识破后, 主人下令立即把那人逐出家门。</p> <p>Suddenly <u>being pressed</u> to give an answer, I found myself at a loss. 突然被催促做出回答, 我不知所措了。</p>
--	---

口语体:用较短、较明确从句

It's silly that you didn't go after you had accepted the invitation. 你接受邀请之后却没有去,这太愚蠢了。

As soon as you have reached manhood, you'll have to work for your living. 你一旦成年了,就必须干活谋生。

Abide by your promise, as you value your good name. 既然你爱惜你的名誉,就要信守你的诺言。

I was afraid (that) John might have an accident. 我很害怕约翰他会发生事故。

Now that the case is hopeless, we must change our plans. 这事既然没希望了,我们必须改变计划。

As there were no further discussions, the meeting was brought to a close. 因为再没有人发言,会议结束了。

We have read that some savages can produce fire by the friction of two pieces of wood. 我们看过记载,有些野人能摩擦两块木头来引火。

We shall assemble at 10:50, and the procession is to start moving at 11:00. (并列复合句)我们10点50集合,而队伍11点出发。

I don't think it possible that Colonel Brandon should give me a living. 布兰敦上校给我解决生活问题,我认为不可能。

书面语体:用非限定形式短语/结构

It is silly not to have gone after having accepted the invitation. (LDCE) 接受邀请而未赴会,这太愚蠢了。

On reaching manhood, you will have to work for your living. 你一到成年之时,就必须工作,以谋生计。

Abide by your promise on pain of forfeiting your good name. 你要恪守你的诺言,以免丧失你的信誉。

I was afraid of John's/his having an accident. (口语可说 of John/him having...) 我恐怕约翰他会发生事故。

The case now being hopeless, we must change our plans. 此事现已无望,我们得改变计划。

No further discussions arising, the meeting was brought to a close. 再没有人发言议论,会议就宣告结束。

We have read of savages being able to produce fire by the friction of two pieces of wood. 我们曾读过有关记载,野人能摩擦两木块以取火。

We shall assemble at 10:50, the procession to start moving at 11:00 sharp. (不定式独立结构)我们将于10点50集合,而队伍11点准时出发。

Colonel Brandon give me a living — can it be possible? (无 to 不定式独立结构)布兰敦上校给我解决生活问题,这可能吗?

有些句子,把常用从句表达的意义用介词短语或形容词短语来表达,亦属书面用语。

In the performance of duty no one should feel afraid. (口语可以说 No one, as long as he performs his duty, should feel afraid.) 只要是在尽自己的责任,任何人不应该有所顾虑。

Every precaution was taken *against the failure of the plan*.
(Every precaution was taken so that the plan might not fail.)
为了这一计划不致失败,采取了一切应当采取的防患措施。

Her home is *completely expressive of her personality*. (If you look at her house, you'll see quite clearly what kind of person she is.) 看到她的家,就能十分清楚地了解她是怎样一个人。

14.3 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语义因素

除语体因素外,语义因素也能决定我们选用从句或选用动词非限定形式短语。在表示句中谓语所指情况(运动或联系)以外的另一情况时,如其时间关系比较复杂(如与谓语所指时间不是同时或衔接于其前、其后时),或其主动者、受动者等方面的关系比较复杂(如其主动、受动者不是句子主语所指的人或事物,也不是在场的或有关可理解的人或事物),则多使用从句。如果该情况的时间关系及相关方面都很简单明了则多使用动词非限定形式短语:

(*After*) *Taking a deep breath*, she dived into the water. (Taking 的主动者即句子主语)深吸了一口气,她潜入水中。

Taken as a whole, the work was fruitful. (Taken 的受动者即句子主语)整个看来,这一工作是颇有成果的。(具被动意义过去分词的受动者即其逻辑主语)

You're all so easy *to take in*. (DCIE)(也可以说 ...to be taken in; to take in 的受动者或 to be taken in 的逻辑主语,即句子

主语)你太容易受骗。

带自己的逻辑主语的非限定形式复合结构(包括独立结构)有时相当于从句,但所表示的时间等方面的关系还是不大清楚。如下列二句中的 to tell/to take,仅在一定情景或一定上下文中才能弄清其时间性:

It is wrong *for/of you to tell* her a lie/*to take* his book. (RHD/Horizon) 你对她撒谎/你拿他的书,这是错误的。(for somebody to do something 多指可能的、未完成的行为,但也可指已完成的行为; of somebody to do something 多指已完成的行为,但也可指即将完成的行为)

It was foolish *for/of him to take* that expensive house. (NDEC) 他买那所价钱昂贵的房子,真太傻了。(在谓语动词 was foolish 所指的过去当时, to take 的行为或许尚未发生而仅属可能,或许即将发生,或许已经完成)

如无一定背景或上下文,要明确表示 to take 行为的时间性,就得使用从句:

It would be a foolish thing if he *would/should* take that expensive house. (该行为当时尚未发生)

It was a foolish thing that he *took* that expensive house. (该行为当时正在发生或已经完成)

It's ...of somebody to do something 限用于对人的心意、性能的评价(主动语态),多指已完成的行为、已有的联系:

It's good/very kind/clever/stupid/nasty *of you to come* again. 你又来了,你真好/太好了/真聪明/真愚蠢/真卑鄙。

It's... for somebody/something to be... 不限于对人的评论(主动或被动语态),可指经常的情况、可指可能(尚未发生)的一时情况,也可指已完成的一时情况(包括行为):

It's not good *for a man to be alone*. (泛指经常的一般情况)一个

男人单身生活是不合适的。

It's satisfactory *for murderers/the murderer to be hanged*. (泛指或特指)凶手被绞死,人们是满意的。

For me to live with her was intolerable. (RHD) (of me to live/do 之类不可前置)(过去)和她在一起生活,我真受不了。

It's impossible *for the car to be ready* by five. (将来)五点以前,汽车不可能备好待发。

比较下列各句,更能看出动词非限定形式所表示的各种关系都不如具有时态、语气形式的从句谓语那么明确:

You are right in *doing* so. 可能指经常的行为,也可能指一次的行为(多半已完成,但也可能未完成)

You are right to do so. 可能指已完成的行为,也可能指未完成的(即将完成的)行为

It's right <u>of you to do</u> so. 多指已完成,也许即将完成;of you 强调其心意	It's right <u>for you to do</u> so. 多指未完成,也许已完成;for you 不强调其心意
It is/was right that you <u>did</u> so. 过去实际情况	It's right if you <u>do</u> so. 将来可能情况
It's right that you <u>have done</u> so. 现在完成的实际情况	It would be right if you <u>should/were to do</u> so. 将来虚拟可能情况

Anne was cruel/awful/careless in *leaving/to leave* her child on the train. 指经常或指一次。(安妮把她的小孩丢在列车上,这太残酷/可怕/粗心大意了。)

It was cruel/awful/careless <u>of Anne to leave</u> her child on the train. cruel of... 强调心意;awful/careless	It was/must be/would be awful <u>for her child to be left</u> on the train. 过去实际情况或可能情况(可能性或大
---	---

<p>of... 强调其性质 (接上左栏)</p> <p>It was too cruel that Anne <u>should leave/should have left</u> her child on the train. 评论其心意</p> <p>It was awful that Anne <u>should be/have been</u> so careless as to leave her child on the train. 评论其性质; should be 指经常或指已完成情况</p>	<p>或小) (接上右栏)</p> <p>It must have been awful if her child <u>was left</u> on the train. 过去可能情况,估计已发生。</p> <p>It would have been awful if her child <u>had been left</u> on the train. 过去虚拟可能情况,实际并未发生,全属假设</p>
---	--

以上例句中由“介词 + 动名词”或由不定式作状语,或由不定式复合结构作主语。以下各句中动名词、不定式短语或复合结构作宾语,所表示的时间关系同样不那么明确,有时只能在一定背景或上下文中才能理解。

“Thanks for reminding me. I'd forgotten all about *him coming* this afternoon.” “谢谢你提醒我。(你没有提醒我以前,)我已把他今天下午要来的事完全忘掉了。”动名词可指过去当时未发生的行为(forget about 可看作短语动词; him coming 动名词复合结构)

“I hope you didn't forget about *posting* my letter.” — “No, I remembered to *post* the letter. I didn't forget to *post it*.” “希望你不要忘了寄我的信。”“不,我还记着呢。我没有忘掉要寄信。”动名词、不定式都可指过去当时未发生、将发生的行为(相当: I remembered/didn't forget that I should post the letter.)

I forgot about *the food cooking* on the stove. “刚才我忘了,菜还正在火上炖着呢!”动名词可指过去当时正在发生的行为或运动。

I remember *posting* your letters/*meeting* him in Rome two years ago. I'll never forget *hearing* him playing Chopin. (Horny) 我记得寄了你的信/两年前在罗马见过他。我永远不会忘记他弹奏肖邦的曲

子。动名词还可指谓语所指时间(在此为现在)已经完成的行为或运动(后一句相当 I'll never forget with what delight we heard him playing Chopin. 之类的主从复合句)。

表示句中谓语所指情况以外的另一情况时,除根据时间关系复杂与否选用短语或从句外,还常根据该情况主动、受动关系的复杂与否:如该运动或联系的逻辑上的主语即句子主语,常选用动词非限定形式短语;其逻辑上的主语是说话人本人或所指自明的在场者时,则常选用动词非限定形式短语;否则,如主动、受动关系较复杂时,也常选用从句(或选用时间、语态意义可较为明确的动词非限定形式复合结构):

其逻辑主语(不必指明)即句中主语:

She hurried so as to be in time for the lecture. (不常说 so that she could be...)她赶紧走,以便赶来听讲,不致迟到。

We think it wrong to punish him. (不常说) for us to/that we should punish him 我们认为,要惩罚他是错误的。

I don't know whom to ask. (不常说 ...I should ask.) 我不知道应该问谁。

Finding him a bore, I kept out of his way. (比较 Friends finding him a bore, I too, ...)发现他很讨厌,我

其逻辑主语非句中主语,以从句、复合结构表明:

She hurried to open the gate so that his car might rush straight out. (for his car to rush...) 她赶紧去打开大门,以便他的汽车能一直冲出门去。

We think it wrong that they should punish him/he should be punished. (...for him to be punished.) 我们认为,他们要惩罚他/让他受惩罚是错误的。

I don't know whom my son should ask. (...the right person for him to ask.) 我不知道我儿子该问谁。

As my friends told me he was a bore, so I was keeping out of his way. 因为朋友们告诉我他很讨厌,

<p>其逻辑主语(不必指明)即句中主语:</p> <p>在躲着他。 (接上左栏)</p> <p><u>Painted white</u>, the house looks bigger/a bit more lovely. 那房子刷成白色的,看着大了些/更好看了。</p> <p>其逻辑主语(不必指明)即说话者本人或在场的人:</p> <p>What are the main measures <u>to take/to be taken</u>? (不常说 for us to take) 应该采取什么主要措施呢?</p> <p>The question now is how <u>to carry out</u> the plan. (不常说 how we are to carry...) 现在的问题是如何执行这一计划。</p> <p>The way <u>to start</u> it is to give it a push. (不常说 The way for us/you to start it...) 开动它的方法是推它一下。</p> <p>I suggest <u>setting up</u> more nurseries. (不常说 that we should...) 我建议建立更多的托儿所。</p>	<p>其逻辑主语非句中主语,以从句、复合结构表明:</p> <p>我一直躲着他。 (接上右栏)</p> <p>Now that the house's been painted so beautifully, she'll like it very much. 既然那房子油刷得那么漂亮,她会很喜欢那房子的。</p> <p>其逻辑主语是另外的人或事物,以从句、复合结构表明:</p> <p>What are the first measures that <u>the newly arrived brigade</u> should take? 新来的工作队应该先采取什么措施呢?</p> <p>The question now is how <u>the grass-roots units</u> are to carry out the plan. 现在的问题是各基层单位将如何执行这一计划。</p> <p>I don't understand why <u>they</u> shouldn't start it now. 我不能理解,他们为什么现在不把它开动起来。</p> <p>I suggest that <u>the municipal government</u> should set up more nurseries. 我建议,市政府应建立更多的托儿所。</p>
--	--

14.4 “无依着修饰语”多应改为从句或以其它方法改正

从上节最后左栏后四个例句中看出,作名词性成分的不定式、动

名词,或作定语的不定式,当其逻辑上的主语不提自知时,可不指明。泛指的不定式、动名词亦可不带逻辑主语:

To see is to believe. (比较 *For us to see is for us to believe.*)

Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。

作定语的分词的逻辑主语即所修饰名词。作表语的分词的逻辑主语即句子主语:

I feel/am much/very *concerned* about him/his illness. (NDEC/Wood) 对于他/他的病,我很担心。

但对于作为或构成状语的动词非限定形式(分词、不定式、“介词+动名词”),如其逻辑上的主语不是句子主语时,一般都必须指明。否则,那非限定形式短语状语属于语法错误,这种误用状语叫“无依着修饰语”(unattached modifiers),常使意义混乱。要改正用了无依着修饰语的病句,应改换主语使之兼指非限定形式的逻辑主语,或使用复合结构指明非限定形式的逻辑主语,或者使用从句:

* *To catch the culprits, elaborate plans must be made.* 应改用兼指不定式逻辑主语的句子主语: *To catch the culprits, we must make elaborate plans.* 为了抓住罪犯,我们必须制定周密的计划。

* *Looking out of the window, the cow was seen chewing the cud.* 大概不是说“牛向窗外望时...”,故应改用兼指分词逻辑主语的主语: *Looking out of the window, I/he/the milkmaid saw the cow chewing the cud.* 我/他/挤奶女工向窗外望去,见牛在反刍。

* (On) *Opening the cupboard, a skeleton fell out with a thud.* 不是说“一架骷髅自己打开柜门时咕咚一声跌了出来。”应改为: (On) *The timid girl opening the cupboard, a skeleton fell out with a thud.* 或 *Hardly had the girl opened the cupboard when a skeleton fell out with a thud.* 那胆怯的女孩子刚一打开柜门,一

架骷髅咕咚一声掉了出来。

* Hated and despised by so many people, we cannot help, nevertheless, sympathizing with Shylock. 大概不是说“我们受到这么多人憎恨和蔑视,却...”,故应改为 Hated and despised by so many people, **Shylock** nevertheless forcefully arouses our sympathy. 或 Hated and despised as he is by so many people, we cannot help sympathizing with Shylock. 夏洛克虽然受到那么多人憎恨和蔑视,他却有力地激起我们对他的同情/我们却不能不对他寄予同情。

不过,在实际应用中,包括在许多著名作家的作品中,只要有一定情景或上下文使其意义明确,所谓“无依着修饰语”也常见到,不能一概看作错误:

Looking out for a theme, several crossed his mind. (Onions) (后边的 his 表明前边意思是 He looking) 当他寻找主题时,有几个出现在他的头脑里。

He felt himself gently touched on the shoulder and **looking** round, his father stood before him. (Dickens) (上文有 He 表明中间意思是 and he looking round) 他觉得有人轻轻拍了拍他的肩膀;他回头一看,他父亲站在面前。

In the picture this is shown **looking** at the tail of the airplane. (意指 as we look...) 这张画中,这是从机尾一端看到的樣子。

Flying through the air at the speed of sound, a sudden thought struck me. (最后的 me 表明前边的意思是 I flying) 以声音的高速在空中飞行着,我忽然有了个想法。

These prayers are to be said **kneeling**. (Onions) 这些祈祷词要跪着说。

Since **leaving** her, the whole of life has seemed pointless. (GCE) 自从离开她以来,我觉得生活完全没有意义了。

不定式前带 *in order* 时,可用于以下句中,句子主语并非不定式逻辑上的主语:

In order to catch the culprits, elaborate plans were made.

(GCE) 为了抓住罪犯,制定了周密的计划。

此外,还有不少惯用的动词非限定形式可不问其逻辑主语与句子主语是否相合,广泛修饰各种句子,它们已构成语气状语短语(加于客观陈述的主观说明,见 14.7):

现在分词: *counting*... (把...计算在内), *judging from*... (从...上来判断), *speaking of* ... (谈到...), *generally/frankly/seriously speaking* (一般/坦白/严肃地说)

过去分词: *put bluntly/frankly/seriously* (直截了当/坦白/严肃认真地说)

动名词: *without mentioning*... (不用说,不包括...)

不定式: *to be blunt/frank/personal* (直截了当地说/坦白地说/就我个人来说), *not to mention*... (不用说,不包括...), *to say nothing of*... (不用说...), *needless to say* (不用说)

Counting/Including ourselves, ten persons went. 算我们自己,去了 10 个人。

(*Put*) *Frankly*, he hasn't a chance. 坦白说,他不可能成功。

Judging from/by the number of cars, everybody else seemed to be out. 从留下的汽车数看来,别人好像都出去了。

There were three of us, *not to mention/without mentioning the child*. 我们是三个人,不算那个孩子。

Needless to say, he kept his promise. 不用说,他履行了诺言。

另有 *Considering*, 考虑到(惯用为方面状语或理由状语,不考虑其“无依着”)、*allowing for*, 尽管(惯用为让步状语,不考虑其“无依着”)、*given*, 如有(惯用为条件状语,原属分词独立结构),因作为句子所述客观情况的不可分离的部分,并非语气状语: *She looks young*

considering her age. (回答 In what sense does she look young? 之类问题, 方面状语) 按她的年龄说, 她看着比较年轻。 *Considering how much it costs*, the machine is a failure. (回答 Why? 等, 理由状语) 从成本看, 这种机器是个失败。 *Given time/health*, I can do it. (回答 on what condition? 条件状语) 如有时间/好身体, 我也能干。

有些分词惯于用来引导状语从句, 现已转为连词: *granting/granted (that)*, *providing/provided (that)*, *seeing (that)*, *supposing (that)* 等, 其用例见 11.9。

14.5 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作状语、作定语的情况

表示句中谓语所指情况以外的另一情况, 常常既可使用从句、又可使用动词非限定形式短语或其复合结构, 其间只有些语体上的差别, 或者根据语义的复杂与否, 分别更常使用从句、复合结构或更常使用非限定形式短语。

但除语体、语义因素外, 所任句子成分也与选用从句、复合结构或非限定形式短语有很大关系。作为这种或那种句子成分, 有时只能用从句形式, 又有时只能用非限定形式复合结构或非限定形式短语。现按作状语、作定语、作宾语的顺序, 分述如下(作宾语情况在下节)。

状语: 用不定式短语表示的结果状语, 不能改用从句表示:

I worked late into the night *only to find the job not yet half finished*. (不能说 ...so that I found...) 我工作到深夜, 结果活计还没有完成一半。

He left his native country, *never to return*. (不能说 so that he never returned...) 他离开了故国, 结果再未能回来。

She lived *to see her children grown up*. 她活着看到了她的孩子们长大成人。(比较; She lived a long life so that she saw her

children grown up. 意义颇有出入)

但不定式推论状语(似指结果,实指论据)可改作推论状语从句(见 11.3; 11.8,5).

I must have been blind *not to see him through*. 或 I must have been blind that I couldn't *see him through*. 我竟未看穿他这个人,我真是瞎了眼睛了。

What have I said to make you so angry? 或 What have I said that *you should be (made) so angry*? 你怎么这么生气,难道我说什么错话了吗?

定语:不及物动词的过去分词作定语的用法很有限,要用该不及物动词修饰名词时多必须用于定语从句中。及物动词的现在/过去分词与不及物动词的现在分词作定语,就没有这样的限制:

及物:现在分词 A cat *stealing* cream would as well shut its eyes.
偷吃奶油的猫也会闭上眼睛,像自欺欺人的人一样。

及物:过去分词 The scalded cat fears cold water. (谚语)猫被热水烫一下,见了凉水也害怕。

不及物:现在分词 One *barking* dog sets all the street a-barking.
(谚语)一犬吠影,十犬吠声。You don't say that a dog *barking* at the moon doesn't bark in vain. 不能说看见月亮也叫的狗不是无谓地乱叫。

不及物动词的过去分词则一般不可用作定语,如不说 * You don't say that the dog barked at the moon didn't bark in vain. 应改用定语从句: You don't say that the dog which *barked* at the moon didn't bark in vain. 不能说看见月亮也叫的那只狗不是无谓地乱叫。

不及物动词的过去分词仅有少数只可用作前位定语(不可作后位定语),其他,既不可用作前位定语,也不可用作后位定语(除非带一副词)。

少数不及物动词的过去分词只能作前位定语:

The bushes made good cover for the escaping/escaped prisoner. 可说 ... good cover for the prisoner escaping from the concentration camp. 不可说 * ... good cover for the prisoner escaped from the concentration camp.

The fallen snow was now frozen hard. 但不可说 * The snow fallen during the night was now frozen hard.

可说 a grown man/tree 大人/大树
He has a grown up son. 但不可说 *
He has a son grown up in his native village.

Behold the rising/risen moon! 但不可说 * Behold the moon risen high in the sky!

He asked about the vanished jewels. 不可说 * the disappeared jewels; 也不可说 * He asked about the jewels vanished from her neck.

要用于后位(带状语)只能用在定语从句中:

The bushes made good cover for the prisoner who had just escaped from the concentration camp. 那树丛成为刚从集中营里跑出来的囚徒很好的藏身之处。

The snow that had fallen during the night was now frozen hard. 夜间下的雪这时已冻得很硬。

He has a son who has grown up in his native village. 他有个在故乡长大的儿子。

Behold the moon that has risen high in the sky! 看那已高高升到空中的月亮!

He asked about the jewels that had vanished/disappeared from her neck. 他问起原来她戴在脖子上、这时已经不见的那些宝石。

除 escaped, fallen, grown, risen, vanished, faded/withered (flowers; 如“凋谢/枯萎的花”), departed (youth; 如“消逝的青春”), retired (teachers; 如“退休的教师”), returned (students; 如“归国留学生”), much-traveled (people; 如“经常旅行的人们”) 等可作前位定语外,不及物动词的过去分词一般不可用作定语。

<p>不可说 * the arrived immigrant 也不可说 * I've called on the immigrant arrived last night from Italy. 比较可作定语的不定式: The next train <i>to arrive</i>/that arrived was from York. 随后接着来到的列车是从约克开来的。 不可说 * There comes the girl walked all the way from Boston. 在 the distance walked 中 walked 为及物的(走过的距离) 不可说 * None among us knew the man stood up at that moment. 在 Do you see the boy stood in the corner for some new mischief? 中 stood 为及物的(你看见那又因捣乱被罚站在墙角里的孩子了吗?) 不可说 * The slept child is now playing with toys.</p>	<p>但前带副词时可说 <u>the newly arrived immigrant</u> 或 <u>the immigrant recently arrived</u> from Italy 可用于从句: I've called on the immigrant who arrived last night from Italy. 我访问了那位昨夜从意大利到此的移民。 用于从句: There comes the girl who has walked all the way from Boston. 看, 那从波士顿一路走来的姑娘来了。 用于从句: None among us knew the man who stood up at that moment. 我们当中谁也不认识那个就在此刻站立起来的男人。 用于从句: The child who <i>has slept</i> for 3 hours is now playing with toys. 睡了三个小时的孩子在玩玩具。</p>
---	---

14.6 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作宾语的情况

句中的动词宾语指运动所及的另一运动或联系状态时,由从句表示,还是由动词非限定形式(动名词、不定式)短语或复合结构表示(宾语属名词性成分,不用分词),有语体、语义上(关系复杂与否)的原因,但也有很多情况只由习惯用法来决定。因动词而异的惯用宾语类型必须分别记清。下面按5种情况举例说明。第一种中接用 that 宾语从句或复合结构,一般不接用动名词、不定式;中间三种中

一般不接 *that* 从句而分别接用动名词、不定式或不定式复合宾语；最后第五种情况中某些动词接用不同类型宾语时所表意义有所不同。

1) 很多动词接用 *that* 宾语从句或不定式复合结构，一般不接用动名词、不定式及其短语：

i 一般可接用 *that* 从句或“不定式复合结构宾语”而不接用不定式、动名词的动词(附接用 *that* 从句、“不定式复合宾语”而又分别兼用不定式、动名词宾语的动词)：

接 *that* 从句或不定式复合宾语的，有使役动词(使某人/某事物做或不做某事) *command, convince, direct, entreat, order, persuade, remind, request, tell, urge, warn* 等，还有认识动词(认为某人/某事物曾做、在做、将做某事) *assume, believe, know, suppose, suspect* 等，这些动词一般不接不定式、动名词短语宾语。

She commanded/convincing me/reminded me/told me that I should go. She commanded/convincing/reminded/told me to go. 她命令/说服/提醒/告诉我到那里去。(“不定式复合宾语”不同于不定式宾语)

I warned her that she mustn't wait for me. I warned her not to wait for me. 我警告过她，不要等我。

We assume/believe/know/suspect that he has done more harm than good. We assume/believe/know/suspect him to have done more harm than good. 我们设想/相信/知道/猜测他的所作所为，害多于利。

同是使役动词的 *advise* 与 *recommend* 在可接 *that* 从句和“不定式复合宾语”的同时，还可接动名词短语宾语(一般不接不定式短语宾语)：

They advise/recommend waiting here/him to wait here/that he should wait here. 他们劝他/建议他在此等候。

同是使役动词的 *ask*，同是认识动词的 *think* 以及意念动词

desire、expect 在可接 *that* 从句和“不定式复合宾语”的同时，还可接不定式(一般不接动名词)短语宾语：

He asked(用作意念动词)/desired/expected/thought *to take part* in the concert. 他要求/希望/预料将/想要参加这个音乐会。

He asked/desired/expected *that* I should take part/*me to take part* in the concert. 他要求/希望/预料我……

John thought *that* the book belonged to Bill. John thought *the book to belong* to Bill. (小西)约翰以为那本书是比尔的。

但 expect 的同义词 anticipate 却是可接 *that* 从句和动名词短语宾语，一般不接不定式宾语、不定式复合宾语。而意念动词 fancy/imagine 除接 *that* 从句和动名词宾语外，还可接 somebody/something to be 型宾语，但很少接用表运动不定式复合宾语 somebody/something to do 等等：

He anticipated (*my*) *taking part*. 他预料(我)将会参加。

He anticipated *that* I should take part.

I can't fancy/imagine *his/him taking part* in it. 我不能想象他竟会参加。

I fancy (believe)/imagine(suppose) (*that*) he's very clever/him to be very clever. 我想/设想他很聪明。

ii 一般可接用 *that* 从句而不接用复合结构、也不接用不定式与动名词的动词(附接用 *that* 从句又分别兼用不定式、动名词宾语的动词)：

除名词、代词宾语外，一般只接 *that* 宾语从句的有认识动词 accept, grant, guess, prove, realize 等(其中 guess、prove 可接 somebody/something to be 型复合宾语，但不可接表运动的 somebody/something to do 等普通“不定式复合宾语”)，还有表述动词 add, allege, answer, argue, assure, complain, confess, maintain, remark, repeat, reply, state 等。

I accept *that* /grant you *that* he wastes his money, but he always spends it on his friends. 我承认/承认你说的对,他浪费钱财,但他的钱总是花在朋友身上。

He assured me that/stated *that* he had never seen it. 他向我保证/他郑重说明,他没见过那东西。

但同是表述动词的 claim, guarantee, say, promise 及意念动词 hope、态度动词 agree 等却是兼用 *that* 宾语从句和不定式短语宾语,一般不接用“不定式复合宾语”和动名词:

I guaranteed/promised (him)/hoped/agreed *to finish/that* I would finish it in 2 days. (promised 后面的 him 为可有可无的间接宾语,不构成“不定式复合宾语”) 我保证/答应(他)/希望/同意两天内完成这件工作。

I said (to them) *to respect/that* they should respect their peers. (Green; 常说 I told them to respect... 用复合宾语, them 前无须介词) 我告诉他们要尊敬与他们有同等地位的人。

而同是表述动词的 mention、suggest 等又是兼可接用 *that* 从句和动名词,一般不接不定式和“不定式复合宾语”:

I mentioned *having been* there. (一般不说 to have been) I mentioned *that* I had been there. 我提到,当时我已到那里去过了。

I suggested (their) *going* together. 我建议(他们)一起去。

I suggested *that* they (should) go together. 我建议他们一起去。

按惯用法, suggest 的同义词 propose 却可兼用 *that* 宾语从句、动名词和不定式宾语:

I proposed (your) *starting* early/(to them) *to start* early/(to you) *that* you (should) start early. (不说 * I proposed you/them to start early. 即不用“不定式复合宾语”) 我(正式)提议(你们/他们)早早出发。

2) 少数最常用动词总是接用较简便的宾语形式,即动名词、不定式短语或“不定式复合宾语”,一般不接 that 从句。如 (can't) bear, like, 'd love, need, want 等:

I like/I'd love/I can't bear *living* alone/*to live* there alone/*him to live* there alone. 我喜欢/我倒很喜欢/我不能忍受单独生活/独自在那里/让他独自住在那里。

His wife needs tactful *handling*/*to be handled* tactfully. (Hornby) 他的妻子必须巧妙对待。

The man wants *watching*/*to be watched*. 此人要严加监视。

I need/want (*you*) *to help* him. 我需要/想要(你)帮助他。

need 的同义词 require 却是既可接用这三种宾语形式,又可接用 that 宾语从句:

Teachers require warning/*to be warned* against shouting. 对教师们需要告诫,让他们不要大喊大叫。I require (of) you to solve the problem. I require (of you) that you solve the problem. (小西)我需要你来解决这个问题。

3) 较多动词可接用动名词、不定式短语宾语,一般不接用“不定式复合宾语”和 that 宾语从句。如态度动词 decline, (can't) endure, love, neglect, omit, (can't) stand 等,以及施动动词 attempt, begin, cease, commence, continue, delay, start, try 等:

I couldn't stand *waiting*/*to wait* for three hours. (Palmer)(或 I declined...) 我受不了(拒绝)等三个小时。

The buses have ceased *running*/*to run*. (Eckersley) 公共汽车不运行了。

但 decline 的同义词 refuse 可接不定式而不接动名词宾语; cease 的同义词 stop 可接动名词宾语而不接用不定式宾语[所可接不定式为目的状语: We stopped (in order) to talk. (ALD)]

can't endure/stand 的近义词 forbid 及其反义词 permit 却是可

接动名词与不定式复合宾语,一般不接不定式宾语:

The regulations forbid/we don't permit (you) *smoking* here/*you to smoke* here. 有规章/我们不许可(你)在此吸烟。

接动名词宾语和接不定式宾语可有或多或少的意义差别: Try *being nice* to her. 对她态度好些试试看。 Try *to be nice* to her. 要做到对她态度好些。

4)更多动词在动名词、不定式宾语和“不定式复合宾语”三种中只分别惯用一种宾语形式,一般都不接 *that* 宾语从句:

i 三种宾语中只接用不定式复合宾语的,有态度动词 *assist*, *challenge* 等;使役动词 *appoint*, *bid*, *call on*, *cause*, *compel*, *enable*, *encourage*, *force*, *have*, *invite*, *let*, *make*, *oblige*, *press*, *send* 等。

I've had/let/made *him go*. (不是 *him to go*) 我让他走了。

He *made to speak*, but I stopped him. (LDCE;句中 *make* 相当 *be about*, 为助动词或情态动词性质) 他要说话,我没让他说。

I *assisted/called (up) on him to keep* his promise. (ALD) 我协助/劝告他履行诺言。

但 *assist* 的同义词 *help* 却可兼用“不定式复合宾语”和不定式短语宾语: Can I *help (you) (to) carry* that? (EGS) 我来帮着(您)搬那件好吗? I couldn't *help him to make* friends with them. 我未能帮他结交他们。

比较 I couldn't *help his/him making* friends with them. (*can't help* 接动名词“无奈...”) 他结交他们,我无可奈何。

ii 三种宾语中只接用不定式短语的,有态度动词 *don't care* (不愿), *contract* (同意、承担), *hesitate*, *refuse* 等,意念动词 *aim*, *choose*, *contrive*, *endeavor*, *plan*, *plot*, *prepare* 等,施动动词 *can't afford*, *fail*, *hasten*, *manage*, *offer*, *seek* 等:

He *aimed/prepared/planned to do* it. (或 *planned on doing it*)

他打算/准备/计划做这件事。

但 aim 等的同义词 intend 可兼接用 that 从句、动名词、不定式和“不定式复合宾语”这四种宾语形式: We intended *doing* / *to do* it. We intended *them to do* it. We intended *that* they shall do it. (ALD) 我想要(让他们)做这件事。

Ⅲ 三种宾语中只接用动名词短语, 态度动词的, 有 detest, dislike, excuse, feel like, forgive, pardon, prevent, resent, can't resist, can't tolerate 等, 施动动词 defer, escape, finish, give up, keep (on), leave off, miss, postpone, practice, put off, set about, stop 等, 以及关系动词 include, involve 等:

He has stopped/given up/left off *working* there. 他已不再在那里工作/放弃那里的工作/丢下那里的工作。

He detested/resented/prevented/stopped my *listening* to the radio. (LDCE etc) 他讨厌/不满/阻止/不让我听收音机。

但态度动词 leave 兼用动名词、“不定式复合宾语”: I'll leave *buying* the tickets to you. I'll leave *you to buy* the tickets. 买票的事, 我留给你办。

detest 与 resent 的近义词 hate 可兼用 that 从句、动名词、不定式和“不定式复合宾语”这四种宾语形式:

I should hate *to get up* early tomorrow. / I hate *getting up* early. (Schibsbye) 明天/(经常情况)我不愿早起。

I hate *the door to slam* just after midnight. / I hate *the door slamming* all night long. (GCE) 我讨厌那半夜以后/整个夜里“砰砰”的响声。

We hate (it) *that* you have to put up with so much. (Bologna) 我讨厌你必须忍受那么多不愉快的事。

5) 某些动词接用 that 宾语从句和接用动词、不定式、“不定式复合宾语”时, 所表示的意义有所不同, 例如 allow, charge, insist (on), learn, mind, object (to), teach 等:

They don't <u>allow</u> smoking here.	They don't <u>allow</u> that he's a great smoker. 承认(他们不承认他吸烟吸得太多。)
They don't <u>allow</u> him to smoke. 允许	
The judge <u>charged</u> me to be silent. 命令	The king <u>charged</u> that his minister had disobeyed instructions. 指责, 指控
He <u>charged</u> me to look after her. 责成	
He <u>insisted</u> on taking the medicine.	He <u>insisted</u> that she (should) take the medicine. 坚持
He <u>insisted</u> on her taking the medicine.	He <u>insisted</u> that she had taken/was regularly taking/would take it. 肯定说
He <u>insisted</u> on his original opinion. 坚持	
She'll be ready to <u>learn</u> to read and write in a few weeks. 学习	I'm sorry to <u>learn</u> that he is ill. I <u>learnt</u> (got to know) it from John. 得知
I don't <u>mind</u> being alone. I don't <u>mind</u> even everything being turned upside down. 在意	I don't <u>mind</u> that I'm alone. 在意
I <u>object</u> to telling him the secret. 反对	<u>Mind</u> that everything is in order. 注意(做到...)
He <u>taught</u> reading and writing and that day <u>was teaching</u> me to read Latin. 教	I <u>objected</u> that he is a hypocrite. 提出异议说
	He <u>taught</u> me that honesty was/is the best policy. 教导说

不同动词惯用哪几种宾语类型,同一动词接用不同类型宾语时
有何意义差别,ALD、LDCE 二词典都一一注明;较详尽的语法书及
惯用法词典也举例讲述。不过,归纳与分析似还不够。我们应更全
面探讨动词类别(认识、表述、意念、态度、使役、施动等),与动宾搭
配的关系,在繁杂语言现象中尽量找出其联系,关于这些详见与本书配
套的《通用英语动词、动宾句型教程》。

14.7 语气从句、短语、短句等形式的语气状语

14.4 中讨论到“无依着的”分词、不定式与“介词 + 动名词”短

语,指出其可能造成句义混乱,在语法上是错误的,应改为从句或以其他方法改正。即使有时根据上下文或具体情景,无依着短语可以理解,可以接受,但初学英语的人仍不宜使用。

然而,某些亦属“无依着的”分词、不定式与“介词 + 动名词”短语已成为惯用的语气短语,如 *so to speak*,其逻辑上的主语是说话者本人,故不必指出。这种语气短语表示说话人附加于所述客观情况的主观看法或说明。

同样,某些惯用的短句也专门表示语气。其中除由主从连词 *as* 引导的一些可称语气状语从句 (*adverbial clause of modality*, 见 11.3, 9) 外,一般只是短句形式的语气状语 (*sentence adverbial of modality*),既不是从句或分句,也不是主句或独立句。如 *as it were* 为语气状语从句, *you know* 为短句形式语气状语,二者都可加于句中或句末(有停顿或书面逗号将其隔开)。从句、短句型的语气状语意义上可相当短语型语气状语,而短语型语气状语意义上可相当一个语气副词:

He is my best friend, my second self, *so to speak / as it were / you may say so*. 他是我最好的朋友,可以说,与我心心相印、息息相关。

He came home very late last night, *to be more exact / or rather*, very early this morning. (*rather*, 语气副词) 他是昨晚很晚,更确切地说,今天凌晨才到家的。

You are new around here, *no doubt / I'm sure / I believe*. You are *doubtless* new around here. 你准是新来的,我敢说/我相信。

Old cars are cheaper to buy, but they tend to use more petrol. *Also / Besides / Moreover / Furthermore / In addition / And what is more*, there is a greater risk of accidents. 买旧汽车很便宜,但往往比较费油。而且更有甚者,出事故的危险性比较大。

frankly / frankly speaking / putting it frankly / put frankly (过去分

词短语)/to be frank/to speak frankly/to put it frankly/if I may speak frankly(如容我)坦白说

语气状语(包括短语、短句型)多修饰全句,是附加于句子所述客观情况的主观看法。所有句中其他成分都是所述客观的一部分,如其他状语(包括状语从句)修饰谓语、表语或一动词、形容词、副词或者全句,表示该运动、联系、属性等的特征或关系方面。比较:

{ He did not die *happily*/He died *unhappily*. 他死得很凄惨。

not... happily 或 unhappily 回答对客观情况所提问题 How did he die? 是方式状语

{ *Happily* he did not die. 幸而他没有死。Happily 是语气状语,不回答对所述客观提的任何问题,而是说明说话人的主观感情:“How did you feel when you said that he did not die? “I said *happily* that...”

{ *Personally*/In person, she is very charming, but will she be a good secretary? 她,人长得很惹人喜欢,但当秘书她能当得好吗? Personally 修饰前一分句,回答 In what aspect is she charming? 是方面状语

{ He said that he couldn't trust a girl so young to do a good job here. But, *personally*, I see no objection to giving the fresh graduate that post. 他说他不能相信一个这么年轻的姑娘能在这里做好工作。但就我个人看来,我不反对把这个职位交给这新毕业的的大学生。此句中的 personally 为语气状语,不回答对所述客观情况提的任何问题,而是说话人附加的主观说明:“On behalf of whom did you say...?”“*Speaking for myself* only/Only *personally*, I saw no objection...”

I *think/believe* he is trustworthy. 我想/相信他是可靠的。I

think/believe 分别为主句主语和谓语动词

He is trustworthy, *I think/believe*. 他是可靠的, 我想/相信。

I think/believe 为短句形式的语气状语, 相当可放句前、句中的 *probably*, (*most*) *likely*, *sure enough* 等, 表示说话人的主观肯定程度: “How sure were you when you said...?”

除前置时可为主句的 *I think* 等, 一般修饰全句的各型语气状语, 位置多较灵活, 可置于句前、句中或句末, 特别是语气副词。语气副词多原属方式副词(如 *happily*)、方面副词(如 *personally*)等常用副词, 或原属其他词类。属该词类时, 它们原不像转作语气副词修饰全句时这样位置常可变动。

Notwithstanding any other agreements, the law will go into force. (LDCE 认为该 *Notwithstanding* 为介词; 比较 *The law will go into force, any other agreements notwithstanding*. 逗号后原义是 *any other agreements not with standing*, 一个以 *standing* 为中心的分词独立结构) 不管有任何其他协议, 这项法律也将生效。

He was unknown to most people, *notwithstanding/although* he had lived there a long time. (LDCE; *notwithstanding* 用作主从连词, 非规范用法) 虽然他在那里住了很久, 但多数人都不知道他。

He tried to prevent the marriage, but it took place *notwithstanding/nevertheless*. (LDCE)

He tried to prevent the marriage, but, *notwithstanding/nevertheless*, it took place. (*notwithstanding* 转作语气副词, 表说法的转折) 他力图阻止这件婚事, 但是, 尽管如此, 这婚事还是办成了。

Though/Even though it's hard work, I enjoy it. (*Though* 为主从连词, 置从句前) 尽管这是一件很艰苦的工作, 可是我很

喜欢。

It's hard work. I enjoy it *though*. (though 转作语气副词, 表说法的转折) 这是一件很艰苦的工作。不过, 我很喜欢干。

He is poor. He is satisfied with his condition, *though*. (GCE)
他很穷。不过, 他对自己的境况还是知足的。

He's a bad president. There's no reason, *though*, to shoot him.
(语气副词 *though* 可置句中) 他不是一个好总统。不过, 没有理由打死他。

语气状语虽多修饰全句, 但也有些修饰句中个别成分、个别词语。有的语气状语兼用于修饰全句和修饰个别词语, 例如:

It was futile, *still* they fought. (相当 nevertheless, yet, 修饰后一分句) 已经无济于事了, 然而他们还在战斗。

This problem is *still/yet/even* more difficult. (修饰 more difficult) 这一问题更加难以解决。

I intended to read the book, *only* I felt too tired. (GCE; *only* 修饰后一分句, 原有 I would only say 之意; 从原修饰一词转而修饰句子) 我想看书, 只是觉得太累了。

John *only/also* phoned Mary today. (句中 *only/also* 修饰个别词语, 口语中可分别重读 John 或 phoned 或 Mary 或 today, 以指示 *only/also* 所修饰的成分)

但即使是口语也最好把 *only/also* 紧接于所修饰词语, 书面语中尤为必须:

<p><u>Only John</u> phoned Mary.</p>	<p><u>John, also</u>, phoned her.</p>
<p>John <u>only</u> phoned her.</p>	<p>John (wrote her,) <u>also phoned</u> her.</p>
<p>John phoned <u>only Mary/Mary only</u>.</p>	<p>John phoned <u>also Mary/Mary also</u>.</p>
<p>He phoned her <u>only today</u>.</p>	<p>He phoned her <u>also today</u>.</p>
<p>He phoned her <u>today only</u>.</p>	<p>He phoned her <u>today also</u>.</p>

动词本身的词形变化表示的语气(mood)只限“直陈”、“虚拟”、“祈使”三种。情态动词所表语气(modality)扩展到“可能”、“要求”、“必要”几个方面。而语气状语表示最广泛的各种语气意义:1)肯定(必然)、不肯定(可能)与否定

2)说话人对所述情况的认识,类同或转折、局限或超越。

3)说话人对自己谈话的态度,分析或归结、表达特征或感受特征:

	语气副词	形容词/副词/介词/不定式/分词/(介词 +)动名词短语	短句, as 语气状语从句
肯定 (必然)	yes, really, indeed, actually, surely, certainly, undoubtedly	sure enough, to be sure, as a matter of fact, in fact, of course	I'm sure/certain (中、后位), (there's) no doubt(前、中、后位)
不肯定 (可能)	perhaps, maybe, possibly, probably, supposedly	very/quite/most likely	I'm afraid (中、后位); I hope/suppose (中、后位)
否定	no, not, never, hardly	quite unlikely	
局限	only, just, merely, yet, still(仍), right	at (the) most, in my opinion	as far as... is concerned, (前、中、后位)

	语气副词	形容词/副词/介词/不定式/分词/(介词 +)动名词短语	短句, as 语气状语从句
超越	even, still (更), yet (更), too (太), already, besides, moreover, furthermore	in addition, better/worse still, even worse, not to say..., without mentioning..., at least(表示“不局限”)	what's more(前位), what's worse still (前位)
类同	also, too (也), again, similarly, likewise	as well, all the same	
转折	only (但), yet(但), however, notwithstanding, though(中、后位)	after all, on the other hand, on the contrary, by (way of) contrast, none the less	
分析	first (ly), next, then, lastly, particularly	first of all, to begin with, for one thing, for example/instance, to quote only one example/reason, in particular	shall I/shall we/let's say(前位), that's to say (前位)
归结	finally, thus, consequently	all in all, in short/brief/a word, to sum up/conclude, everything considered (分词独立结构)	

	语气副词	形容词/副词/介词/不定式/分词/(介词 +)动名词短语	短句, as 语气状语从句
表达特征	frankly, honestly, strictly, seriously, broadly, simply, generally, personally, confidentially	to tell the truth, by the way, to be precise/more exact, in other words, so to speak, above all/to top it all	I think/believe (中、后位), I'd say(中、后位), as it were(中、后位), I say(前位)
感受(包括评论)特征	clearly, evidently, interestingly, strangely, (un)fortunately, (un)wisely, rightly, sensibly, foolishly, (un)reasonably, regrettably	oddly enough, not surprisingly, more amusingly than wisely, luckily for..., annoyingly for..., quite ironically	you see/know (前、中、后位), what's more remarkable (前位),

短句形式的语气状语也是有些修饰全句,有些修饰个别词语,有些兼用于修饰全句或个别词语:

He'll come, *I'm sure*. She has arrived, *I'm certain*. 他会来的,我可以肯定。她已经到了,我确实知道。

He meant to help, (*there's*) *no doubt*, but in fact he has been a hindrance. (修饰前一分句)无疑他本想帮忙,实际却碍事了。

It's a useful book and, *what's more*, not an expensive one. (修饰其后短语)这本书很有用,而且不贵。

He went to the meeting and, *what was worse still*, (he) insisted on speaking. (修饰后一分句)他去参加了会议,更糟糕的是,他还坚持发言。

You may learn to play the violin in, *shall I/let's say*, 3 years. 你可以学拉小提琴,比如说,用三年的时间。

He's working as hard as before, *that's to say*, not very hard. (LDCE)(修饰其后短语)他的努力程度像以前那样,就是说,不十分努力。

I've no reason to doubt it, *that's to say*, I believe his account of the story. (修饰后一分句)我没有理由怀疑,也就是说,我相信他所讲的事情经过。

Why, no, they're very good eyes, *I'd say*. (RHD)哪儿的话,不对呀,依我说,他的眼力很好(看得很透彻)。

"My husband is ill today." — "I say! I'm sorry to hear that" (LDCE) "我的丈夫今天病了。" "哎呀!听你这么说,我很难过。"

I say, I've got a wonderful idea. 我说呀,我想起一个非常好的主意。

You know, it's rather late. We must leave now. 你可知道,够晚的了。现在我们必须走了。(或者说 *It's rather late, you know.*) 但在 *You know it's rather late.* 中,前置而后无停顿(书面逗号)的 *You know* 为主从复合句中的主句。

语气从句、短句型语气状语和句子中间都有停顿,书面上有逗号(短语型语气状语也多如此),表示其修饰关系比较松散。特别是位于句后、被停顿(逗号)隔开的语气状语,对句子的修饰关系最为松散,如将该语气状语去掉,并不影响句子的基本含义。

而语气副词则既可作修饰关系松散的非限制性语气状语,又可作关系紧密、必不可少的限制性语气状语(说话人附加于所述客观的限制性说明)。限制性语气状语和所修饰句子或所修饰个别词语中间没有停顿(书面上没有逗号),如将该语气状语去掉,就会影响句子的基本含义。特别是修饰句中个别词语的语气副词多属限制性语气状语。

修饰全句(多属非限制性)	修饰个别词语(多属限制性)
<p><u>Really</u>, I don't like her. 真的,我不喜欢她。</p>	<p>I <u>really</u> don't like her. (修饰谓语较修饰全句关系紧密)我真不喜欢她。</p>
<p>I don't like her, <u>really</u>. 我不喜欢她,真的。</p>	<p>I don't <u>really</u> like her. 我不是真的喜欢她。</p>
<p>I will do it, unless, <u>perhaps</u>, you want to do it yourself. 这事我想做,除非(也许会那样)你想亲自来做。</p>	<p>His absence, occasioned <u>perhaps/possibly</u> by illness, has caused great uneasiness. 他没有到场,这也许是因为有病了,却使大家非常担心。</p>
<p>What he says is true, <u>perhaps</u>. 他说的是真情,也许吧!</p>	<p>He is <u>no</u> fool. 他才不傻呢。(很精明)(不同于 He is not a fool. 他不是傻子。)</p>
<p>No, he's a fool, <u>on the contrary</u>. 不,相反,他是个傻瓜。</p>	<p>I never thought of it, <u>still</u> less did I do it. 这事我连想也没想过,更不可能干出此事。</p>
<p>It's a very unpleasant affair, <u>still</u>, we can't change it. 这是一件很不愉快的事,但我们还是无可奈何。</p>	

左边最后一句,可加长中间前一停顿,成为:It's a very unpleasant affair. *Still*, we can't change it. 或可取消中间后一停顿,成为:It's a very unpleasant affair, *still* we can't change it. 这里,可以看出 still (及 yet 等)可有连接作用,可把两个句子连成一句。但该 still(及 yet 等)仍是语气副词,不要误认为连词,也不要误认它引导的后一分句是什么从句。

既可紧连于语、句,又可被口语的停顿(书面逗号)隔开,这也是语气副词的一个特点。表示“局限、超越、类同、转折”关系的语气副词,因有连接语、句之功能,有人误把它们和连词混为一谈。实际它们性质上不同于连词:

1)连词紧连所引导并列分句或从句,不能用停顿(逗号)分开,除非中间加了“插入语”;

2)连词固定位于分句或从句前,而语气副词位置多较灵活;

3)在引导一个并列复合句中的一分句或一个主从复合句中的一从句时,一般只用一个连词,不可连用两个连词,如不可说 though... but..., 美国英语不可说 and nor(可说 and neither, 英国英语二者通用) 除非既有主从、又有并列关系时(如 if/because... and if/because... 后二连词表示“而且如果...”或“而且因为...”);而语气副词则可以和连词连用,如可以说 though... yet/still..., and/but 还可紧接 yet/still/besides/nevertheless 等语气副词,还偶见 and also 或 but only 相连:

Why should he bear the blame who was absent that day? (*And*)

Also, why should he pay for the damage? (*And* 多略去) 他那天不在,怎么出的事该由他负责呢? 而且为什么该让他赔偿损失呢?

I intended to go, (*but*) *only* I didn't feel well. (*but* 多略去) 我本想去,只是我觉得不舒服。

Though he is poor, *yet* he is (*nevertheless*) satisfied with his

situation. 他虽穷困,却还是安于他的处境。

Though rebuffed, still he tries/he *still* tries. 虽然遭到拒绝,他还要设法办理。(后为主句)

He is very rich, *but still* he is not contented. 他虽然很有钱,但还是不能满足。

She is a funny girl, (*and/but*) yet you can't help liking her.

(LDCE) 她是个很好笑的姑娘,而你却不由得喜欢她。

数例表明, also, only, still, yet 等语气副词用于句前起连接作用时,所引导的可能是独立句、并列复合句后一分句或主从复合句的主句,而都不是从句。

Exercise 14

I. 把下列句子翻译成中文,注意划线部分语气状语的译法:

1. A white streak was rising from the ground, as it were, and beginning to scatter the darkness.
2. He tried to prevent the marriage, but it took place notwithstanding.
3. He is thirty, if he is a day.
4. As it chanced, he came back home earlier than usual.
5. Putting it frankly, I had never thought about it.
6. To sum up, the campaign has been a great success.
7. As luck would have it, after so many years of separation, the couple met each other unexpectedly.

II. 选择最合适的选项填空:

1. _____ it or not, his discovery has created a stir in scientific circle.

- A. Believe B. To believe
C. Believing D. Believed
2. Your hair wants _____. You'd better have it done tomorrow.
A. cut B. to cut
C. cutting D. being cut
3. People appreciate _____ with him because he has a good sense of humor.
A. to work B. to have worked
C. working D. having worked
4. Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested _____ at the next town.
A. stop B. to stop
C. stopping D. having stopped
5. I'll never forget _____ you for the first time.
A. to meet B. meeting
C. to have met D. having to be meeting
6. _____ enough time and money, the researchers would have been able to discover more.
A. Giving B. To give
C. Given D. Being given

II. 判断下列句子正确与否，并且改正错误的句子：

1. To solve the problem, elaborate plans must be made.
2. In order to solve the problem, elaborate plans must be made.
3. Judging from his expression, he has succeeded in the project.
4. Allowing for his age, he is still rather childish to show such curiosity.

5. Flying through the air at the speed of sound, a sudden thought struck me.
6. To tell the truth, he is the last person to do such a thing.
7. See from the top of the mountain, the lake in the distance was like a giant mirror.

例句出处略语表 (主要参考书目)

ALD: *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*, Oxford University Press, 1980/1989/1995

Alexander, L.G., *Longman English Grammar*, Longman Group Limited, New York, 1988

Boliner, D., *The Phrasal Verb in English*, Harvard University Press, Massachusetts, 1971

Brewer, *Brewer's Dictionary of Phrase and Fable* (Revised Edition), Cassell Ltd., London, 1981

Carver, D.J., *Collins English Learner's Dictionary*, Collins, London, 1974

CDE: *The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English*, John Benjamins Publishing Company, Philadelphia, 1986

CGE: **G. Leech et al**, *A Communicative Grammar of English*, Longman, London, 1975

CGEL: **R. Quirk et al**, *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, Longman, London, 1985

Chambers: *Chambers Universal Learner's Dictionary*, W & R Chambers Ltd., Edinburgh, 1980

Close, R.A., *A Reference Grammar for Students of English*, Longman, London, 1975

COD: *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of Current English*,

Oxford University Press, 1976/1982

Collins: *Collins Cobuild English Language Dictionary*, Collins Birmingham University International Language Database, Klett, 1987

DAI: **M. T. Boatner**, *A Dictionary of American Idioms*, Barron's Educational Series Inc., New York, 1975

DCIE: *Oxford Dictionary of Current Idiomatic English*, Oxford University Press, 1975/1983

DPWE: **H. Shaw**, *Dictionary of Problem Words and Expressions*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1975.

Eckersley, C. E. et al, *A Comprehensive English Grammar*, Longman, London, 1961

EGS: **L. G. Alexander et al**, *English Grammatical Structure*, Longman, London, 1977

Evans, B., *A Dictionary of American Usage*, Random House, New York, 1975

Fowler, W. H., *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage*, Oxford University Press, 1965

FWF: *Editors of the Reader's Digest, Family Word Finder*, The Reader's Digest Association Ltd., New York, 1978

GCE: **R. Quick et al**, *A Grammar of Contemporary English*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1973

GSL: **M. West**, *A General Service List of English Words*, Longman, London, 1977

Halsey, W. D., *Macmillan Contemporary Dictionary*, Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc., London, 1979

Hayakawa, S. I., *Cassell's Modern Guide to Synonyms and Related Words*, Cassell Ltd., London, 1979

Hill, L. A., *Prepositions and Adverbial Particles*, Oxford

University Press, 1968

Hornby, A.S., *Guide to Patterns and Usage in English*, Oxford University Press, 1975

IEU: T. Todd & I. Hancock, *International English Usage*, Croom Helm Ltd., Kent, 1986

Jespersen, O., *A Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles*, Munksgaard, Copenhagen, 1909 – 1949

LDCE: Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, Longman Group Limited, London, 1978/1995

LDEI: Longman Dictionary of English Idioms, Longman Group Limited, 1979

LDPV: Longman Dictionary of Phrasal verbs, Longman Group Limited, 1983

Leech, G., *Meaning and the English Verb*, Longman, London, 1971

LLAV: Longman Language Activator, the World's First Production Dictionary, 1993; 1997年上海外语教育出版社版英文本书名汉译《朗文英语联想活用词典》(世界上第一部联想生成表达词典)

LLCE: Longman Lexicon of Contemporary English, Longman Group Limited, 1981

NDEC: Kenkyusha's New Dictionary of English Collocations, Kenkyusha Ltd., Tokyo, 1958

NODE: The New Oxford Dictionary Of English, Oxford University Press, 1998/2001

ODEP: The Oxford Dictionary of English Proverbs, Oxford University Press, 1982

ODPD: The Oxford-Duden Pictorial English-Japanese

Dictionary, Oxford University Press, 1983

OED: *The Oxford English Dictionary (& Supplements)*, Oxford University Press, 1928 – 1976

Onions, C. T., *The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology*, Oxford University Press, 1982

Palmer, F. R., *The English Verb*, Longman, London, 1974

Palmer, H. E., *A grammar of English Words*, Longman, London, 1964

Partridge, E., *Usage and Abusage: A Guide to Good English*, Penguin, Harmondsworth, 1973

POD: *The Pocket Oxford Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 1969

RHD: *The Random House Dictionary of the English Language*, Oxford University Press, 1973/1987

RWRT: **J. E. Kahn et al**, *The Right Word at the Right Time*, The Reader's Digest Association Limited, London, 1985

Schibsbye, K., *A Modern English Grammar*, Oxford University Press, 1979

Seidl, J. et al, *English Idioms*, Oxford University Press, 1988

SOD: *The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 1973

Swan, M., *Practical English Usage*, Oxford University Press, 1980

Thomson, A. J. et al, *A Practical English Grammar*, Oxford University Press, 1987

Tracey, R. D., *Correcting Common Errors in English*, Times Educational Co. Ltd., London, 1980

UCEG: **A. Downing et al**, *A University Course of English*

Grammar, Prentice Hall International Ltd, London, 1992

UGE: R. Quirk et al, *A University Grammar of English*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1974

URW: Editors of the Reader's Digest, *Use the Right Word*, Funk & Wagnalls, New York, 1971

Watson, O., *Longman Modern English Dictionary*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1976

WBD: The World Book Dictionary, Doubleday & Company, Inc., Chicago, 1981

WDS: Webster's Dictionary of Synonyms, Merriam - Webster Inc., Springfield U.S.A., 1951

Web. 3: Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc., Springfield, 1981

WNDS: Webster's New Dictionary of Synonyms, Merriam - Webster Inc., Springfield, 1978

WNNCD: Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary, Merriam - Webster Inc., Publishers, Springfield, 1983

WTNCD: Webster's tenth New Collegiate Dictionary, Merriam - Webster Inc., Publishers, Springfield, 1995

WNWD: Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language, Simon and Schuster, Inc., New York, 1972/1994

Wood, F. T., *Prepositional Idioms*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1979; *Current English Usage*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1981; *English Verbal Idioms*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1964

Wyld, H. C., *The Universal Dictionary of the English Language*, Routledge & Kegan Paul Limited, London, 1960

Young, D., *The Structure of English Clauses*, Hutchinson,

London, 1980

Zandvoort, R. W., *A Handbook, of English Grammar*,
Longman, London, 1948

汉英:北京外国语大学《汉英词典》,外研社,北京,1995;吴景荣、
程镇球《新时代汉英大词典》,商务印书馆,北京,2001

井上:日本 井上义昌等《英米语用法辞典》,开拓社,东京,1960

小西:日本 小西友七等《英语前置词活用辞典》,大修馆书店,
东京,1974;《英语基本动词辞典》,Kenkyusha,
Tokyo, 1980

岩波:日本 中岛文雄等《岩波英和大辞典》,岩波书店,东京,
1971

* 出自知名作家、社会活动家的例句,后只注明其姓氏,如:
Christie, Churchill, Dickens, Dreiser, Lincoln, London, Shaw, Sinclair,
Wells, Whitman 等。

练习题参考答案

Exercise 1

I.

- | | |
|----------------|----------|
| 1. 副词(作定语置名词后) | 5. 介词 |
| 2. 副词 | 6. 介词 |
| 3. 介词 | 7. 动词 |
| 4. 副词 | 8. 名词,名词 |

II.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. aren't I? | 5. won't there? |
| 2. doesn't she? | 6. aren't they? |
| 3. won't he? | 7. do you? |
| 4. isn't she? | 8. can you? |

III.

1. How difficult this task is!
2. What a long active day we had!
3. What good progress in his studies he has made!
4. How healthy he looks after his vacation!
5. What a skilled worker she is!
6. How absent-minded you are!
7. What a clear, cold winter day it was!

IV.

- (1) 情态联系动词句谓语
- (2) 简单及物句谓语
- (3) 简单及物句谓语
- (4) 简单及物句谓语
- (5) 简单及物句谓语
- (6) 联系动词句谓语
- (7) 简单及物句谓语
- (8) 双重及物句谓语
- (9) 不及物句谓语
- (10) 简单及物句谓语
- (11) 不及物句谓语

- (12) 不及物句谓语
- (13) 简单及物句谓语
- (14) 联系动词句谓语
- (15) 简单及物句谓语 (宾语为 that)
- (16) 不及物句谓语
- (17) 简单及物句谓语
- (18) 不及物句谓语
- (19) 简单及物句谓语 (宾语为 that)
- (20) 不及物句谓语

Exercise 2

I.

1. 间接宾语, 直接宾语
2. 介词宾语
3. 宾语, 宾语补语
4. 直接宾语
5. 介词宾语, 直接宾语, 介词宾语
6. 宾语, 宾语补语
7. 介词宾语, 直接宾语
8. 宾语, 宾语补语

II.

1. The boy never gave a moment's anxiety **to his parents**.
2. He bought many nice toys **for his little girl**.

3. Send your photograph **to me**, please.
4. We showed the way to the village school **to the stranger**.
5. The cashier paid my wages **to me** yesterday.
6. I handed the wood-cutter's axe **to him**.
7. She poured out a full cup and presented it with both hands **to him**.
8. He never made such excuses **to me**.

III.

1. Call me anything you like. (复合宾语)
2. I can't get my hands warm. (复合宾语)
3. Can't you give them something to keep them quiet? (复合宾语)
4. The hot wheather turned all the milk sour. (复合宾语)
5. His in-laws had simply made him their servant. (复合宾语)
6. She was accepted as one of the world's greatest living sculptors. (复合主语)
7. They considered what he said very important. (复合宾语)
8. I took it for granted that you couldn't do it. (我认为你干不了这个理所当然的。)(复合宾语)
9. What was once regarded as impossible has become a reality. (曾被认为不可能的事情已成了现实。)(复合主语)

IV.

1. 状语
2. consider 接用名词型复合宾语 this the kind of demanding job
3. wanted 及物动词谓语
4. sat 不及物动词谓语
5. that 引导的定语从句的谓语
6. spelling 是介词宾语

7. was written 是 what 引导的关系从句的被动谓语
8. foe Annie to teach 是主语; teach 接用不定式型复合宾语 me to speak
9. to speak 是宾语补语
10. Putting 引出现在分词短语作时间状语
11. let 复合及物动词谓语接用不定式型复合宾语 me feel
12. feel 宾语补语
13. ill-formed 表语
14. to hear 方面状语
15. delighted 构成被动谓语
16. to say 方面状语
17. owe 及物动词谓语
18. to serve 方面状语

Exercise 3

I.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. is/was put; bread and butter 涂黄油的面包 2. is/was hurt 3. is/was withered 4. Has 5. is/are(非正式) 6. do 7. am going 8. are 9. are 10. are coming | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 11. is/are 12. is 13. are 14. is 15. is/was 16. are/were gathered 17. is 18. have 19. wait (全句直译:时光与潮水不等人) 20. has |
|--|---|

21. is | 22. is

II.

1. I wanted to.
2. I'd very much like to.
3. We hope to be.
4. but you can't force him to, if he's not ready (to).
5. but I used to a lot.
6. he hasn't got the courage (to).
7. I'd like to very much.
8. No. I tried to, but ...

III.

1. is 和主语 now 保持一致。
2. is 和主语 an invigorating autumn of freedom and equality 保持一致。
3. is 和年代名主语 Nineteen sixty-three 保持一致。
4. hope 和关系代词 who 保持一致，其先行词 those 为复数。
5. returns 和主语 nation 保持一致。
6. is granted 和主语 the Negro 保持一致。
7. emerges 和主语 day 保持一致。
8. is 和主语 something 保持一致。
9. stand 和关系代词 who 保持一致，其先行词 people 为复数。
10. leads 和关系代词 which 保持一致，其先行词 threshold 为单数。
11. has engulfed 和关系代词 which 保持一致，其先行词 militancy 为单数。
12. have come 和主语 brothers 保持一致。
13. is tied up 和主语 destiny 保持一致。

14. is...bound 和主语 freedom 保持一致。

Exercise 4

I.

1. 语气副词。那简直是等于没有。
2. 否定代词。(no = not any) 任何香烟都是有害的。
3. 否定代词。她的亲戚当中没有人感兴趣。
4. 否定代词。“你想要哪一个?” —— “哪个都不好。”
5. 否定副词。我们几乎没有时间吃早饭。
6. 否定副词。那个暴君,如果说有朋友的话,那也是很少的,但是有一些人为了升官却不断地奉承他。

II.

1. All is not gold that glitters.
2. All the answers are not right.
3. Both of the substances do not dissolve in water.
4. Every student here is not from our college.
5. Everything is not bought with gold.

III.

1. still, 啊,糟糕,还在下雨。(肯定句)
2. yet, 邮递员已经来了没有?(肯定的疑问句)
3. yet, 你已经见到霍金斯教授了吗?(肯定的疑问句,只是想知道该信息)
4. already, 我认为,你已经见到霍金斯教授了吧?(肯定的疑问句,希望回答是“Yes”)
5. still, 你还在这儿?我认为你老早就走了。(非肯定句)
6. yet, 我已经开始学习希腊语,但学得还不多。(非肯定句)
7. already, 我的外衣已经干了?真快!(肯定的疑问句,表示惊异)

IV.

1. not 的否定中心在其后的 seek。
2. not 的否定中心在其后的 lead。
3. not 的否定中心在其前的 can。
4. never 的否定中心在其前的 can。
5. not 的否定中心在其前的 can。
6. not 的否定中心在其前的 can。
7. not 的否定中心在其后的 satisfied(前带助动词 are)。
8. not 的否定中心在其后的 be satisfied。

Exercise 5

I.

1. Not until...did 直到 19 世纪初人们才知道什么是热。
2. didn't...until 直到火车离开了我才到达车站。
3. had not ... until 直到她对这个问题作了解释,他才弄明白。
4. Not until ... does 袋鼠宝宝直到 4 个月大才离开妈妈的育儿袋生活。
5. It was not until...that 直到 1790 年,在第三次比赛中,他终于击败了哈姆菲雷斯而成为英国的冠军。
6. It was not until...that 直到读了你的信,我才明白事情的真实情况。

II.

语气状语是表示说话人语气的一种特殊状语,表示说话人对客观情况的主观认识和看法。

副词语气状语举例:generally, yes, no, indeed, just, only, well,

never, even, hardly, ...

短语语气状语举例: to tell the truth, more over, what's more, most probably, by the way, I think, frankly speaking, that's to say, in fact, strange to say...

III.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. 时间状语 | 9. 语气状语, 位于助动词后 |
| 2. 处所状语 | 10. 处所状语 |
| 3. 比较状语 | 11. 语气状语, 位于助动词后 |
| 4. 处所状语 | 12. 语气状语, 位于句首 |
| 5. 比较状语 | 13. 目的状语 |
| 6. 目的状语 | 14. 时间状语从句 |
| 7. 语气状语, 位于联系动词后 | 15. 语气状语, 插入句中 |
| 8. 时间状语 | 16. 方面状语 |

IV.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 前位副词状语, 修饰形容词 | 10. 前位副词状语, 修饰 could believe |
| 2. 后位短语定语(修饰 war) | 11. 动宾后位时间从句状语 |
| 3. 动宾后位短语状语 | 12. 前位语气副词状语, 修饰形容词 |
| 4. 动词后位短语状语(表方式) | 13. 系表后位时间从句状语 |
| 5. 动词后位短语状语 | 14. 语气副词状语, 修饰 the fact |
| 6. 前位短语状语, 修饰整句 | 15. 动词前位副词状语 |
| 7. 动宾后位短语状语 | 16. 动词后位短语状语 |
| 8. 动词前位副词状语 | 17. 动词前位副词状语 |
| 9. 动宾后位短语状语 | |

Exercise 6

I.

1. Never have I heard such beautiful music.
2. Down fell the stone with a crash.
3. Out rolled the heavy trucks.
4. Off she went without waiting for my answer.
5. A bell rang, and up went the elevator to the fourteenth floor.
6. Scarcely did he had time to finish his dinner.
7. Little did he know about the conditions of life in that remote region.

II.

1. 强调 only 引出的时间状语。
2. 强调地点状语。
3. 强调表语形容词。
4. 强调方向状语, 并起承接作用。
5. 强调副词状语。
6. 一是分别强调两个分句中的地点状语; 二是使两个介词短语 (即地点状语) 在句中的结构平衡。
7. 强调构成情态复合谓语的实意动词。
8. 强调过去分词表语, 也是由于带定语从句的主语 days 太长。

III.

1. Midway in the valley stood a small inn, quite alone, by the side of the grey road, set between grey walls of stone.
2. It doesn't matter much whether we go together or separate.

3. Here took place the most serious historical earthquake in the country, which killed about 300,000 people.
4. They consider impossible what is really possible. (宾语从句放在宾补之后)
5. They saw repairing the machine the two workers who had designed it. (把带有一个定语从句的直接宾语移至宾补 repairing the machine 之后)
6. The problem arises whether the temperature is high enough. (同位语从句置于句末)
7. The workers discussed with great interest the plan for increasing production. (若把 with 短语放在句末,它有可能被误认为是用来说明动名词 increasing 的)

Exercise 7

I.

1. because (他认真是成功的原因)
2. for (鸟在叫不是天亮的原因)
3. because (天气热是他把床弄到屋顶上去睡觉的原因)
4. for (屋里的灯亮不是他在的原因)

II.

1. so that (表目的)
2. so (表相随发生的另一情况)
3. so (他答应了,于是他们走了。表相随发生的另一情况)
4. so that (表目的)

III.

1. 过去分词复合结构 = After the school was finished,
2. 现在分词独立结构, = When the lab building is well on its way to completion,
3. 过去分词独立结构, = After the problem was settled, ...
4. 不定式独立结构, = ... and the second one will come out next month.
5. 现在分词独立结构 = Because the flood had destroyed his hut, ...
6. 过去分词复合结构 = Because this large field has been leveled, ...
 现在分词复合结构 = ... and because a new irrigation channel can control the volume of water, ...
7. 现在分词复合结构 = No one noticed me, and I slipped ... 或 As no one was noticing ...
8. 过去分词复合结构 = ... and his eyes were fixed on the opposite wall.

IV.

1. Having traveled half the way/Already midway down the road, they decided to turn back.
2. Having so much time, we are/were not in a hurry.
3. With too much snow on the road, I stopped moving ahead
4. I'll write down your address to remember it.
5. I bought this book for you to read in your train.
6. I'm too tired to push on with my journey.
7. Everything being ready, we set out.

8. Class being over, we can go out for a walk.

Exercise 8

I.

1. 习惯用法: would rather 的宾语从句不用 that 引导必须略去
2. 名词从句为复合句的开头, 不能省略 that
3. 复合句中间可省略
4. 非限定性的同位语从句, 不可省略
5. feeling, idea, impression, notion 等意念名词及 fact 一词的同位语从句可略去 that
6. 略去主句的从句开头, that 不可省略
7. 少数惯用“动词 (+ 介词) + it”后, it 的同位语从句可略 that

II.

1. I am sure that he is innocent.
2. Everyone is aware that they were in conflict.
3. Take care that you are doing nothing wrong.
4. I wonder that you should have allowed him to do such a thing.
5. You can be certain that you will succeed.
6. Turigis was confident that he had ability to get work for himself.

III.

- | | | |
|------|--|------|
| 1. D | | 3. B |
| 2. D | | 4. B |

IV.

1. No matter what happens, don't come out.

No matter what may happen, don't come out.

Whatever happens, don't come out.

Whatever may happen, don't come out.

2. When did you grow a beard?

Since when have you grown a beard?

3. Which boy is the strongest (of them all)?

4. What kind of books do you like best?

5. We stopped at a village where there are many temples.

6. (At) What time do you usually get up?

7. What do you think of this?

V.

1. How a book will sell

2. how much money it will cost

3. how long the work would take

4. when and where you meet

5. how worried I was

6. why the meeting has to be put off

Exercise 9

I.

1. which

2. which

3. which

4. as

5. as/that

6. which

7. as

8. that

9. that/which

10. as

II .

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. A | 4. D |
| 2. C | 5. D |
| 3. D | |

III .

1. Such employees as Mary meets from day to day
2. Such employees as meet Mary from day to day
3. as would undertake to make me another portrait
4. the same man as he was before
5. as pretty a girl as he can find
6. as could be judged from her eyes

Exercise 10

I .

1. It was my mother that/who threw an egg at the Minister of Education yesterday.
2. It was an egg that my mother threw at the Minister of Education yesterday.
3. It was the Minister of Education that my mother threw an egg at yesterday.
4. It was yesterday that my mother threw an egg at the Minister of Education

II .

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. B | 3. C |
| 2. D | 4. D |

III.

1. 我第一次见到詹姆斯的时候,是在一个十二月的漆黑的夜晚。
2. 不是因为我们不相信你,而是我们觉得你的经验不足,因此我们不委派你这一艰巨的任务。
3. 我们怀疑的不是你的忠心,而是你的经验。
4. 怎么回事,你竟然没有马上给我们发警报?
5. 他是把它交给罗伯特了吗?
6. 泰勒冲到门口是在什么时候?

Exercise 11

I.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. before ; after | 6. after |
| 2. since | 7. before/after |
| 3. since | 8. after |
| 4. Before | 9. since |
| 5. Since | |

II.

- | | |
|---------|--------------|
| 1. When | 5. when |
| 2. As | 6. while |
| 3. When | 7. while, as |
| 4. as | 8. as |

III.

1. Martin was as impatient as he was stubborn.
2. The teacher speaks more quickly than the students can take

notes.

3. Jane would do it much more quickly than I (would).
4. Granting/Granted that he said so, he may not keep his promise.
5. You've been working harder than we (have).
6. Mary is cleverer than Jane is pretty.
7. Aware as they were of your heavy tasks, they were anxious that you should return early.
8. One advances in modesty as one advances in knowledge.
9. Michael, fool as/that he was, completely ruined the dinner.
10. The more I know of the world, the more I am convinced of it.

IV.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. D | 4. C |
| 2. A | 5. B |
| 3. A | |

V.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. that 引导同位语从句 | 8. what 引导名词性关系从句 |
| 2. whether 引导宾语从句 | 9. but 引导表示转折的并列句 |
| 3. who 引导定语从句 | 10. what 引导名词性关系从句 |
| 4. that 引导目的状语从句 | 11. that 引导定语从句 |
| 5. that 引导由 it 代替的主语从句 | 12. 逗号后 that 引导目的状语从句 |
| 6. But 引导表示转折的并列句 | 13. which 引导定语从句 |
| 7. who 引导非限定性定语从句 | |

- 14. 引导目的状语从句, 与上逗号后 that... 并列
- 15. that 引导目的状语从句
- 16. 引导目的状语从句与上

- 分号后 that 并列
- 17. 引导目的状语从句与上分号后 that 并列

Exercise 12

I.

- 1. 引导宾语补语
- 2. 构成介词短语作职能状语
- 3. 引导主语补语
- 4. 引导主语补语

- 5. 构成介词短语作依照状语(或方式状语)
- 6. 构成介词短语作方式状语
- 7. 构成介词短语作定语

II.

- 1. D
- 2. D

- 3. C
- 4. A

III.

- 1. I took it that he would come.
- 2. I will answer for it that he is able enough to do that.
- 3. You may depend on it that everything will go better/come right.
- 4. It's no business of yours where I am from.
- 5. It is no boasting to say that.

Exercise 13

I.

1. So absurd was his manner that everyone stared at him. (so)
2. Not a finger did I lay on him. (not)
3. Often had I intended to speak to him. (often)
4. Throwing the hammer is champion William Anderson, who, when he's not winning trophies, is a hard-working sheperd in the Highlands of Scotland. (沉稳倒装)
5. Only by this means is it possible to explain his failure to act decisively. (only)
6. Hardly had I left before the quarrelling started. (hardly)

II.

1. We got acquainted while (we were) on a visit to the Crimea.
2. He visited the places where he had played when (he had been) a child.
3. She hurriedly left the room as if (she was/were) angry.
4. Send the goods now, if (they are) ready.
5. He will come later, if (he comes) at all.
6. He is extremely well read though (he is) very young.
7. I show everything on my face whether (I am) angry or pleased.

III.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. A | 4. C |
| 2. A | 5. B |
| 3. C | |

Exercise 14

I.

1. 似乎像是一条白色的光带从地面上的升起,开始驱散黑暗。
2. 他力图阻止这件婚事,但尽管如此,这婚事还是办成了。
3. 可以肯定,他有三十了。
4. 真是凑巧,那天他比平时回来得早。
5. 坦率地说,我从来没有考虑过这个问题。
6. 总的来看,这场运动的成绩很大。
7. 好像命运捉弄,分离那么多年之后,这对夫妻不期而遇。

II.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. A | 4. C |
| 2. C | 5. B |
| 3. C | 6. C |

III.

1. 错误,要改为: To solve the problems, we must make elaborate plans.
2. 正确
3. 正确
4. 正确
5. 正确
6. 正确
7. 错误,要改为: Seen from the top of the mountain, the lake in the distance was like a giant mirror.

[General Information]

书名=通用英语句法教程

作者=单亦祯主编

页数=444

SS号=11836114

出版日期=2004. 12

前言

目录

第一编 简单句与句中成分面面观

第一章 动句、静句等句子的多种分类法

- 1.1 词性一般只能在句中辨别
- 1.2 句子的中心是谓语
- 1.3 句子按谓语“动 / 静”性质所分4大类、14种句型
- 1.4 常讲的5种或7种句型
- 1.5 句子按用途与结构分类，并借语调相区别
- 1.6 附加问句的类别和语调

Exercise 1

第二章 简繁迥异的句子成分

- 2.1 单一成分、各属单一性质的双重宾语
- 2.2 主动、被动句中相应的复合宾语 / 复合主语
- 2.3 感受 / 意志 / 态度 / 祈使等类动词所接复合宾语的比较
- 2.4 各类词语、复合结构担任句中成分总表

Exercise 2

第三章 主、谓的深层一致关系

- 3.1 名词主语“形复实单”或“似单实复”
- 3.2 同一集合名词做主语，指单指复颇有讲究
- 3.3 谓语同主语的“实意一致”和“近邻一致”
- 3.4 主语句、祈使句及惯用不完整句
- 3.5 情景省略句
- 3.6 作补足成分的不定式被省略时，to留作代表

Exercise 3

第四章 否定的多方关联与肯定、非肯定句的对应词语

- 4.1 表否定的代词、副词、连词的用法
- 4.2 关系微妙的否定中心、否定转移、否定范围和部分否定

- 4.3 情态复合谓语的否定中心在not前或后
- 4.4 非肯定句中用非肯定词语，除非有肯定意向
- 4.5 多用于非肯定句的long, far, many, much可用于哪几种肯定句？

Exercise 4

第五章 语序之一——前位、后位、外位状语

- 5.1 正装语序中位置灵活多样的各种状语
- 5.2 动词 / 表语前位副词状语
- 5.3 动词 / 表语前位语气副词状语
- 5.4 动词 / 表语前位词组、短语状语
- 5.5 动宾 / 系表后位副词状语
- 5.6 动宾 / 系表后位词组、短语状语
- 5.7 “外位”原因 / 目的 / 结果等类状语和时间状语
- 5.8 为均衡、沉稳而改变通常语序
- 5.9 倒装主从复合句句首的Not until中的Not属于后边主句的谓语
- 5.10 语气状语的多种语气意义
- 5.11 否定语气状语
- 5.12 各种语气状语修饰个别词语，或修饰谓语或全句
- 5.13 各种语气状语置于动表前位或宾语、状语之前

Exercise 5

第六章 语序之二——为沉稳、强调、或承前而倒装

- 6.1 不要虎头蛇尾，移较长结构压在句末
- 6.2 打破正常顺序，把强调成分突出在句首
- 6.3 为与前述的内容相接，用关联词语牵引全句

Exercise 6

第二编 复合句的连接；连接代（副）词、关系代（副）词；连词

第七章 关系错综的复合结构、分句及从句

- 7.1—7.2 并列分句与从句的不同用法

- 7.1 for 是并列连词; because 是主从连词
- 7.2 so 可为并列连词; so that 仅为主从连词
- 7.3—7.5 逻辑上与语法上的主谓关系
- 7.3 for 等引导的不定式复合结构与从句
- 7.4 with 引导的分词复合结构与从句
- 7.5 独立结构与从句
- 7.6—7.8 不定式、分词短语等与相当的从句
- 7.6 不定式、分词短语与从句并非总能互换
- 7.7 分词、形容词定语不仅后位者相当定语从句
- 7.8 形容词及其短语作状语并非皆为省略的从句

Exercise 7

第八章 名词从句用法的关键在于关联词性质——从句用法关键之一

- 8.1—8.3 按“主 / 表 / 宾从句”或关联词性质分类
- 8.1 名词能担任的成分, 名词从句都能担任
- 8.2 作定语、状语的名词的性质与相应的定语从句、状语从句
- 8.3 引导从句的 what, where 等可保留或失去疑问意义
- 8.4—8.6 Wh- 间接问句与问题从句
- 8.4 大多数 Wh- 形式能够引导特殊问题从句
- 8.5 转为连词的 Wh- 形式 whether 引导一般问题从句
- 8.6 连词 whether 与 if 的相通与不同
- 8.7—8.9 Wh- 名词性关系从句
- 8.7 what / which / Wh-ever 可相当“先行词 + 关系代词”
- 8.8 失去疑问意义的 what / which / Wh-ever 引导名词性关系从句
- 8.9 失去疑问意义的 when / where / why / how 引导名词性关系从句
- 8.10—8.11 Wh- 形式不只能引导名词从句
- 8.10 介词宾语从句前省略介词, 转成 Wh- 方面状语

从句

- 8. 11 Wh—形式引导名词从句及其它从句综述
- 8. 12—8. 16 that 名词从句及其转成的状语从句
- 8. 12 主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句等5种that从句

句

- 8. 13 复合宾语 / 主语可相当宾语 / 主语从句
- 8. 14 介词宾语从句前略介词, 转成that方面 / 原因

状语从句

- 8. 15 that 名词从句的语气, 用或不用should
- 8. 16 引导名词从句的that的省略

Exercise 8

第九章 定语从句选用或者不用关系代词、关系副词的规律——从句用法关键之二9. 1—9. 4 不同关系代词的性质

- 9. 1 非限制性定语从句之所以不用that引导
- 9. 2 关系代词that, which, as的不同用法
- 9. 3 as由连词转作关系代词
- 9. 4 but由介词转作关系代词
- 9. 5—9. 10 who/which/that等的选择与“省略”
- 9. 5 一般要用who/whom/whose的情况
- 9. 6 一般只用which的情况
- 9. 7 一般只用或多用that的情况
- 9. 8 先行词为某些代词、形容词限定的名词时
- 9. 9 time when与time that的不同用途

9. 10 关系代词的省略

Exercise 9

第十章 分裂句是带定语从句的特异复合句——从句用法关键之三

- 10. 1 分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是It
- 10. 2 分裂句与一般含定语从句复合句的不同

- 10.3 分裂句所强调的相应简单句各种成分
- 10.4 强调原状语一般不用when/where/why引导从句
- 10.5 It was in 1918 that... 句型性质
- 10.6 主语代词、谓语时态与主句语序的变换
- 10.7 分裂句中关系代词that, who的“省略”
- 10.8 所谓“拟分裂句”What he's done is

Exercise 10

第十一章 while, as, that, if等引导对应或因果状语从句——从句用法关键之四11.1—11.2 表示持续、距离等时间、空间关系的while/as等从句

- 11.1 时间从句while/as... 并不是回答what time?
- 11.2 It's... since/from... 与It/I was... before... 等
- 11.3—11.6 表对应关系的不只方式从句与比较从句
- 11.3 as引导表示对应关系的多种状语从句
- 11.4 as much as we/more than we从句可换作... as us/... than us的短语
- 11.5 比较从句中可以或惯于省略的种种情况
- 11.6 比例从句as she talked可相当于the more she talked

11.7—11.10 表原因关系的包括条件、让步、程度、目的等类从句

- 11.7 特种原因：条件或让步；特种条件：程度或目的
- 11.8 单独引导多种状语从句的that多半不可省略
- 11.9 复合连词“...that”引导十余种状语从句及其中that的省略
- 11.10 so/such(...)that怎样分别引导程度 / 目的 / 结果从句

Exercise 11

第三编 语句之间的多种关联

第十二章 多功能that, it, as, while, when, where

- 12.1 that 与 it 从实词到虚词
- 12.2 as 从副词到连词、关系代词，从连词到介词
- 12.3 as 引导宾语补语和主语补语
- 12.4 while, when, where 各有十余种句法功能

Exercise 12

第十三章 主、从句语序、从句时态的简化、词语的省略

- 13.1 从句位置与主、从句中的倒装
- 13.2 间接引语中动词“错向过去”与否的含义差别，情态动词
 - “错向过去”与否
- 13.3 从句指将来，动词常用较简便现在 / 现在进行 / 现在完成形式
- 13.4 从句略去与主句词语重复或可以理解的词语
- 13.5 并列分句或从句中“主语 + be”不可只略其一

Exercise 13

第十四章 选用从句与选用相应结构的比较

- 14.1 简单句、并列复合句与主从复合句的语体差别
- 14.2 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语体因素
- 14.3 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语义因素
- 14.4 “无依着修饰语”多应改为从句或以其它方法改正
- 14.5 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作状语、作定语的情况
- 14.6 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作宾语的情况
- 14.7 语气从句、短语、短句等形式的语气状语

Exercise 14

例句出处略语表（主要参考书目）

练习题参考答案